Thoroughly Updated as per the Textbook and Board's Activity Sheet

NAVNEET

HISTORY AND POLITICAL SCIENCE DIGEST

STANDARD X

GET NAVNEET DigiBook FREE + Chapterwise Tests through QR Code

NAVNEET®

Thoroughly Updated as per the Textbook and Board's Activity Sheet

NAVNEET

HISTORY AND POLITICAL SCIENCE

DIGEST

STANDARD X

- **Salient features :**

1. Fully Revised as per the Latest Pattern of Board's Activity Sheet.
2. **Important Points (Summary)** given at the beginning of each chapter.
3. **'Important Events and Year'** given at the beginning, wherever required.
4. Explanation of important **Concepts**.
5. Additional information provided in **Let Us Know**.
6. Answers to all textual exercises and important activity questions.
7. Additional important questions and activities of all types, with to the point answers.
8. Inclusion of Board's March 2020 Activity Sheet for **reference and practice**.

6414132

★ ★ ★ **Important Feature :**

In this 'Digest', Chapterwise Tests have been given. For these Tests and their model answers, scan the **QR Code** given at the end of each chapter.

By

NAVNEET

Thoroughly Revised Edition : 2021

Balbharati Registration No. 2018MH0014

NAVNEET

NAVNEET EDUCATION LIMITED

E0555

Price : ₹ 160.00

NAVNEET EDUCATION LIMITED

Visit us at : www.navneet.com

★ Navneet Bhavan, Bhavani Shankar Road, Dadar (West),
Mumbai – 400 028.
Phone : (022) 6662 6565
e-mail : publications@navneet.com

★ Navneet Bhavan, 1302, Shukrawar Peth,
Bajirao Road, Near Sanas Plaza,
Pune – 411 002.
Phone : (020) 2443 1007
e-mail : npil.poona@navneet.com

★ 63, Opp. Shivaji Science College,
Congress Nagar,
Nagpur – 440 012.
Phone : (0712) 242 1522
e-mail : npil.ngp@navneet.com

★ Nirman Inspire, 2nd Floor,
Kanhere Wadi, Opp. Old CBS,
Nashik – 422 001.
Phone : (0253) 259 6950
e-mail : npil.nashik@navneet.com

6414132

© All rights reserved. No part of this book may be copied, adapted, abridged or translated, stored in any retrieval system, computer system, photographic or other system or transmitted in any form or by any means without a prior written permission of the copyright holders, M/s. Navneet Education Limited. *Any breach will entail legal action and prosecution without further notice.*

Published by : Navneet Education Limited. Dantali, Gujarat.
Printed by : Navneet Education Limited. Dantali, Gujarat.

2103
CTP
Rev. (15-6-2021)

PREFACE

It gives us pleasure to present this Thoroughly Revised Edition of **Navneet History and Political Science Digest : Standard X** which is based on the Textbook and the latest Activity Sheet pattern published by the Board.

Dear Students,

The syllabus, textbooks, systems of evaluation, etc. keep changing from time to time. We are confident that this Digest will help you to adapt to these changes and study well. It will serve as an ideal guide and will support you to achieve great success in your examination.

In this Digest :

- At the beginning of each chapter 'Significant Events and Year' is given. It will help to solve Timeline question.
- Important Points, i.e. Summary, is given at the beginning of each chapter. It will help the students remember the various concepts well.
- For better understanding of the subject, 'Tables' are given, wherever necessary.
- Wherever essential, we have provided additional information as 'Let us know', in the lesson.
- All questions given in the textbook and many additional important questions with their apt answers are included.
- Moreover, questions on information given in boxes at various places in the textbook are also included.
- The activity based questions, such as **Complete the Chart, Complete the Timeline, Complete the Table, Complete the Graphical Description** are also included in the Digest.
- **Answer the Questions based on Passages.** At least one passage is included in each chapter to make you understand how answers to such questions are to be written.
- **'Give Your Opinion'** is an open ended question in Political Science. One should be able to write the answer to this question based on one's knowledge of the chapter. Such questions are included in the Digest.
- Ample practice for **'Observe the given picture and answer the questions'** is included.
- At the end of each chapter, **20 marks Test with its answers are given in QR Code.** It will be useful for self practice.
- At the end of the book, Board's March 2020 Activity Sheet is given for **practice and guidance.**

The syllabus is based on 'Applied History.' So, we strongly urge the students to study the subject accordingly. Learn how to present your opinion. We are confident that this Digest will help you achieve great success in the examination.

However, valuable suggestions from the students, teachers and parents towards the improvement of this book are most welcome.

– The Publishers

6414132

HISTORY AND POLITICAL SCIENCE : PATTERN OF ACTIVITY SHEET
(HISTORY : 28 MARKS, POLITICAL SCIENCE : 12 MARKS)

Note : • History and Political Science should be solved in the same answer book.
• 2.00 hrs are allotted to solve 40 marks question paper.

HISTORY

Question No.	Types of Questions	Marks	Marks with Options
Q. 1. (A)	Choose the correct option from the given options & rewrite the sentence. (Attempt 3 out of 3)	3	3
Q. 1. (B)	Identify the wrong pair and write it (The incorrect pair in every set of 3 pairs has to be identified. Students are not expected to correct it. Attempt 3 out of 3.)	3	3
Q. 2. (A)	Complete the concept map. ('Complete the Concept Map', 'Complete the Table', 'Prepare a Flow Chart', 'Arrange the Historical Events in Chronological Order,' etc. are the various types of questions can be included. Attempt any 2 out of 3.)	4	6
Q. 2. (B)	Write short notes / Explain the concept. (Attempt any 2 out of 3.)	4	6
Q. 3.	Explain the statements with reason. (4 statements will be given. Explain any 2 statements with reasons.)	4	8
Q. 4.	Read the passage and answer the questions based on it. (It includes 2 questions of 1 mark each and 1 open ended question of 2 marks.)	4	4
Q. 5.	Answer the following questions in detail. • Answer in detail with the help of table. • Identify points of similarity and differences • Essay type questions. • Observe the picture/ diagram and answer the questions. (Attempt any 2 out of 4)	6	12
	Total Marks	**28**	**42**

6414132

POLITICAL SCIENCE

Question No.	Types of Questions	Marks	Marks with Options
Q. 6.	Choose the correct option and complete the statements. (2 sub-questions of 1 mark each will be asked.)	2	2
Q. 7.	State whether the following statements are true or false by giving reasons. (Out of 3 any 2 sub-questions are to be solved.)	4	6
Q. 8. (A)	Explain the concept. (Attempt any 1 out of 2.)	2	4
Q. 8. (B)	Do as directed/instructed. (In this, 'Complete the table', 'Complete the timeline', 'Write the stages', 'Complete the flow chart', 'Complete the concept chart' types of questions are included. Attempt any 1 out of 2.)	2	4
Q. 9.	Answer the following in brief. (Any 1 out of 2 questions.)	2	4
	Total Marks	**12**	**20**

Chapterwise Distribution of Marks given by the Board

Groupwise Mark Distribution

Subjects	Chapter Nos.	Chapters Included	Marks	Marks with Options
History	1	Chapters 1 and 2	06	09
	2	Chapter 3	03	05
	3	Chapters 4 to 8	16	23
	4	Chapter 9	03	05
		Total	**28**	**42**
Political Science	1	Chapter 1	03	05
	2	Chapters 2 and 3	05	08
	3	Chapters 4 and 5	04	07
		Total	**12**	**20**

(**Note :** While preparing Activity Sheet try to give equal weightage to chapters included in each group.)

6414132

Evaluation Pattern

Subjects	Written Examination	Internal Evaluation		Total Marks
		Homework	MCQ Test	
History	40	05	05	50
Geography	40	05	05	50
	80	10	10	100

(**Note :** For internal evaluation of History–Political Science and Geography, Homework of 5-5 marks each will be taken in each semester. It will be then converted into 5 marks. In the same manner, MCQ test of 10 marks will be taken and will be converted into 5 marks.)

For complete information and guidance on Internal Evaluation refer to
Navneet Internal Evaluation Handbook : Std. X
(History and Political Science)

CONTENTS

• History and Political Science : Pattern of Activity Sheet	4

APPLIED HISTORY

Sr. No.	Title	Page No.
1.	Historiography : Development in the West	7
2.	Historiography : Indian Tradition	19
3.	Applied History	36
4.	History of Indian Arts	48
5.	Mass Media and History	65
6.	Entertainment and History	80
7.	Sports and History	98
8.	Tourism and History	109
9.	Heritage Management	125

POLITICAL SCIENCE

1.	Working of the Constitution	142
2.	The Electoral Process	154
3.	Political Parties	165
4.	Social and Political Movements	178
5.	Challenges faced by Indian Democracy	189

• **Board's Activity Sheet : March 2020**	197

6414132

APPLIED HISTORY

1 HISTORIOGRAPHY : DEVELOPMENT IN THE WEST

IMPORTANT POINTS

1.0 Introduction :

(1)

Objectives of writing History
- To put the past events in chronological order and analyze
- To verify the authenticity of the collected documents
- To ascertain the truth

(2) The empirical method (method of observation and experiments in laboratory) is used to study natural and physical science.

(3) This method cannot be used to study history as we were not present in historical time and space to observe the event, neither can we recreate the historical event.

(4) Therefore it is not possible in history to formulate laws which remain true regardless of time and space.

(5) **Need of an expert :** We can prove the authenticity of historical sources with the help of experts in the following fields :

(1) An expert who knows the language and script of a historical document, to read and understand its meaning.

(2) One who can identify and examine the authencity, the period in which the author's style of writing and lettering style was prevalent.

(3) An expert who can identify the manufacturing period of paper and its type which was used to make documents.

(4) One who has knowledge of stamps.

(5) Historian who can scrutinise a document with the help of various historical references.

(6) **Historical Research Method :**

Historical Research Method and Stages of Historiography
- Collect historical sources and carry out its comparative analysis.
- Examine relevant references of the available information.
- Understand references regarding time and space of the given historical events.
- Critically examine various sources of history.
- To formulate hypotheses

(7) **Disciplines contributing in the historical research :**

(1) Archaeology
(2) Archival Science
(3) Manuscriptology
(4) Epigraphy (study of inscriptions)
(5) Linguistics
(6) Lettering style analysing branch
(7) Numismatics (study of coins)
(8) Geneology (study of lineage)

1.1 Traditions of Historiography :

(1) **Historical writing and historian :**

(1) Historical sources are critically examined and the past events are preserved in writing.

(2) The writing of critical historical narrative is known as **'Historiography'**.

6414132

(3) A scholar who writes such a narrative is a historian.

(2) Historical writing :

(1) Historian is not in a position to include all events in his narrative.

(2) So, he decides the events which he thinks should reach the people.

(3) His perspective on those events depends on the conceptual framework he adopts.

(4) Though historiography was not prevalent in the ancient societies, the people living in those times too felt that they should pass on the stories about the life and valour of the ancestors to the next generation.

(5) So, these ancient communities used various means like cave-paintings, story-telling, songs, ballads for this purpose.

(6) In modern historiography, these means are looked upon as sources of history.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 2)

6414132

- **Ancient inscription in France :**

(1) The Louvre Museum in France has an inscription which dates back to 4500 B.C.E. that of Sumer civilisation.

(2) It even recorded a battle fought between two kingdoms. An image of a General and file of soldiers following him is seen on it.

(3) The tradition of recording historical event started during the Sumerian Civilisation in Mesopotamia.

1.2 Modern Historiography :

- **Characteristics of modern historiography :**

(1) The method of modern historiography begins with the formation of relevant questions, which are asked in logical order. Hence it is akin to scientific method.

(2) These questions are anthropocentric which means they centre around man and his activities in ancient societies. History does not advocate any interrelation between Divine and human actions.

(3) Answers to these questions are based on reliable evidences and are presented in logical order.

(4) History presents a trajectory of man's journey with the help of his past deeds and actions.

1.3 Development of scientific perspective in Europe and Historiography :

(1) Development of scientific perspective :

(1) Europe achieved remarkable progress till 18th century C.E. in the fields of Philosophy and Science.

(2) Scholars belonging to one school of thought presented the idea of applying this knowledge of scientific method to study social and historical truths.

(3) After that, discussions were focused on objectivity in history and historiography.

(4) History gained importance over philosophical discourses and Divine phenomena.

(5) In 1737 CE, the Gottingen University was founded in Germany. It had an independent department of history.

(6) Later, German universities became centres of historical studies.

(2) Annales School :

(1) At the dawn of twentieth century, a new school of historiography arose in France known as **'Annales School'**.

(2) An idea was put forward that history is not just about political events, kings, great leaders, wars, politics and diplomacy.

(3) It is also about climate, local people, agriculture, trade, technology, means of communication, social divisions and their collective psychology, etc.

(4) The French historians were the pioneers of The Annales School.

(3) Feminist historiography :

(1) The restructuring of the history from the perspective of women is called **Feminist Historiography**.

(2) The fundamentals of feminism were established with the help of writings of the French feminist scholar Simone de Beauvoir.

(3) Feminist Historiography emphasised not only to include women in history but also to rethink on the male-dominated perspective of history.

(4) Later, many aspects of women's life, became the focus of historical research such as their employment, their role in trade union, family life, etc.

(5) After 1990, women were portrayed as an independent class in historical writings.

1.4 Notable Scholars in Europe :

Sr. No.	Scholar	Book/Work	Country	Thoughts/Information
1.	René Descartes (1596-1650)	Discourse on the Method	France	(1) It is important to verify the reliability of historical documents by critically examining them. (2) Never to accept anything as the truth till all grounds of doubt are excluded.
2.	Voltaire (François - Marie Arouet) (1694-1778)	–	France	(1) He opined that in historiography the focus should not be only on objective truth or chronology of historical events. (2) Prevalent social traditions, trade, economy, agriculture should also be considered an important part of it. (3) Understanding all the aspects of human life is important for history writing. (4) He is known as founder of modern historiography.
3.	Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel (1770-1831)	(1) Encyclopaedia of Philosophical Sciences (2) Reason in History	Germany	(1) Historical reality should be presented in a logical manner. (2) The order of historical events are indicative of progress. (3) Over a period of time, the presentation of history will definitely change as new evidences will come forth. (4) In order to understand true nature of a thing, one needs to know both the sides i.e., true and false or good or bad. (5) This method of analysis of history which is based on opposites is known as Dialectics. (6) A theory is proposed at the beginning called **Thesis**, then another contrary theory called **Antithesis** is proposed. (7) Finally, after thorough discussion on both, a new thesis having a gist of both is arrived which is called **Synthesis**.

6414132

Sr. No.	Scholar	Book/Work	Country	Thoughts/Information
4.	Leopold von Ranké (1795-1886)	(1) The Theory and Practice of History (2) The Secret of World History	Germany	(1) He gave a lot of importance to information gathered through original documents. (2) He also stated that all types of documents related with the historical event should be examined minutely with great care. (3) He believed that it was possible to reach the historical truth with this method. (4) He criticised imaginative narration of historical events. (5) He influenced historical writings of the 19th century.
5.	Karl Marx (1818-1883)	Das Kapital	Germany	(1) History is not about abstract ideas but about living people. (2) Human relationships are formed not only by the fundamental needs of people but also by the ownership of prevalent means of production to meet those needs. (3) The accessibility to these means may not be same for different strata of the society. (4) The class which owns the means of production exploits the rest of the classes. (5) This inequality in the society leads to class struggle.
6.	Michel Foucault (1926-1984)	The Archaeology of Knowledge	France	(1) To present history in chronological order is not right. (2) The objective of archaelogy is not to reach ultimate historical truth but to explain the various transitions in the past. (3) He acknowledged that subjects such as science of medicine, psychological disorders, prison administration are valid for historical analysis.

64141 77

Let us know

(1) **René Descartes (31 March 1596 – 11 February 1650) :** He is known as the father of modern western philosophy. He contributed to mathematics as well as science along with philosophy. Descartes laid the foundation of knowledge on the pillars of rationalism. His method is based on four rules : (1) Accept as true only what is undoubtable. (2) Divide every question into manageable parts. (3) Begin with simplest issues and ascend to the more complex. (4) Review frequently enough to retain the whole argument at once. He bridged the gap between Algebra and Geometry.

(2) **Simone de Beauvoir (9 January 1908 – 14 April 1986) :** She was a French writer, intellectual, political activist, feminist and social theorist. Though she did not consider herself a philosopher, she had a significant influence on both feminist existentialism and feminist theory. She wrote

many novels and treatises on philosophy. A woman has to live in a male dominated society and follow the values set by men. She cannot form her values because of which it becomes difficult for a woman to make her existence meaningful. Her ideas laid the base of feminist movement and strengthened it. Writings of women were included in historiography.

(3) **Voltaire (21 November 1694–30 May 1778) :** He was a French philosopher and thinker. He was put in Bastille prison for writing a satirical verse on a member of the royal family. Later, he was exiled from France. His significant contribution was in laying the foundation of modern historiography. According to him, the scope of history should not be considered limited to the portrayal of kings and battles but should include trade, economy, social traditions, agriculture, etc. He wrote many articles criticising priests, falsehood and cruel rulers. He fought for human rights and progress. He wrote fifty plays on history and philosophy. His thoughts inspired the French Revolution.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Choose the correct option from the given options and complete the sentences : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) It may be said that ..... was the founder of Modern Historiography.

(July '19; March '20; Nov. '20)

(a) Voltaire *(b) René Descartes*
(c) Leopold Ranké *(d) Karl Marx*

*(2) ..... wrote the book entitled, 'Archaeology of Knowledge'.

(a) Karl Marx *(b) Michel Foucault*
(c) Lucien Febvre *(d) Voltaire*

(3) A scholar who writes critical historical narratives is known as .....

(a) an archaeologist *(b) a historian*
(c) a social scientist *(d) a language expert*

(4) The earliest inscription in the world is displayed at Louvre museum in ..... .

(a) England *(b) France*
(c) Germany *(d) Portugal*

(5) The tradition of recording historical events can be traced back to ..... civilization in Mesopotamia.

(a) Sumer *(b) Egyptian*
(c) Arab *(d) Mohenjodaro*

Ans. (1) It may be said that **Voltaire** was the founder of modern historiography.

(2) **Michel Foucault** wrote the book entitled, 'Archaeology of Knowldege'.

(3) A scholar who writes critical historical narratives is known as **a historian**.

(4) The earliest inscription in the world is displayed at Louvre museum in **France**.

(5) The tradition of recording historical events can be traced back to **Sumer** civilization in Mesopotamia.

Note : While answering this question, students should write the full statement and underline the word or figure as shown above. However, hereafter, we have given only the answer word or figure.

[2]

(1) The tradition of modern historiography has its roots in the writings of ..... historians.

(a) Roman *(b) Greek*
(c) German *(d) French*

(2) ....., a Greek historian of the fifth century B.C.E., had used the term 'History' for the first time for his book entitled, 'The Histories'.

(a) Leopold Ranké *(b) Georg Hegel*
(c) Michel Foucault *(d) Herodotus*

(3) In 1737 C.E., the ..... university in Germany had an independent department for history.

(a) Oxford *(b) Cambridge*
(c) Gottingen *(d) Stanford*

(4) Historiography of the nineteenth century was greatly influenced by the thoughts of .....

(a) Karl Marx *(b) Voltaire*
(c) Georg Hegel *(d) Leopold von Ranké*

*(Note : The questions marked with an * are from the Textbook.)*

(5) A new school of historiography arose in France known as ..... school.
(a) Translation *(b) Annales*
(c) Nationalism *(d) Communist*

Ans. (1) Greek (2) Herodotus (3) Gottingen (4) Leopold von Ranké (5) Annales.

[3]

(1) The method of analysis which is based on opposites is known as .....
(a) Numismatics *(b) Arithmetic*
(c) Polynomial *(d) Dialectics*

(2) ..... considered subjects like psychological disorders, science of medicine, prison administration for historical analysis.
(a) Michel Foucault *(b) Leopold Ranké*
(c) Karl Marx *(d) Voltaire*

(3) The Annales School was started by ..... historians.
(a) German (b) French (c) Greek (d) Roman

(4) According to ....., historical realities should be presented in a logical manner.
(a) Georg Hegel *(b) Voltaire*
(c) Simone de Beauvoir *(d) Herodotus*

(5) According to ....., one should never accept anything as the truth till all the doubts are solved.
(a) René Descartes *(b) Karl Marx*
(c) Voltaire *(d) Herodotus*

Ans. (1) Dialectics (2) Michel Foucault (3) French (4) Georg Hegel (5) René Descartes.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : *(1 mark each)*

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

*[1] *(March '19)*

Thinker	Book
(1) Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel	(a) Reason in History
(2) Leopold von Ranké	(b) The Theory and Practice of History
(3) Herodotus	(c) The Histories
(4) Karl Marx	(d) Discourse on the Method

Ans. Wrong pair : Karl Marx – Discourse on the Method.

[2] Historian	Country
(1) Herodotus	Greece
(2) Simone de Beauvoir	Germany
(3) Michel Foucault	France
(4) René Descartes	France

Ans. Wrong pair : Simone de Beauvoir – Germany.

[3] Thoughts/Opinions	Historian
(1) All aspects of human life is important in historiography	Voltaire
(2) He criticised imaginative narration.	Leopold von Ranké
(3) History is not about abstract ideas but about living people.	René Descartes
(4) Emphasized the rethinking of the male dominated perspective of history.	Simone de Beauvoir

Ans. Wrong pair : History is not about abstract ideas but about living people – René Descartes.

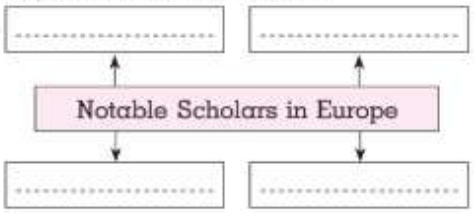
[4] Theory	Thinkers
(1) Dialectics	Herodotus
(2) Theory of Class Struggle	Karl Marx
(3) Fundamentals of Feminism	Simone de Beauvoir
(4) Emphasised on importance of information gathered through original documents	Leopold von Ranké

Ans. Wrong pair : Dialectics – Herodotus.

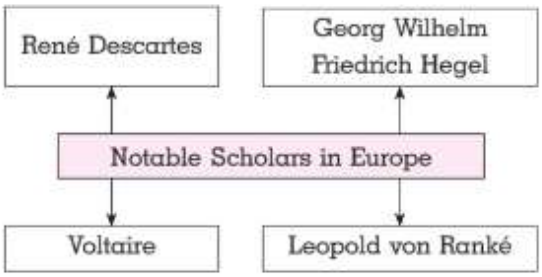
Q. 3 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

(A) Complete the concept chart :

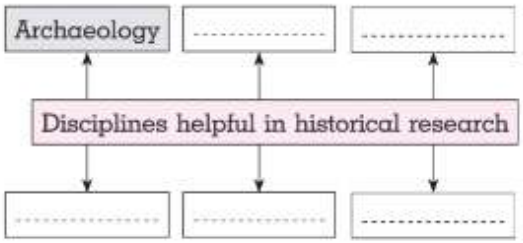
*(1)



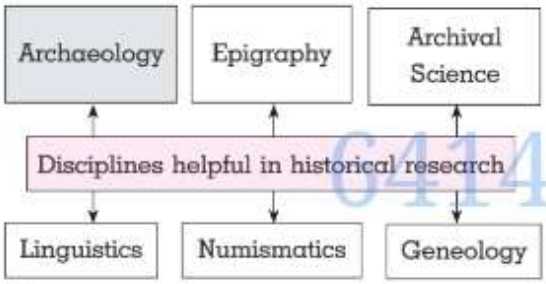
Ans.



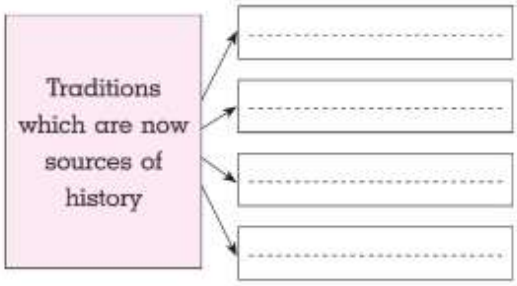
(2)



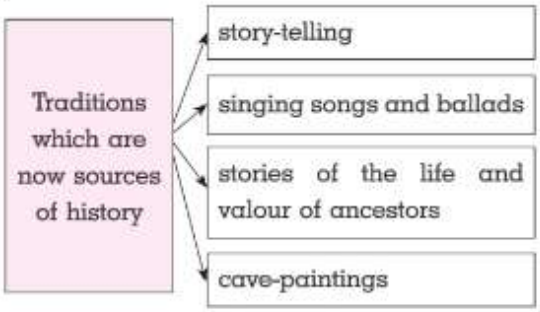
Ans.



(3)



Ans.



(B) Prepare a flow chart on the given topic :

Stages of historiography

Ans. **Stages of Historiography**

↓

To collect historical information and examining its references

↓

To do comparative analysis of the information

↓

Critically examining various sources of history

↓

To formulate relevant questions related to historical references

↓

To formulate hypotheses and present theories

Q. 4 Explain the following Concepts : ***(2 marks each)***

Note : *'Explain the Concept' will be asked under the question 'Write Short Notes' in History. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

6414132

***(1) Dialectics :**

Ans. (1) In order to understand the true nature of an event, one needs to know its opposite for e.g. True – False, Good – Bad, etc. A German philosopher, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel had put forward this method of analysis of history.

(2) A theory called 'Thesis' is proposed at the beginning. It is followed by another theory called 'Antithesis' which is, contrary to 'Thesis'.

(3) After a thorough logical discussion of both new thesis is proposed having gist of both (Thesis and Antithesis). This process of arriving at a new thesis is called Synthesis. This method of analysis of history which is based on opposites is known as 'Dialectics'.

(2) Annales School :** ***(July '19; Nov. '20)

Ans. (1) At the dawn of the twentieth century, the writing of history got a new direction.

(2) Along with political events, kings, great leaders, the study of climate, local people,

agriculture, trade, technology, means of communication, social divisions and their collective psychology of a group was also considered important in the study of history.

(3) This new school of thought is known as Annales School. Annales School was started by French historians.

Q. 5 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Karl Marx :

Ans. (1) Karl Marx was a German thinker in the nineteenth century. He wrote the world famous treatise 'Das Kapital'. According to him, history was not about abstract ideas but about living people.

(2) He believed that human relationships are shaped by the fundamental needs of people and the ownership of prevalent means of production to meet those needs.

(3) He stated that unequal accessibility to the means of production creates a division in society leading to class struggle. His theory of class struggle is considered significant all over the world.

(4) According to Marx, human history is the history of class struggle because the class which owns the means of production economically exploits the rest of the classes.

(2) Michel Foucault :

Ans. (1) Michel Foucault was a twentieth century historian from France.

(2) He wrote the book 'Archaeology of Knowledge'. In this book, he insisted that the prevailing practice of arranging historical events in a chronological order is not right.

(3) He gave importance to explaining the transitions that took place in history.

(4) He acknowledged the role of subjects such as science of medicine, psychological disorders, prison administration in historical analysis. This was not acknowledged by earlier historians.

(3) Leopold von Ranké :

Ans. (1) Leopold von Ranké, a German philosopher, laid emphasis on information gathered through original documents.

(2) In order to reach historical truth, it was necessary to examine all documents related to historical event. He critcised the imaginative narration of history.

(3) Collection of his articles are published in two books, entitled 'The Theory and Practice of History' and 'The Secret of World History'.

(4) Ranké had great influence on historiography of nineteenth century.

(4) Progress in historiography in the eighteenth century :

Ans. The following progress was achieved in historiography in the eighteenth century :

(1) Scientific methods were applied to study social and historical truths.

(2) Philosophical discourses revolving around divine phenomena were given less importance.

(3) Philosophical discussions focused more on the objectivity in history and historiography.

(4) Since the universities got an independent department of history, they became centres of historical studies.

Q. 6 Give reasons : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Historical research was driven to focus in depth on various aspects of women's life.**

Ans. (1) Initially, there was a lot of dominance of male perspective on historical writing. Simone de Beauvoir, a French scholar, insisted on inclusion of women perspective in historiography.

(2) She emphasised on the inclusion of women in the process of writing history.

(3) She insisted on rethinking of the male dominated perspective of history.

(4) Because of her efforts historical research was driven to focus in depth on various aspects of women's lives, their employment, their role in trade unions, institution working for their cause, and their family life.

(2) Michel Foucault called his method, 'the archaeology of knowledge'.** ***(Nov. '20)

Ans. (1) According to Michel Foucault, the prevailing method of arranging historical events in a chronological order was not right.

(2) He threw light on the fact that archaeology does not strive to reach the ultimate historical truth.

(3) It attempts to explain various transitions in the past.

(4) Foucault gave more importance for explaining the transitions in history.

Hence, his method is called 'the archaeology of knowledge'.

(3) In historical research, it may not be possible to use the method of experiments and observation.

Ans. (1) In physical and natural sciences, experiment and observation method is used to establish laws that remain true irrespective of the time and space.

(2) These laws can be tested and proved again and again.

(3) In historical research, the events had already taken place in the past and we were not present in the historical time and space.

(4) Moreover, these events cannot be recreated in the present time and space.

64141132

Hence, experiment and observation method may not be used in historical research.

(4) Historiography in the 18th century gave importance to objectivity in history.

Ans. (1) A remarkable progress was achieved in the fields of Philosophy and Science till the eighteenth century in Europe.

(2) It was believed that by applying scientific methods it was possible to study social and historical truths.

(3) In the later period, history and historiography witnessed a lot of philosophical discussion. This eliminated the imaginative and divine context in history and gave importance to objectivity.

(4) Interest of all European universities which revolved around philosophical discourses and divine phenomena gradually decreased. Newly founded Gottingen University had an independent history department. Later, all German universities became centre of historical studies.

Q. 7 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

Note : *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

***(1) What is Historiography ?**

Ans. (1) The writing of critical historical narrative is called Historiography. A person who writes it is known as 'Historian'. The following steps are helpful in writing historical narrative :

(2) Information related to history is collected and analyzed.

(3) The various sources are critically examined to understand the references regarding time and space in the given information as well as the conceptual framework used.

(4) After examining the references of historical information, relevant questions related to these historical references are framed and hypothesis are formulated.

In short, writing of critical historical narrative by following this method is known as historiography.

***(2) What did René Descartes insists upon ?**

Ans. French Philosopher René Descartes insisted on the following in writing historiography :

(1) 'Never to accept anything as true till all grounds of doubt are excluded'.

(2) Hence, the reliability of a source like historical documents should be verified by critically examining them while writing history.

(3) Why Voltaire is said to be the founder of modern historiography.** ***(March '19-'20)

Ans. Voltaire, a French scholar, opined that it was important to consider the following aspects while writing history :

(1) objective truth and chronology of events;

(2) prevalent social traditions, agriculture, trade and economic system.

It was because of his view that all aspects of human life was considered for history writing.

Therefore, he is said to be the founder of modern historiography.

Q. 8 Read the given passage carefully and answer the questions given below : *(4 marks)*

Textbook Page 2

We have learnt about the historical research method, critically examining the historical sources and writing the historical narrative. The writing of critical historical narrative is known as 'Historiography'. A scholar who writes such a narrative is a historian.

The historian cannot include every past event in his narrative. The inclusion and interpretation of historical events by the historian often depends on the conceptual framework adopted by him. His style of writing is determined by that conceptual framework.

The tradition of writing historical narrative, that is historiography, was not prevalent in the ancient societies of the world. However, that does not mean that they were not aware of the historical time or were not eager to know about it. Ancient people also felt the need of passing on the stories of the life and valour of the ancestors to the next generation. Ancient communities all over the world used various means like cave paintings, story-telling, singing songs and ballads, etc. for this purpose. These traditional means are looked upon as the sources of history in the modern historiography.

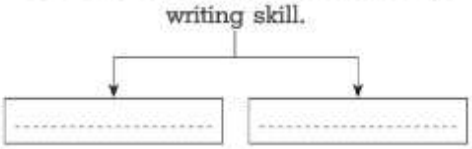
Questions :

(1) Who is called a Historian? (1)

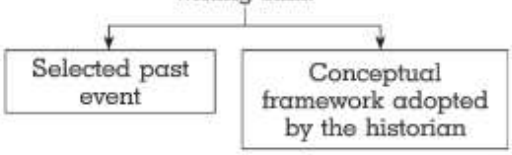
Ans. A scholar who writes critical historical narratives is called a Historian.

(2) Complete the concept chart : (1)

Factors which determined historian's writing skill.



Ans. Factors which determined historian's writing skill.



(3) How did the people in ancient societies preserve the events in the past? (2)

Ans. The ancient people preserved the events in the past so that they can pass them to the next generation. They used various means to do this :

(1) Narrating the stories of valour of ancestors to the next generation.

(2) Stories of their life preserved through cave paintings.

(3) Adopting story telling technique.

(4) Singing songs and ballads to impress events upon the minds of the new generation.

Note : Henceforth, in this Digest, we will provide only few words which start and end the paragraph. Students should refer the textbook for the complete paragraph on the given page and answer the questions.

Q. 9 Answer the following questions in detail : *(3 marks each)*

***(1) Explain Karl Marx's 'Class Theory'.** *(March '19; July '19)*

Ans. In the latter part of nineteenth century, German thinker, Karl Marx, put forward 'Class Theory' in his book 'Das Kapital'.

According to him :

(1) History is not about abstract ideas but living people. The fulfilment of basic needs of people depends on the nature of prevalent means of production and the ownership.

(2) All the different strata of the society do not get equal access to these means of production which causes the division of the society into classes. It results into class struggle.

(3) The class which owns means of production economically exploits the rest of the classes.

Human history, according to him, is the history of class struggle.

***(2) What are the four characteristics of modern historiography ?**

Ans. The following are the four characteristics of modern historiography :

(1) Its method is based on scientific principles and begins with formation of relevant questions.

(2) These questions are anthropocentric i.e. they are about ancient human societies and their

deeds in that period of time. No interrelation between the divine and human needs is suggested.

(3) Answers to these questions are supported by reliable evidence and they are presented in a logical order.

(4) History presents a graph of man's progress with the help of his deeds in the past.

***(3) What is feminist historiography?**

Ans. (1) Feminist historiography means writing history with women perspective. There was a lot of dominance of male perspective on historical writing.

(2) Simone de Beauvoir, a French scholar, insisted on rethinking on the male dominated perspective and including the women's perspective in historiography.

(3) The idea of feminist historiography was accepted.

(4) Because of her efforts various aspects of women's lives like their employment, their role in trade unions and their family life became part of historiography.

***(4) Explain Leopold von Ranké's perspective of history.**

6414132

Ans. Leopold's view on ways to write history throws light on his perspective of history :

(1) He spoke about the critical method of historical research. He gave importance to information gathered through original documents.

(2) He also stated that all types of original documents related to the historical event should be examined in detail and with great care.

(3) He believed that with this method it was possible to reach the historical truth. He was critical of imagination in narration of history.

(5) Which experts do we need in order to prove the reliability of historical documents?

Ans. The following experts are required to prove the reliability of historical documents :

(1) Language expert who can decipher the language and meaning of the document or the script on the inscription.

(2) One who can recognise the type of paper used and the period in which it was used.

(3) One who can understand the lettering style and the writing style of the author.

(4) Expert who has knowledge of different seals, i.e. stamps of authority used by the rulers. Historian who can interpret and do a comparative study of the references given in the document.

(6) Write Hegel's view on history.

Ans. (1) Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel was a German philosopher. He was of the view that the historical realities should be presented in a logical manner. He believed that presentation of history is bound to change as time passes because new evidence surfaces.

(2) He proposed a method of analysis based on opposites known as 'Dialectics'. Hegel's philosophy convinced many scholars that historical methods were not of lesser quality, though they differed from scientific methods.

(3) His lectures and articles are published in a book called 'Encyclopaedia of Philosophical Sciences'. His book 'Reason in History' is well known.

(7) Explain the difference between Laboratory Method and Historical Research Method.

Ans. Laboratory Method	Historical Research Method
(1) Laboratory method is used to verify the available knowledge.	(1) In historical research method, hypotheses are formulated which are based on various sources of history.
(2) Laboratory method of experiments and observation allows formulating laws that remain true irrespective of the time and space.	(2) The method of laboratory experiments and observation cannot be used as the events had already taken place and cannot be recreated.
(3) This laws can be tested and proved repeatedly.	(3) As historical events cannot be recreated, it is not possible to formulate laws that remain true irrespective of the time and space.

(8) Observe the inscription in the picture and write information about it.

Ans. (1) A fragment of the earliest inscription is shown in the above picture. It dates back to 4500 BCE. It is displayed at the Louvre museum in France.

(2) The inscriptions have names of Sumerian kings and stories of battles fought by them.

(3) It shows a forward marching file of soldiers holding shields and spears. The General is in the front.

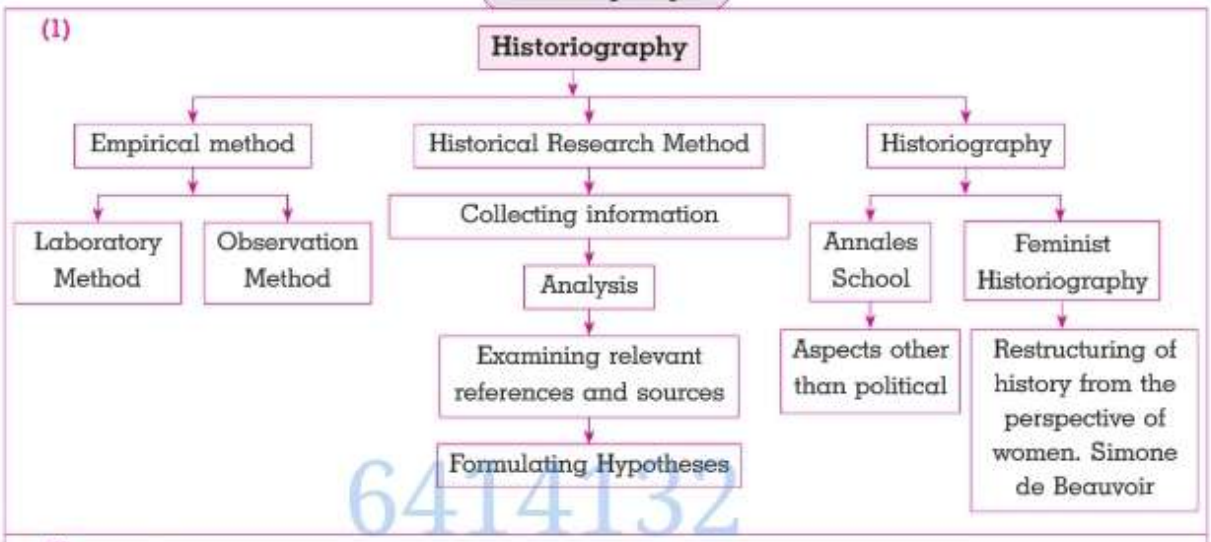
Project

- Obtain detailed information on your favourite subject and write its history.

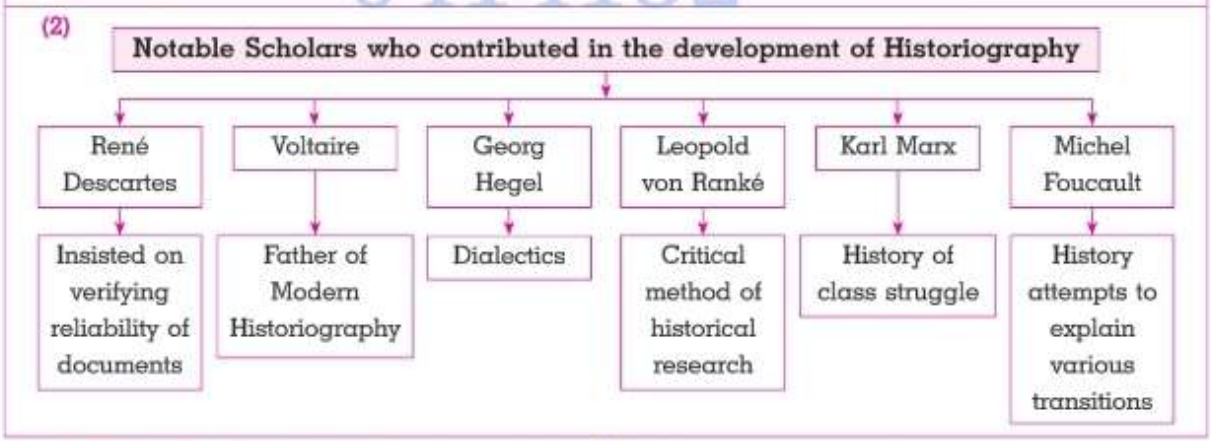
For example : History of a Pen, History of Printing Technology, History of Computers

Memory Map

(1)



(2)



Things to Remember :

- Objective questions like Choose Correct Alternative, Identify the Wrong Pair could be interchanged and asked.
- Questions from Give Reasons and Short Notes could also be interchanged and asked.
- A Short Question can be asked in detailed type and vice versa thereby increasing or decreasing the scope of answer.

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

2 HISTORIOGRAPHY : INDIAN TRADITION

IMPORTANT EVENTS AND YEARS

1. 1784 CE : Sir William Jones founded Asiatic Society in Kolkata.
2. 1817 CE : Three volumes of 'The History of British India' were published.
3. 1841 CE : The History of India was written by Mountstuart Elphinstone.
4. 1882 CE : Tarabai Shinde's book 'Stripurush Tulana' was published.
5. 7th July 1910 CE : 'Bharat Itihas Samshodhak Mandal' was founded by V.K. Rajawade in Pune.
6. 1922–1937 CE : Five volumes of 'Cambridge History of India' were published.

IMPORTANT POINTS

2.1 Tradition of Indian Historiography :

(1) Historiography in the ancient period :

(1) In ancient India, memories of the great deeds of ancestors and mythological lores and memories of social transitions were preserved through recitation.

(2) The art of writing was known to Indians as early as the third millennium B.C.E. But no one has yet been able to decipher the writing of that period.

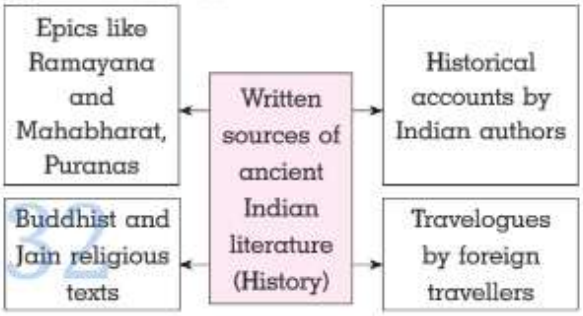
(3) The earliest known written documents found in India are in the form of inscriptions.

(4) The first known specimen of writing was found on the rock inscriptions and stone pillars dated to 3rd century B.C.E. It was inscribed during the rule of Mauryan Emperor Ashoka.

(5) The inscriptions begin to occur on coins, metal images and sculptures and copper plates from 1st century C.E.

(6) They depicted dates of kings, dynastic geneologies, territorial extent, administration of kingdoms and empires, political events, social organisations, climate, famines, etc.

(2) Written sources :



(3) Information from ancient written sources : (Inscriptions)

(1) Dates and the rule of various kings, dynastic geneologies, political events and administration.

(2) Social organisations, climate, famines, etc.

(3) 'Harshacharit' a biography of King Harsha written by Banabhatta in the 7th century C.E. portrays a realistic picture.

(4) We get to know about social, political, religious, cultural life during the period of King Harsha's rule.

(4) Kalhana :

(1) In the 12th century C.E. Kalhana wrote 'Rajtarangini' – a book on history of Kashmir.

(2) His style of writing resembles the concept of modern historiography.

(3) The book was written after critically examining various sources like inscriptions, coins, remains of ancient monuments, dynastic records and local traditions.

You would like to know this :
(Textbook Page 7)

- **Copper Plate Inscriptions**

Sohagaura Copper-plate :

(1) The copper-plate was found at Sohagaura in Gorakhpur district of Uttar Pradesh. It is supposed to be from Mauryan period with inscription in Brahmi script on it.

(2) The symbols inscribed on the plate are indicative of Tree-in-railing and mountain. The symbols also occur on punch marked coins. There is another symbol which looks like a structure erected on four pillars is supposed to be indicative of granary.

(3) The inscriptions record a royal order about careful distribution of grains in the granary and precautions to be taken in the times of a famine.

Let us know

- **Rajtarangini :**

Rajtarangini is a book in Sanskrit written in 12th century C.E. by a Kashmiri Brahman, Kalhana. He chronicled the history of Kashmir into eight books. The work consists of 7826 verses called Tarangas.

Although inaccurate in its chronology, the book still provides an invaluable source of information about early Kashmir and its neighbours in the north western parts of India. It is the earliest source of history of Kashmir. Its landscape is known as the Paradise of India. The author of the Rajtarangini chronicles the rulers of the valley from the period of the Mahabharata.

Kalhana's account in Rajtarangini begins with the legendary reign of Gonanda, who was contemporary to Yudhisthira of the Mahabharata till the rule of king Harsha in the 11th century.

(5) Medieval Indian Historiography :

(A) Muslim Historians :

6414132

Sr. No.	Historian	Book	Information
1.	Ziauddin Barani	Tarikh-i-Phiruz Shahi	He stated purpose of historiography : (1) In his opinion, it is not enough to record a ruler's valour and welfare policies. (2) Historian should also write about the ruler's failings and wrong policies which resulted in his failure. (3) He should write about impact of the teachings of the wise, learned and saints on the cultural life of the people.
2.	Babur (Founder of the Mughal Empire)	Tuzuk-i-Babari	In his autobiography, (1) Babur described the battles fought by him. (2) Recorded minute observations about various regions and cities he visited. (3) Information about local economy, customs and the flora.
3.	Abul Fazl	Akbarnama	Characteristics of his historiography : (1) Analysis of historical information based on authentic documents. (2) Scrutiny of the information. (3) His method is devoid of prejudice and hence realistic.

(B) Features of Muslim historiography :

(1) The Muslim historians in medieval India were influenced by Arabic and Persian historiography.

(2) The loyalty and eloquence in praising the emperor is reflected in historiography.

(3) The practice of adding suitable poetic quotes and beautiful pictures was introduced.

Let us know

- **Alberuni :**

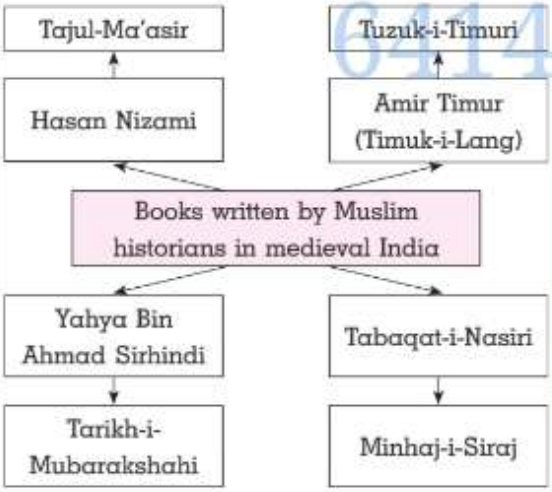
(4 September 973 – 9 December 1048)

He was a renowned Islamic historian and scholar from central Asia. He observed lunar eclipse and noted his observations. Alberuni came to India with Mohammad of Gazni in 1022 C.E. While in India, he learnt Sanskrit and made a thorough study of Hindu philosophy and other branches of Indian science.

In his book 'Tarik-i-Hind', he described the prevalent social conditions in India. He translated the book 'Yoga Sutras' by Patanjali and Samkhya composed by sage Kapila.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 8)

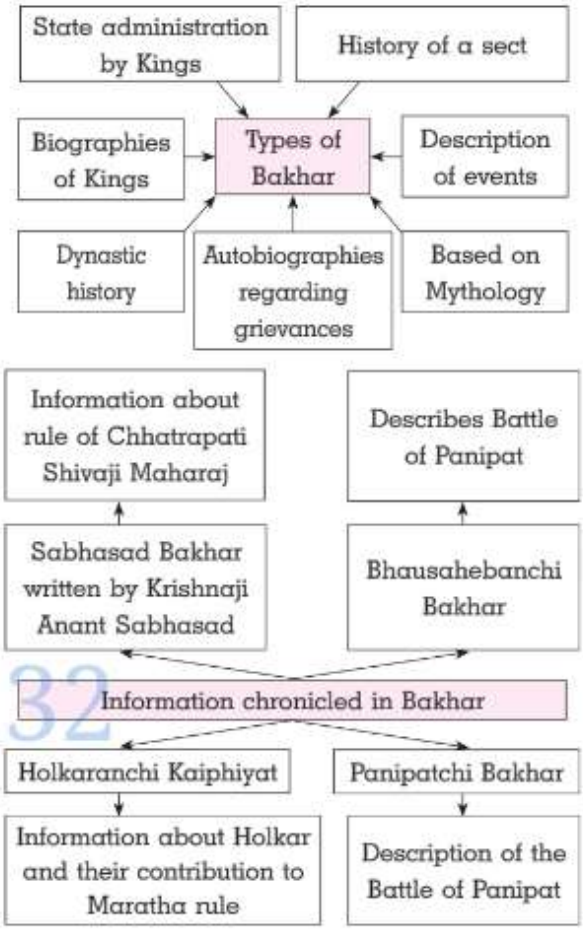
(1) Books written by Muslim historians in medieval India :



(2) Ibn Battuta, Abdul Razzaq, Marco Polo, Nicolo Conti, Barbosa and Domingos Paes were the foreign travellers who wrote about medieval India.

(3) Ishwardas Nagar, Bhimsen Saxena, Khafi Khan and Niccolao Manucci were the historians during the time of Aurangzeb's rule. Their accounts are considered as important source of Mughal history.

(C) Bakhar : A historical document which contains eulogies of the heroes and stories of historic events, battles and lives of great men.



Let us know

- **Bakhar :**

'Bakhar' means to tell the news or record of happenings. It is also called biography of eminent statesmen of the Maratha period. Early bakhars had lot of Arabic influence. Many scholars believed that the word Bakhar is derived from the Arabic word 'Khabar'. Bakhars are historical narratives in prose form and have great importance as sources of history. More than 200 bakhars were written between 1760 and 1850.

We get description of prevalent social conditions and history. Detailed description of Shivaji Maharaj, Bhausaheb Peshwa and of Panipat battle is found in bakhars. Language

6414132

used is very rich and figurative with great narration. Bakhars are looked upon as a form of prose literature than rather historical source.

(6) Historiography in the Modern Period in India :

(1) Archaeological excavations started in the 20th century under the British rule.

(2) Many British officers wrote about Indian history. Their writing showed great influence of colonial policies of the British.

(3) Their writings display an absence of objective perspective and prejudice about various aspects of the Indian culture.

(7) British officers who wrote about Indian History :

Sr. No.	British Officer	Book	Work/Information
1.	Sir Alexander Cunningham	–	(1) The first Director General of the Archaeological Survey of India. (2) A number of ancient sites were excavated. (3) Sites mentioned in the Buddhist texts were selected for excavation and research.
2.	Sir John Marshall	–	(1) Harappan Civilization was discovered. (2) It proved that Indian Civilization dated back to 3rd millennium B.C.E.
3.	James Mill	The History of British India (Three volumes published in 1817 C.E.)	(1) The first book written on Indian History by a British historian. (2) In 3 volumes published in 1817. (3) It lacked objectivity.
4.	Mountstuart Elphinstone	The History of India	(1) Governor of Bombay (now Mumbai). (2) Published in 1841.
5.	Grant Duff	A History of Mahrattas	(1) Published in 3 volumes. (2) It shows inclination towards condemning Indian culture and history.
6.	Colonel Todd	Todd's Annals of Rajasthan	(1) He wrote history of Rajasthan. (2) The book too condemned Indians.
7.	William Wilson Hunter	A Brief History of India	(1) He wrote two volumes on Indian history. (2) It shows somewhat impartial treatment of history.

6414132

Let us know

(1) Sir Alexander Cunningham :
(23 January 1814 – 28 November 1893)

He was the first Director General of the Archaeological Survey of India. Being in company of his contemporary James Princep developed interest in history and archaeology. He carried out excavations at Sarnath and wrote a book on it. He wrote on sculptures in the temples of Kashmir. He also wrote on Numismatics, temples, stupas and geography. He studied and conducted research on relics found in Bodh Gaya. He laid the foundation of different disciplines required in the study of archaeology.

(2) Sir John Hubert Marshall :
(19 March 1876 – 17 August 1958)

He was the Director of Archaeological Survey of India from 1902 to 1931. During his tenure, excavations at Harappa, Mohenjo-daro, Takshashila, Sanchi were carried out. He modernised approach of cataloguing and conservation of ancient monuments. He published information on inscriptions discovered at various sites. His most important work is the discovery of the 'Indus Valley Civilisation'.

(3) James Mill :
(6 April 1773 – 23 June 1836)

He was a Scottish philosopher, historian and economist. He started writing the History of British India in 1806 and completed it in 1817. It was published in three volumes. His book was the first full historical treatment of the British conquest of India. Mill harshly criticised the British administration of India. During his 17 years of service with the India House he helped to completely reform the system of government in the colony.

(4) Mountstuart Elphinstone :
(6 October 1779 – 20 November 1859)

He was Governor of Bombay from 1819 to 1827. He was a British official who did much to promote popular education and local administration. As envoy, he was appointed to the court of Peshwa II, Bhosales of Nagpur and in the court of Gwalior. He knew Greek, Marathi, Roman and Persian languages. The wealthy natives of Bombay founded a college and institute to honour him for his work.

(5) James Grant Duff :
(8 July 1789 – 23 September 1858)

He was appointed to the important office of resident of Satara state to manage affairs of the state. While in Satara, he collected historical sources like Bakhars, sanads, manuscripts, texts, etc. He collected letters of Aurangzeb and Shivaji's letters to Vyankoji. During the period between 1818 to 1822, he wrote the book 'A history of Mahrattas' in three volumes.

2.2 Indian Historiography of various ideological frameworks :

(1) Colonial Historiography :

(1) It was mainly written by the British officers and Christian missionaries.
(2) Their writings reflected their view that Indian culture had negligible importance. They ridiculed the Indian culture as perpetually backward and undeveloped.
(3) Their writings justified the colonial rule.
(4) The five volumes of 'Cambridge History of India' published between 1922 – 1937 C.E. are examples of Colonial historiography.

(2) Orientalist Historiography :

(1) Many European historians who had curiosity about countries in the East were known as Orientalists.
(2) A comparative study of Sanskrit and some of the European languages was conducted by Orientalists.
(3) Their studies resulted in a perception that an Indian language could be mother of all Indo-European languages.

(3) Orientalist Historians :

(1) **Sir Williams Jones :** He founded the Asiatic Society in Kolkata in 1784. It channellised research in ancient Indian literature and history.
(2) **Friedrich Max Muller :** He was deeply interested in Sanskrit language and literature. He translated Sanskrit text of 'Hitopadesh' in German. He published 50 volumes of The Sacred Books of the East.He compiled 'Rigveda' in 6 volumes.
(3) **Edward Said :** He had brought imperialistic interests of the Orientalist historians into light.

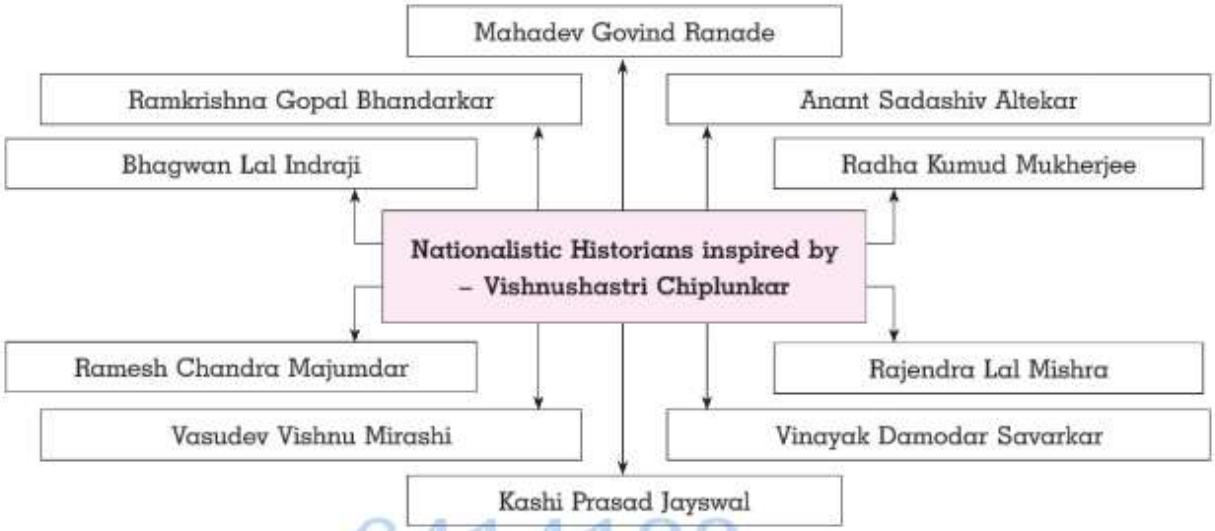
(4) Nationalist Historiography :

(1) English educated Indian historians felt the need to restore the pride in the glory of ancient Indian culture.
(2) Their writings are known as 'Nationalist Historiography'.
(3) They criticised the prejudiced history of ancient India written by British officers.

6414132

(4) The Indian historians wanted to create awareness among Indian masses through their writings about the country's rich past.
(5) Nationalist historians tried to seek the golden era of Indian history.
(6) They are at times criticised for glorifying the past at length and ignoring the historical truth.

(5) Nationalistic Historians :



6414132

(6) Writings of Indian Historiography :

Sr. No.	Indian Scholars	Book/Writing	Information
1.	Vishnushastri Chiplunkar	Nationalistic writing	(1) Inspired Nationalistic Historiography in Maharashtra. (2) Criticised the prejudiced history of ancient India written by British officers.
2.	V.K. Rajwade	Marathyanchya Itihasachi Sadhane (22 volumes)	(1) Founded the Bharat Itihas Samshodhak Mandal. (2) His views on historiography : (i) He stated that history does not include only the stories of political images, conspiracies and wars for seizing power. (ii) History is in all-inclusive image of past societies. (iii) He was of the opinion that we should write our own history. (iv) He insisted that history should be written using authentic documents.
3.	Justice Mahadev Govind Ranade	The Rise of Maratha Power	(1) Explained in detail the background of the rise of Maratha power. (2) Economic, social, religious, cultural preparations before the rise of Maratha Power.

Sr. No.	Indian Scholars	Book/Writing	Information
4.	Vinayak Damodar Savarkar	The Indian War of Independence, 1857	(1) Indians were inspired to fight against British rule. (2) Nationalistic Historiography gained momentum and inspired regional histories too.
5.	Govind Sakharam Sardesai	Marathi Riyasat	(1) He published several volumes of Maratha History. (2) People started addressing him as 'Riyasatkar'.

- **Historiography in the Post Independence Era :** The scholars of the post-independence era felt the need to write histories of various communities, sciences, economic systems, political ideologies, etc.

(A) Marxist History :

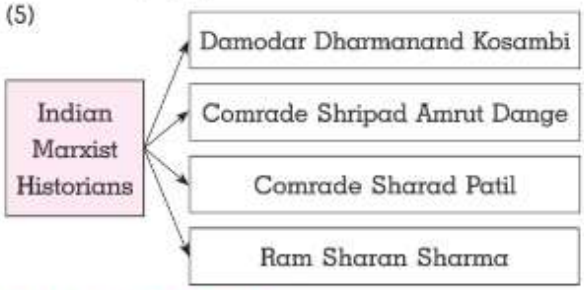
(1) The writings of Marxist historians focused on the means of production, modes of production and the industrial relations.

(2) Their prime focus was to analyse and study the impact of every social event on people.

(3) They studied the transitions within the caste system.

(4) Comrade Shripad Amrut Dange, the founder of Indian Communist Party, wrote a book, 'Primitive Communism to Slavery' which became a prominent example of Marxist historiography.

(5)



(B) Subaltern History :

(1) The seeds of Subaltern history are found in Marxist historiography. Subaltern history is the history of people who are considered as the 'bottommost ranks' of the society.

(2) The process of writing history should start from the bottommost rank. Italian historian Antonio Gramsci played an important role in developing this idea.

(3) Ranjit Guha played an important role in establishing subaltern history as an important academic school of historiography.

(4) Mahatma Phule drew attention to the exploitation of women, *Shudras* and *Atishudras* under the pretext of religion in his book *'Gulamgiri'*.

(5) Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar in his two books, 'Who were the Shudras' and 'The Untouchables' wrote about the injustice done to the dalits and their significant role in shaping the cultural and political aspect of India.

6414132

(C) Feminist History :

(1) Challenges faced by feminist historians :

(1) For a long period of time, male scholars were involved in the writing of Indian history. Hence the role and achievements of women in history remained neglected.

(2) To highlight this fact became the major task of feminist historian. It was a daunting task to compile and study the historical writings of women.

(3) It was also necessary and important to rethink of women's position in history.

(2) Feminist historians :

Sr. No.	Feminist historians	Book	Information
1.	Tarabai Shinde	Stripurush Tulana	(1) Published in 1882 and acknowledged as the first feminist book in India. (2) Attacked prevalent male domination and caste system in India.
2.	Pandita Ramabai	The High Caste Hindu Woman	A book on the life of women published in 1888.
3.	Meera Kosambi	Crossing Thresholds : Feminist Essays in Social history.	(1) Wrote essays on lives of Pandita Ramabai and Dr. Rukhamabai. (2) Writings unfolding the viewpoint of Dalit women in Maharashtra.
4.	Dr. Sharmila Rege	Writing Caste, Writing Gender : Reading Dalit Women's Testimonies	The book contains essays on the autobiographies of Dalit women.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing a correct option : ***(1 mark each)***

6414132

[1]

*(1) ..... was the first Director General of the Archaeological Survey of India.

(a) Sir Alexander Cunningham
(b) Sir William Jones
(c) Sir John Marshall
(d) Friedrich Max Muller

*(2) ..... translated the Sanskrit text of Hitopadesh. ***(July '19)***

(a) James Mill
(b) Friedrich Max Muller
(c) Mountstuart Elphinstone
(d) Sir John Marshall

(3) The first written document found in India was inscribed during the rule of Emperor ..... .

(a) Akbar *(b) Harshavardhan*
(c) Ashoka Maurya *(d) Aurangzeb*

(4) Banabhatta wrote King Harsha's biography titled ..... in the 7th century C.E.

(a) Meghdoot *(b) Rajtarangini*
(c) Rasratnakar *(d) Harshacharit*

(5) In the 12th century C.E., ... wrote a book 'Rajtarangini' about history of Kashmir.

(a) Banabhatta *(b) Kalhana*
(c) Ziquddin Barani *(d) Patanjali*

Ans. (1) Sir Alexander Cunningham (2) Friedrich Max Muller (3) Ashoka Maurya (4) Harshacharit (5) Kalhana.

[2]

(1) The historians in the courts of Muslim rulers were influenced by ..... historiography.

(a) Greek and Roman
(b) Arabic and Persian
(c) English and French
(d) Arabic and Urdu

(2) We get information about the rule of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj from .....

(a) Bhausahebanchi Bakhar
(b) Panipatachi Bakhar
(c) Sabhasad Bakhar
(d) Holkaranchi Bakhar

(3) 'Bhausahebanchi Bakhar' describes Battle of ..... .

(a) *Raigad* (b) *Panipat*

(c) *Plassey* (d) *Vasai*

(4) People began to address ..... as 'Riyasatkar'.

(a) *Damodar Kosambi*

(b) *Govind Sakharam Sardesai*

(c) *V. K. Rajwade*

(d) *Tarabai Shinde*

(5) Nilkanth Janardan Kirtane and V.K. Rajwade exposed the limitations in writings of ..... .

(a) *Friedrich Max Muller*

(b) *Colonel Todd*

(c) *Grant Duff*

(d) *William Wilson Hunter*

(6) ....., an Indian historian played a major role in establishing subaltern history as an important academic school of historiography.

(a) *Comrade Sharad Patil*

(b) *Ranjit Guha*

(c) *Dharmanand Kosambi*

(d) *Ram Sharan Sharma*

6414132

Ans. (1) Arabic and Persian (2) Sabhasad Bakhar (3) Panipat (4) Govind Sakharam Sardesai (5) Grant Duff (6) Ranjit Guha.

---

[3]

(1) The writings of British officials on India display strong influence of ..... .

(a) *Marxism* (b) *Colonialism*

(c) *Feminism* (d) *Capitalism*

(2) The Nationalistic Historiography in Maharashtra was inspired by the works of .....

(a) *Vinayak Damodar Savarkar*

(b) *Ramkrishna Gopal Bhandarkar*

(c) *Vishnushastri Chiplunkar*

(d) *Justice Mahadev Govind Ranade*

(3) The two volumes written by ..... on Indian history show impartial treatment of the subject.

(a) *Colonel Todd* (b) *William Wilson Hunter*

(c) *Grant Duff* (d) *James Mill*

(4) 'Primitive Communism to Slavery', represents the ..... historiography. ***(March '19)***

(a) *Colonial* (b) *Orientalist*

(c) *Nationalistic* (d) *Marxist*

(5) 'Stripurush Tulana' was written by ..... is acknowledged as first feminist book in India.

(a) *Meera Kosambi* (b) *Dr. Sharmila Rege*

(c) *Tarabai Shinde* (d) *Pandita Ramabai*

Ans. (1) Colonialism (2) Vishnushastri Chiplunkar (3) William Wilson Hunter (4) Marxist (5) Tarabai Shinde.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair and write it : ***(1 mark each)***

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

*[1] Name of the Book	Types of Historiography
(1) Who were the Shudras	(a) Subaltern history ***(July '19; Nov. '20)***
(2) Stripurush Tulana	(b) Feminist writing
(3) The Indian War of Independence	(c) Marxist History
(4) Grant Duff	(d) Colonial History

Ans. Wrong pair : The Indian War of Independence – Marxist History.

[2] Name of the Book	Historian
(1) The Rise of the Maratha Power	(a) Justice Mahadev Govind Ranade
(2) Marathyanchya Itihasachi Sadhane	(b) Vishnushastri Chiplunkar
(3) Maratha Riyasat	(c) Govind Sakharam Sardesai
(4) Gulamgiri	(d) Mahatma Phule

Ans. Wrong pair : Marathyanchya Itihasachi Sadhane – Vishnushastri Chiplunkar.

[3] Work	Scholars
(1) Bharat Itihas Samshodhak Mandal	(a) V. K. Rajwade
(2) Asiatic Society	(b) Sir William Jones
(3) Inspiration for Nationalistic historiography in Maharasthra	(c) Vishnushastri Chiplunkar
(4) Discovery of Harappan Civilization	(d) James Mill

Ans. Wrong pair : Discovery of Harappan Civilization – James Mill.

[4] Historiography	Historian
(1) Nationalistic Historiography	(a) V. D. Savarkar
(2) Marxist Historiography	(b) Damodar Kosambi
(3) Subaltern Historiography	(c) Ramchandra Guha
(4) Feminist Historiography	(d) Sharmila Rege

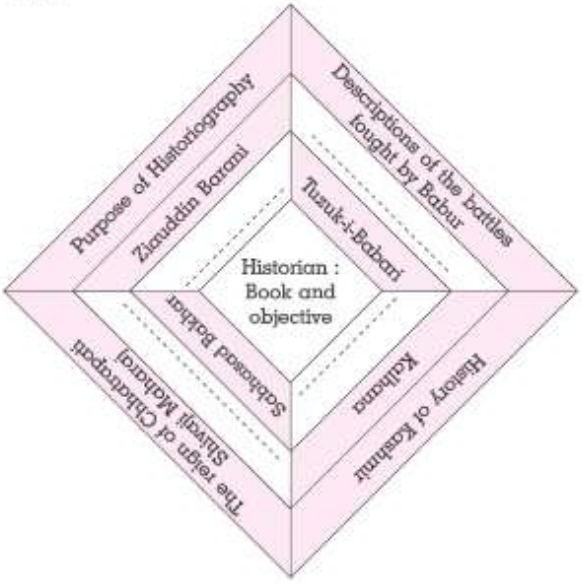
Ans. Wrong pair : Subaltern Historiography– Ramchandra Guha.

6441132

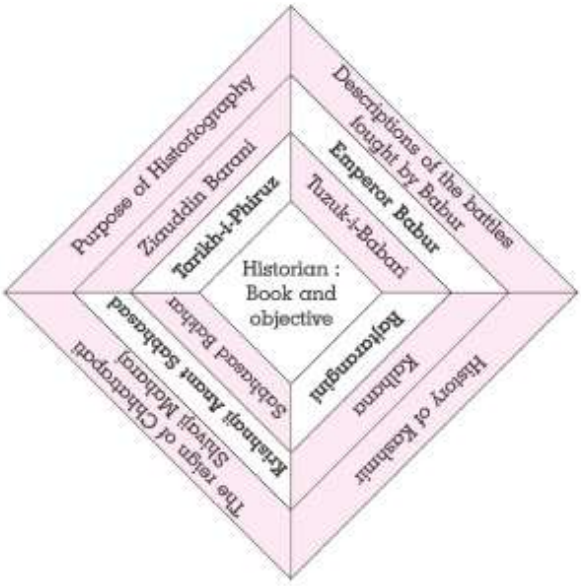
Q. 3 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

(A) Complete the following concept chart :

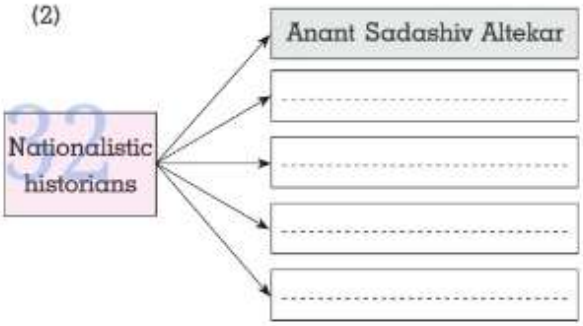
*(1)



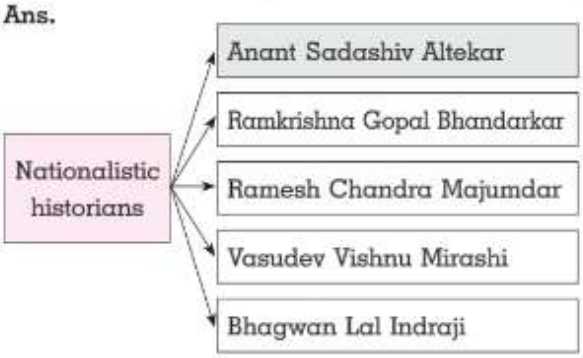
Ans.



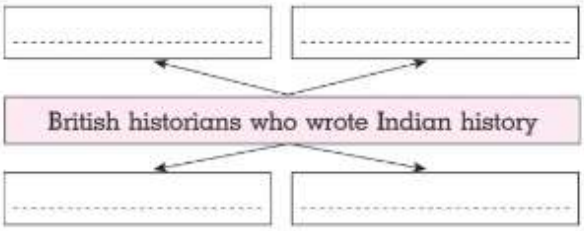
(2)



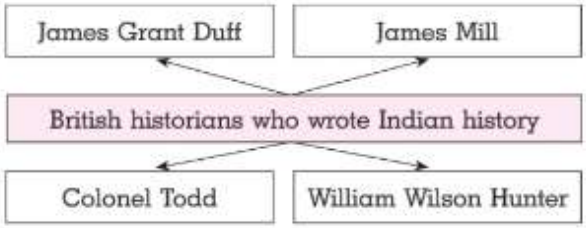
Ans.



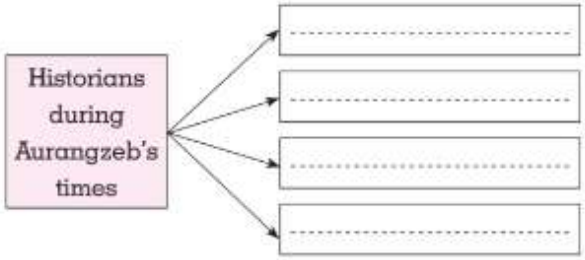
(3)



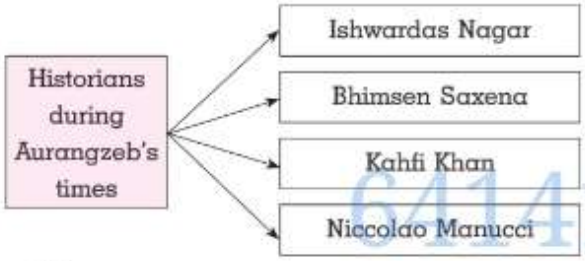
Ans.



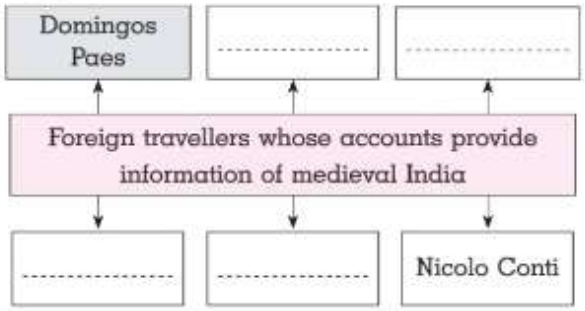
(4)



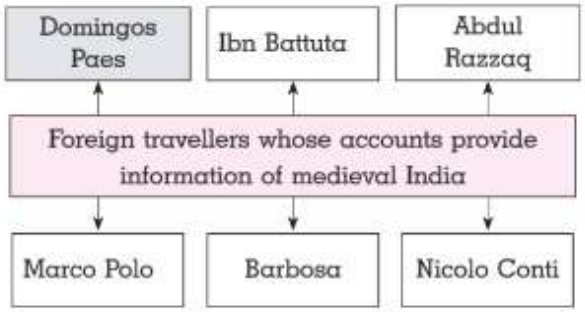
Ans.



(5)



Ans.



(B) Complete the following table : *(July '19)

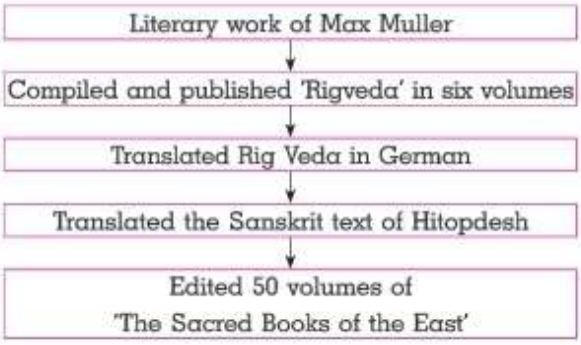
Historian	Name of the Book
(1) James Mill	The History of British India
(2) James Grant Duff	.....
(3)	The History of India
(4) S. A. Dange	.....
(5)	Who Were the Shudras

Ans.

Historian	Name of the Book
(1) James Mill	The History of British India
(2) James Grant Duff	**A History of Mahrattas**
(3) **Mountstuart Elphinstone**	The History of India
(4) S. A. Dange	**Primitive Communism to Slavery**
(5) **Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar**	Who were the Shudras

(C) Prepare a flow chart on Literary work of Max Muller :

Ans. **Literary work of Max Muller**



Q. 4 Explain the following Concepts : ***(2 marks each)***

Note : *'Explain the Concept' will be asked under the question 'Write Short Notes' in History. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

***(1) Orientalist Historiography :**

Ans. (1) In the later part of the eighteenth century many European scholars felt curious to know about civilisations and countries of the East.

6414132

(2) These scholars who studied the Indian Civilization had respect and admiration for it. They were known as 'Orientalists'.

(3) They studied similarities between Sanskrit and some of the European languages, focussing more on Vedic traditions and Sanskrit literature. It resulted in the notion that an ancient language could be the mother of all Indo-European languages.

(4) Notable Orientalist scholars are Friedrich Max Muller and William Jones.

***(2) Nationalistic Historiography :**

Ans. (1) English education started in India in the nineteenth century. The Indian historians who were trained in English education system realised the glory of their past.

(2) They showed an inclination to restore the pride in the ancient glory of India and the self-esteem of the Indian readers. They laid the foundation of Nationalistic writing. Nationalistic writings in Maharashtra were inspired by 'Vishnushastri Chiplunkar'.

(3) Nationalistic historians opposed the prejudiced history written by the British officers. Mahadev Govind Ranade, Vinayak Damodar Savarkar, Ramesh Chandra Majumdar are renowned Nationalistic historians.

(4) Nationalistic historiography inspired freedom struggle against the Britishers and gave momentum to write about regional history. While glorifying the past, at times they are blamed for ignoring to critically analyse the truth.

***(3) Subaltern History :**

Ans. (1) History of deprived classes or communities who were deprived of all rights is known as subaltern history.

(2) The seeds of subaltern history can be traced in the Marxist history. Italian historian Antonio Gramsci has special importance in writing the subaltern history. He presented the idea that history should be written starting from the bottommost ranks of people in the society.

(3) Ranjit Guha, an Indian historian, has given prominence to subaltern history and played a major role in establishing it as an important academic school of historiography.

(4) Similar thoughts were expressed by Mahatma Phule and Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar which can be found in their writings.

Q. 5 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

(1) 'Harshacharit' and 'Rajtarangini' :

Ans. (1) Banabhatta wrote Harshacharit, biography of King Harsha in 7th century C.E.

(2) He portrayed a realistic picture of the social, economic, political, religious and cultural life during the rule of King Harsha.

(3) Kalhana wrote 'Rajtarangini' in the 12th century C.E., is based on history of Kashmir.

(4) He wrote this text after examining various sources like inscriptions, coins, remains of ancient monuments, dynastic records and local traditions.

(2) Colonial Historiography :

Ans. (1) The history written by British officers and Christian missionaries in support of British rule and colonialism is known as Colonial historiography.

(2) It reflected their prejudiced mindset about Indian culture. They ridiculed the Indian culture as being primitive.

(3) Their writings justified the colonial British rule.

(4) The distinct example of colonial historiography is 'Cambridge History of India' in five volumes published during 1922 – 1937.

(3) Alexander Cunningham :

Ans. (1) British rulers started archaeological exploration and research in India in the 20th century.

(2) They established the Archaeological Survey of India and appointed Sir Alexander Cunningham as its first Director General.

(3) He mainly chose the sites mentioned in the Buddhist texts for excavations.

(4) Many other ancient sites were excavated under his supervision.

(4) James Mill :

Ans. (1) James Mill, a British historian, had written the monumental book 'The History of British India'. He published it in three volumes in 1817.

6444132

(2) The book is important as it was the first book written by a British officer on Indian history.

(3) The book lacks objective perspective and is prejudiced about various aspects of the Indian culture.

(5) Grant Duff :

Ans. (1) Grant Duff, a British officer, wrote the book 'A History of Mahrattas', in three volumes.

(2) His name stands out among the British officers who wrote about Maratha history.

(3) The tendency of the British historians to condemn Indian culture and history is found in Grant Duff's writing.

(4) Historians Nilkanth Janardan Kirtane and Vishwanath Kashinath Rajwade exposed the limitations of Grant Duff's writings.

(6) Indian Feminist Historiography :

(March '20)

Ans. (1) Tarabai Shinde, Pandita Ramabai and Dr. Rukhamabai were feminist historians before independence.

(2) They wrote about employment of women, their right to political equality, treatment meted out to women at their workplace and gender discrimination.

(3) A lot of literature is available unfolding the viewpoint of Dalit women on problems like social class, caste, etc. In the post-independence era, Dr. Sharmila Rege included her essays on the autobiographies of Dalit women in her book, 'Writing Caste, Writing Gender : Reading Dalit Women's Testimonies.'

(4) Meera Kosambi's book, 'Crossing Thresholds : Feminist Essays in Social History' contains essays on the life stories of women like Pandita Ramabai and Dr. Rukhamabai, the first practising lady Doctor of India.

(7) Objectives of writing history according to Ziauddin Barani :

Ans. (1) Ziauddin Barani explained the objectives of historiography. According to him, the duty of a historian does not end with recording the ruler's valour and welfare policies.

(2) He should also write about the ruler's failings and incorrect policies.

(3) He further adds that a historian should also take into account the impact of the teachings of the wise, the learned and the saints on the cultural life of people.

Thus, Ziauddin Barani holds important place as he expanded the scope of historiography.

(8) Importance of Tarabai Shinde in writing feminist historiography :

Ans. (1) Tarabai Shinde has a prominent place among the feminist historians who wrote about women in the nineteenth century, i.e. pre-independence era.

(2) She wrote a book Stripurush Tulana which was published in 1882. It is acknowledged as the first feminist book published in India.

(3) Her writings attacked the male-dominated social system and the caste system.

Q. 6 Explain the following with reasons :

(2 marks each)

(1) Writing of the regional history received momentum.** ***(March '19; July '19)

Ans. (1) Indian historians trained in the British educational system showed an inclination to restore the self-esteem of Indians. They started writing Nationalistic Historiography.

(2) Historians from the different regions of India criticised the prejudiced history of India written by the British officers.

(3) Their attention was drawn towards geographic conditions and history of different regions of India.

(4) The nationalistic historiography helped in triggering the independence movement. It provided a momentum to the writing of regional histories for e.g. Nationalistic writings in Maharashtra were inspired by Vishnu Shastri Chiplunkar.

Hence, writing of the regional history received momentum.

***(2) Bakhar is an important type of historical document.**

Ans. (1) Bakhars are important source of history like coins, inscriptions, texts, copper plates and travelogues.

(2) Bakhars contain eulogies of the heroes, historic events, stories of lives of great men and description of battles. It portrays a picture of prevalent society, religions and economic life.

G4141132

(3) Bakhars are of various types which contain biographies of kings, dynastic history, description of events, sects, autobiographies, mythologies, administration of kings, etc.

(4) These descriptions are helpful for writing historiography. Among well-known Marathi. Bakhars 'Sabhasad Bakhar' written by Krishnaji Anant Sabhasad requires a special mention. Bhausahebanchi Bakhar and Panipatachi Bakhar describe the 'Battle of Panipat'.

Hence, Bakhars are important type of historical document.

(3) The history of Indian civilization dates back to 3rd millennium B.C.E.

Ans. (1) Indian civilisation is among the various ancient civilisations in the world.

(2) Excavations at Harappa took place in 1920 under the supervision of Sir John Marshall, then Director General of Archaeological Survey of India (ASI). This led to the discovery of Harappan Civilization.

(3) This discovery proved helpful to trace the antiquity of Indian history which dates back 3rd millennium B.C.E. or earlier.

(4) It became necessary to rethink of women's position in history.

Ans. (1) For a considerable period of time, mainly male scholars were involved in the writing of Indian history. It was obvious that the perspective was male-dominated.

(2) The work of the women historians was neglected for long. So it became important to highlight this fact.

(3) It was a huge challenge in front of the women historians to compile the work and do research which would prove to be a medium to put forth their status in society.

Hence, it became necessary to rethink about the position of women in history.

(5) Govind Sakharam Sardesai was addressed as 'Riyasatkar'.

Ans. (1) Govind Sakharam Sardesai had a momentous achievement to his credit by publishing 'Maratha Riyasat'.

(2) He published several volumes of Maratha history.

(3) His work became so popular that people began to address him as 'Riyasatkar'.

Q. 7 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

> **Note :** *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

***(1) Which things are included in the description of Emperor Babur's autobiography ?**

Ans. Babur, the founder of the Mughal empire, in his autobiography entitled Tuzuk-i-Babari describes :

(1) The battles fought by him. (2) Recordings of minute observations of various regions and cities visited by him noting minute observations. (3) Observation of the local customs, economy, fauna and flora of the region travelled by him.

***(2) What is the contribution of Swatantryaveer Savarkar to nationalistic historiography ?**

Ans. (1) The writings of Swatantyaveer Savarkar were infused with nationalistic ideas. He looked at the revolt of 1857 as the First War of Independence and wrote the book 'The Indian War of Independence, 1857'.

(2) His book gave inspiration to Nationalistic historiography which helps in triggering independence movement of the Indian people against the British. Even the writing of regional history got momentum.

(3) The attention of historians was drawn towards the history and geographic conditions and variations in the South Indian region.

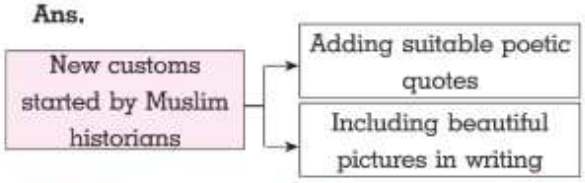
Q. 8 Read the given passage and answer the questions given below : *(4 marks)*

> **Textbook page 8**
> For the historians ... ... and the flora.

(1) Complete the graphical presentation : (1)

New customs started by Muslim historians → ..... / .....

Ans.



(2) What was considered more important by the historians in the Mughal Court? (1)

Ans. Praising the Mughal emperor and exhibition of loyalty was considered more important by the historians in the Mughal Court.

(3) Why is Abbul Fazl's writing considered realistic? (2)

Ans. (1) Abul Fazl's Akbarnama reflects his critical viewpoint.

(2) He collected authentic historical documents for this book.

(3) He scrutinised these documents to affirm their reliability. Therefore, his method is looked upon as devoid of bias and hence realistic.

Q. 9 Write detailed answers to the following questions : *(3 marks each)*

6414132

(1) What is Marxist History? *(March '20)

Ans. (1) In the post-independence era, new trends emerged in writing Indian historiography. Marxist historiography is prominent among them.

(2) Historiography which is based on ideas of Karl Marx is known as Marxist Historiography. In Marxist Historiography, more importance was given to class struggles.

(3) Marxist Historiography reflects concerns for means and modes of production as well as the industrial relations. These became centre of writings of the Marxist historians.

(4) How every social event affects the life of people was analysed and it became the theme of Marxist historians. Marxist historians studied the transitions that took place in the caste system.

(5) Notable Indian historians who adopted Marxist ideologies were Damodar Kosambi, Comrade Shripad Dange, Sharad Patil and Ram Sharan Sharma.

(6) Their writings reflected Marxist ideology. Comrade Dange was the founder member of the Indian Communist Party.

(2) What is the contribution of Itihasacharya V. K. Rajwade to historiography? *(Nov. '20)

Ans. (1) V.K. Rajwade is well-known for his writings in Marathi on subjects like history, linguistics, etymology and grammar. His contributions are as follows :

(2) He compiled and edited 22 volumes of Marathyanchya Itihasachi Sadhane.

(3) He stated that history is the all-inclusive image of the past societies.

(4) V. K. Rajwade was of the view that history does not include only the stories of political images, conspiracies and wars for seizing power.

(5) He was of the firm opinion that we should write our own history and insisted that history should be written only using the authentic sources.

(6) He was of the opinion that description of any human event in historiography should have balanced combination of three factors namely – Time, Space and Personalities.

(3) Write information about historiography in the ancient period of India.

Ans. (1) In the ancient period, stories of great deeds of ancestors, mythological lore, memories of social transitions were preserved through oral traditions.

(2) The art of writing was mastered by Indians as early as 3rd millennium B.C.E. But Harappan script is not deciphered yet.

(3) The earliest written documents found in India were in the form of inscriptions that are as old as 3rd century B.C.E. during the period of Emperor Ashok. His edicts are inscribed on natural rocks and stone pillars.

(4) Inscriptions started to occur on coins, metal images and sculptures and also on copper plates from the 1st century B.C.E.

(5) Epics like Ramayana, Mahabharat, Puranas, Jain and Buddhist texts are important sources of ancient Indian literature.

(6) Historical accounts by Indian authors and travelogues by foreign travellers are also important sources of history.

(4) Explain the works of Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar and Mahatma Phule in Subaltern History.

Ans. (1) History of the deprived classes expressed in folklore was known as 'Subaltern History'.

(2) Similar thoughts were expressed by Mahatma Jotirao Phule and Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar.

(3) Mahatma Phule unfolded the history of the *Shudratishudra* communities in his book 'Gulamgiri'.

(4) He drew attention to show how women, *Shudras* and *Atishudras* were exploited under the name of religion.

(5) Dr. Ambedkar focused on the idea that in spite of having a significant role in shaping the cultural and political aspects of India, the role of Dalits was not duly acknowledged in colonial and nationalistic historiography.

(6) Injustice done to the Dalits was mostly written by him. 'Who Were the Shudras' and 'The Untouchables' are his books which can be cited as examples of subaltern history.

(5) Write a short note on Copper-plate inscriptions.

Ans. (1) The copper-plate shown in the picture was found at Sohagaura in Gorakhpur district in Uttar Pradesh.

(2) It is supposed to be from the Mauryan period and the inscription on it is in Brahmi script.

(3) Many symbols are inscribed on it 'Tree-in-railing' and 'Mountain' at the beginning of inscription occur on punch marked coins.

(4) A structure created on four pillars is indicative of a granary.

(5) The inscriptions have a record of royal order that the grains stored in the granary should be distributed carefully. This order is suggestive of precautionary measures taken during famine.

6414132

Project

- Prepare an illustrated manuscript with help of the Internet giving more information about the historians mentioned in this lesson.

Memory Map

(1)

Historiography : Indian Tradition

- Historiography in Ancient period
  - Harappan civilization : Art of writing developed
  - Earliest inscription found in India dates back to Emperor Ashoka's period
- Historiography in Medieval period
  - Islamic Historian
  - Their books and style of writing
  - Bakhar Literature
- Historiography in Modern period
  - Indian history written by British official
  - Indian historians

(2)

Various Ideological Frameworks in Indian Historiography

Colonial Historiography	Orientalist Historiography	Nationalistic Historiography	Marxist Historiography	Subaltern Historiography	Feminist Historiography
Cambridge History of India	William Jones, Max Muller	Rajwade, Savarkar, Chiplunkar	Kosambi, Dange, Sharad Patil	Mahatma Phule, Dr. Ambedkar	Tarabai Shinde, Dr. Rukhamabai, Pandita Ramabai

6414132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

3 APPLIED HISTORY

IMPORTANT POINTS

3.1 What is Applied History?

(1) Applied History (Public History) :

(1) A study to determine how useful the knowledge and application of history is for the benefit of people in present and future times.

(2) It provides guidance in finding the solutions to contemporary social issues.

(3) It is also called Public History as it relates the history and its knowledge to social planning.

It is interesting to know (Textbook Page 15)

- **Misgivings about History :**

(1) History is thought as a field only for historians and students pursuing higher studies.

(2) It is not useful in practical/daily life.

(3) It does not have any relation or applicability to economically productive fields.

(2) Importance of study/knowledge of history :

It is useful :

(1) To provide guidance and in finding solutions to contemporary social issues.

(2) To incorporate the solutions in social planning.

(3) To help people in future planning.

(3) Participation of common people in projects :

(1) Tourists visit museums, ancient sites.

(2) Tourism helps create interest in history.

(3) People take part in conservation and preservation of their own city or village.

3.2 Applied History and Research in various fields :

(1) (1) The way our present is shaped depends on the historical chain of events.

(2) These events are related to various fields like politics, science and technology, philosophy and socio-religious structure of community.

(3) The future development of all these fields is dependent on the state of available knowledge.

(4) Every field has its own history of forming its knowledge base.

6414132

(2) Relation between research method of history and various fields :

Sr. No.	Subject	Application of Research Method of History
1.	Philosophy	(1) To understand the origin of various ideologies, intellectual traditions giving rise to those ideologies and their development, history of philosophy is very helpful. (2) In order to understand the philosophical expression, knowledge of history of the language in which it is expressed is useful. (3) Philosophy is considered to be an origin of science and all branches of knowledge while discovering the origin of universe, the whole society has put forth, the different stories, legends, ideas about gods and goddesses, rituals and different ways of worship. The origin of philosophy lies in these thoughts.

2.	Science	(1) To understand the chronological order of scientific discoveries, theories and inventions, the history of science is helpful. (2) It can be helpful to understand cause-effect chain that led to those discoveries and inventions.
3.	Technology	(1) The history of technology helps in understanding the changes and their causes in the field of agricultural production, commodity production, architecture and engineering, etc. (2) It also helps in understanding the evolution of mankind from making of stone tools to mastering the techniques of agriculture production and later the advancement of science promoted mechanisation of production.
4.	Industry and Commerce	(1) The field of mutual social transactions expands with the growth of industry and trade. (2) The nature of market and commerce; human relationships and the social organisation has continued to change along with the change in market and commerce. (3) To understand these changes and development it is necessary to study history of social organisation, culture and financial management.
5.	Management Studies	In order to understand various factors involved in the chain of production such as means of production, human resources and processes of production as well as the chain of market and sales management; it is necessary to know similar functional systems of the past.
6.	Arts	To understand the development of various art forms and their style of expression in the form of intellectual, emotional, cultural traditions, study the history of the specific art form is important.
7.	Humanities	To understand development of history, archaeology, sociology, anthropology, political science and economics, etc. it is important to study the history of origin of these disciplines.

6414132

3.3 Applied History and Our Present :

(1) History of Heritage :

(1) The visible and invisible relics of the past exist in the present.

(2) These relics represent the creative thoughts and traditions of our ancestors. It is our heritage which gives us identity.

(3) It is necessary to preserve and conserve not only for our benefit but also for the benefit of future generations.

(2) Uses of Applied History :

(1) It helps to conserve and preserve tangible and intangible heritage.

(2) It creates opportunities of employment.

(3) It helps to understand the present with the help of history.

(4) It helps to find the right direction for the benefit of our future.

3.4 Management of Cultural and Natural Heritage :

(1) Cultural and Natural Heritage :

(1) Cultural Heritage		(2) Natural Heritage
(i) Tangible Cultural Heritage	(ii) Intangible Cultural Heritage	
(1) ancient sites (2) buildings/monuments (3) artefacts (4) manuscripts (5) sculptures (6) paintings, etc.	(1) Oral traditions and their language (2) Traditional knowledge (3) Social customs and rituals of celebrating festivals (4) Styles of performing arts (5) Certain traditional skills (6) Communities, groups who represent such traditions, customs and skills	(1) Fauna (2) Flora (3) Ecology (4) Geomorphic characteristics

[Note : UNESCO declared several Indian traditions – tangible and intangible, cultural and natural sites as 'World Heritage'. A list of which is given on page 18 of the Textbook. Students should read and remember it for objective type questions as well as for concept map.]

(2) The list of World Heritage :

(1) To preserve and promote our Natural and Cultural Heritage for the benefits of future generations, UNESCO, the global organisation has given some directives.

(2) On the basis of those directives the list of sites and traditions are declared as World Heritage.

(3) From India, it includes Temples, Caves, Taj Mahal like architectural wonders and National parks.

(4) In Maharashtra, it includes caves from Ajanta, Verul and Gharapuri in Mumbai. Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Terminus and Kas Plateau in the Satara district of the Western Ghats are also included in World Heritage Site.

(3) Conservation and Preservation :

(1) Archaeological Survey of India and various State Departments of Archaeology are in charge of preservation and conservation of our cultural heritage.

(2) INTACH (Indian National Trust for Arts and Cultural Heritage) is actively working in this field.

(3) It requires the participation of experts from various fields.

(4) Applied history can be useful to create awareness about the cultural, social and political history of the heritage site.

Let us know

- **Archaeology :**

The scientific study of the material remains of past human life and activities is known as **Archaeology**. The aim of archaeology is to study and document the development of humans and their culture. Archaelogical investigations are principal source of the knowledge of prehistoric, ancient and extinct cultures. The discipline involves surveying excavation, classification dating and interpretation of materials. The materials that are the subject of research in archaeology include everything made or used by human beings : utensils, tools, weapons, ornaments, monuments, inscriptions, copper-plates, etc.

(4) Benefits of conservation and preservation of our heritage :

(1) We can preserve, conserve and develop the heritage site without causing any change in its original state.

(2) We get information about social structure, challenges faced by the local people and their expectations.

6414132

(3) Preservation, conservation and development of a heritage is possible without hurting sentiments of the local people.
(4) The participation of the local people in the project can be facilitated.
(5) Planning should be done in such a way that local skills get encouragement and they get better employment opportunities of livelihood.

3.5 Affiliated Professional Fields :

(1) Professional fields affiliated to Applied History :

(1) Museums and Archives
(2) Preservation and conservation of historical sites.
(3) Museum curators are appointed.
(4) Entertainment and Mass Media.

(2) Opportunities for professionals on projects in the field of Applied History :

(1) Experts like historians, archaeologists, sociologists, legal experts, etc.
(2) Technicians like Engineers, Architects, Skilled photographers are hired.
(3) Museum curators are appointed.
(4) Related industries and business.

6414132

Do You Know? (Textbook Page 19)

• **Museum of 'Ur' :**

(1) The earliest museum in the world (6th Century B.C.E.) was discovered in the city of 'Ur' in Mesopotamia.
(2) This museum was discovered by British Archaeologist Sir Leonard Woolley.
(3) It was built by the then Princess Ennigaldi. She was also the curator of the museum.
(4) The clay tablets inscribed with the description of exhibited artefacts are a noteworthy feature of this museum.

Do You Know? (Textbook Page 20)

(1) Indian Museum :

(1) The Indian Museum at Kolkata was established by Asiatic Society in 1814 C.E.
(2) Danish botanist, Nathaniel Wallich was the founder and first curator of this museum.
(3) Arts, Archaeology and Anthropology are the three main departments of this museum.

(2) Archives :

(1) A place where old documents, official records and old films are preserved is known as Archives.
(2) The National Archives of India is in Delhi. Every state in India maintains its archives independently.

(3) National Film Archives :

(1) The National Film Archives of India was established in 1964 by the Ministry of Information and Broadcasting.
(2) It is the media unit of Broadcasting Ministry of Government of India having its main office at Pune, Maharashtra.
(3) It serves three objectives which are :
   (a) To search and obtain rare Indian films and preserve them for the benefit of future generation.
   (b) To carry out research in various fields related to films and create documentation and catalogues.
   (c) To establish a centre for dissemination of films culture.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing a correct option : *(1 mark each)*

*(1) The earliest museum in the world was discovered in the excavations at the city of ..... .

(a) Delhi *(b) Harappa*
(c) Ur *(d) Kolkata*

*(2) The National Archives of India is in ..... ***(March '19; Nov. '20)***

(a) Delhi *(b) Kolkata*
(c) Mumbai *(d) Chennai*

(3) ..... Institute of Art, Design and Technology at Bengaluru has an independent department named 'Centre for Public History'.

(a) Pitch (b) INTACH (c) Shrushti (d) AIIMS

(4) ..... is the mother of science and all other branches of knowledge. ***(March '20)***

(a) Philosophy (b) History

(c) Technology (d) Mythology

(5) In order to preserve and conserve cultural and natural heritage for the benefit of future generations ..... has given directives.

(a) UNICEF (b) UN (c) UNESCO (d) INTACH

(6) The ..... in the Satara District of the Western Ghats is included in the list of World Natural Heritage.

(a) Balaghat Mountain (b) Melghat

(c) Masai Plateau (d) Kas Plateau

(7) The main office of the National Film Archives of India is situated at .....

(a) Delhi (b) Mumbai (c) Pune (d) Nagpur

(8) Excavations at the city of 'Ur' in Mesopotamia were conducted by .....

(a) Nathaniel Wallick (b) Ennigaldi

(c) Leonard Wolley (d) Sir John Marshall

Ans. (1) Ur (2) Delhi (3) Shrushti (4) Philosophy (5) UNESCO (6) Kas Plateau (7) Pune (8) Leonard Wolley.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : ***(1 mark each)***

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

*[1]	*(July '19)*
(1) Kootiyattam	(a) Sanskrit theatre, Kerala
(2) Ramman	(b) Dance form in West Bengal
(3) Ramlila	(c) Traditional performance of Ramayana in Uttar Pradesh
(4) Kalbelia	(d) Folk songs and dances of Rajasthan

Ans. Wrong pair : Ramman – Dance form in West Bengal

[2] Cultural Heritage	Place
(1) Red Fort	(a) Udaipur
(2) Jantar Mantar	(b) Jaipur
(3) Brihadeeshvara Temple	(c) Thanjavur
(4) Capital Complex	(d) Chandigarh

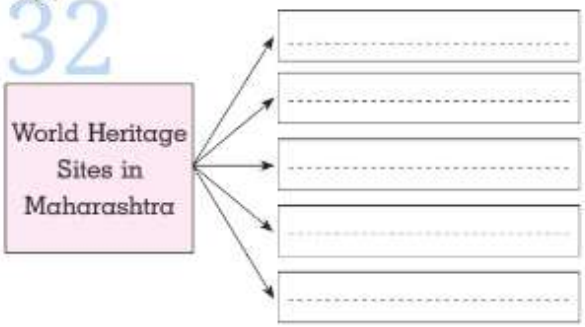
Ans. Wrong pair : Red Fort – Udaipur

[3]	
(1) Applied History	(a) Public History
(2) Fauna and Flora	(b) Natural Heritage
(3) Ancient sites	(c) Intangible Cultural Heritage
(4) UNESCO	(d) The list of World Natural Heritage

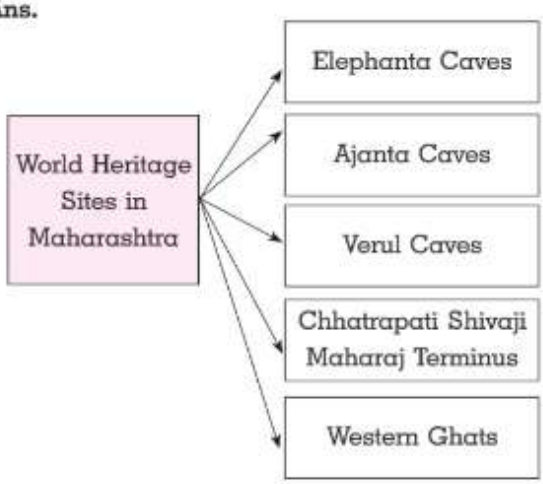
Ans. Wrong pair : Ancient sites – Intangible Cultural Heritage.

Q. 3 Complete the graphical presentation : ***(2 marks each)***

*(1)

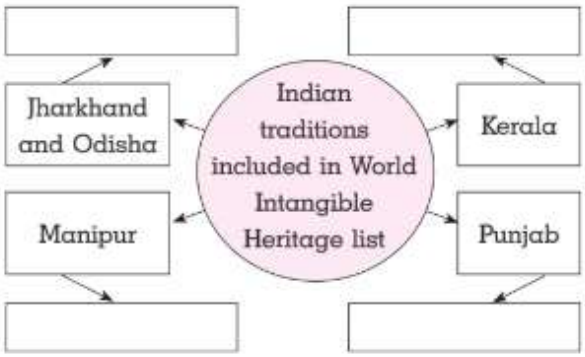


Ans.

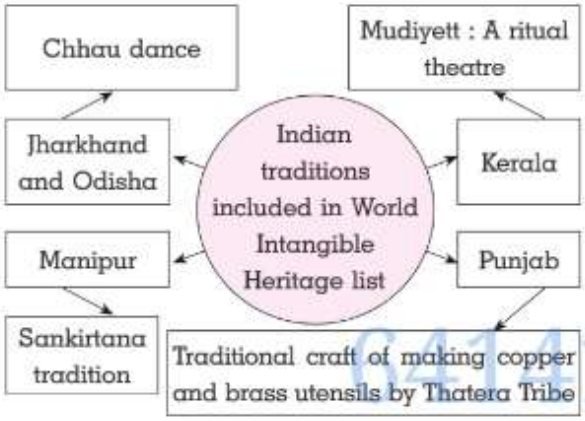


6414132

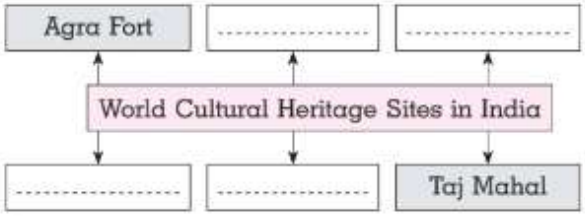
(2)



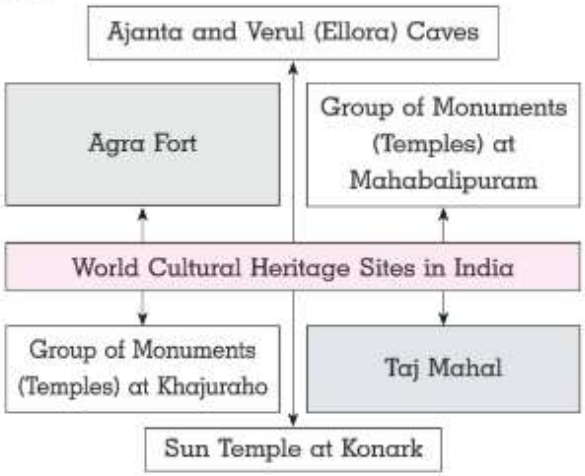
Ans.



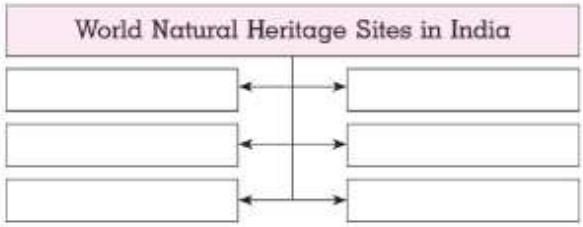
(3)



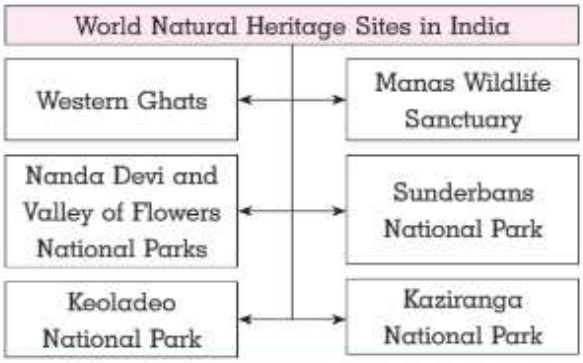
Ans.



(4) *(March '20)*



Ans.



Q. 4 Explain the following Concepts : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Explain the Concept' will be asked under the question 'Write Short Notes' in History. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

***(1) Applied History :**

Ans. (1) When one subject is applied to different fields and conclusions are derived, it is known as application of that subject.

(2) When objectives of History are applied to other subjects; new conclusions are obtained. This is known as 'Applied History'. It is also known as Public History.

(3) We get insights of the events that took place in the past through history. Applied History is concerned with application of knowledge of history to provide guidance in finding solutions to contemporary social issues and include them in social planning.

(4) Thus 'Applied History' is a field of study concerned with the application of history for the benefit of people in the contemporary and future times.

***(2) Archives :**

Ans. (1) A place where historical documents are preserved is called an 'Archive'. Many old

documents, official records, old films, records of treaties are kept at this place.

(2) We get references of original documents because of Archives. A study of historical events of a particular period is possible.

(3) We come to know about language, script used in a particular period/era.

(4) The National Archives of India is in Delhi. It is the largest Archive in Asia. Every state in India maintains its archives independently.

Q. 5 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Natural Heritage :

Ans. (1) In Cultural heritage what we inherit is man-made but Natural heritage is bestowed upon us by Nature.

(2) The concept of natural heritage gives importance to the thought of biodiversity.

(3) The following things are included in natural heritage :

(a) Fauna

(b) Flora

(c) Ecology required for sustaining animal and plant life, flora and fauna of a particular region.

(d) Geomorphic characteristics, sanctuaries, mountain ranges, river valleys, lakes and dams are all part of natural heritage.

(2) The misgivings about history among the people :

Ans. There are many misgivings about history among the people :

(1) History is a subject only for historians and students who pursue higher studies in history.

(2) It has no relevance or applicability in our day-to-day life.

(3) History is nothing but piece of information about the battles fought by kings and politics.

(4) History cannot be connected to an economically productive field.

(3) Importance of Applied History :

Ans. (1) Applied History is a field of study which helps us understand our ancient heritage.

(2) We realise the importance of preserving our heritage.

(3) The process of preservation and conservation of tangible and intangible heritage sites generate employment opportunities.

(4) The study of Applied History help us to get a better understanding of the present and can provide guidance for the future.

(4) Indian Museum :

Ans. (1) The Indian Museum at Kolkata is the oldest museum and one of the important heritage sites of India.

(2) Nathaniel Wallich, a Danish botanist, founded the museum in 1814 C.E. He was also its first curator.

(3) The museum has three main departments Arts, Archaeology and Anthropology.

(4) Other affiliated departments are conservation, publication, photography, exhibition-presentation, model-making, training, library and security.

(5) National Film Archives :

Ans. (1) The main office of the National Film Archives of India is located at Pune and was established in 1964.

(2) It functions as the Media Unit of the Ministry of Information and Broadcasting of the Indian Government.

(3) It was established with the view of three objectives. They are :

(a) To search and obtain the rare Indian films and preserve our heritage for the benefit of future generations.

(b) To categorise important aspects of films, create documentation and do research.

(c) To establish a centre for dissemination of 'films culture'.

Q. 6 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

Note : *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

***(1) 'Public History' :**

Ans. (1) Public History also known as 'Applied History' is a field of study concerned with the application of history for the benefit of people in the contemporary and future life.

6414132

(2) It provides solutions to the contemporary social issues and incorporate them in social planning.

(3) It helps to overcome misgivings about history and makes history meaningful in everyday life connecting people to history.

(2) The role of UNESCO in the context of heritage sites :** ***(July '19)

Ans. The role of UNESCO, the global agency of United Nations, is as follows :

(1) For preservation and conservation of natural and cultural heritage which is in a ruined state because of years of neglect, UNESCO has announced some directive principles.

(2) The organisation announces list which includes the names of sites and traditions which meet the criteria.

(3) On the basis of those directives it declares a list of sites and traditions of world heritage.

Q. 7 Explain the following statements giving reasons : ***(2 marks each)***

***(1) It is essential to study the history of technology.**

Ans. (1) Man acquired different skills at various stages in his evolution process.

(2) From making stone tools to developing new techniques of agriculture production, he learnt many skills and entered in the age of science.

(3) Agricultural production, commodity production, architecture, engineering, etc. underwent several changes. Production increased manifold because of technology.

(4) Hence, it is necessary to know the history of technology in order to understand the development in mechanisation and mutual dependence between science and technology.

(2) The list of World Heritage sites is announced by UNESCO.** ***(March '19 – '20)

Ans. (1) Cultural heritage is a form of human creation. It is a cultural treasure that has been inherited from our ancestors. We feel connected to it and hence preserve and conserve it.

(2) This heritage is our asset that binds us to our past and hence we should preserve it for the benefit of future generations.

(3) In order to save this heritage, UNESCO has announced some directives.

(4) On the basis of those directives, list of sites, and traditions are declared as 'World Heritage'. It has helped us in promoting these sites as tourist places.

(3) It is essential to study the history of philosophy.

Ans. (1) Humanities include disciplines like history, archaeology, sociology, anthropology, political science, economics, etc.

(2) To understand the history of the origin and development of these disciplines is an essential part of their learning.

(3) Various disciplines under humanities have theoretical foundations based on philosophical theories.

Therefore, it is essential to study the history of philosophy.

(4) It is important to know the history of Industry and Commerce.

Ans. (1) With the growth of industry and trade, the field of mutual social transactions also expand.

(2) It promoted development of the network of cultural interactions.

(3) As the nature of market and commerce changed so did the nature of human relationships and the social organisation.

(4) This series of changes is influenced by prevalent culture, social structure and economic system. All this is an integral part of the industrial and commercial management.

Therefore, it becomes important to know the history of Industry and Commerce.

(5) It is necessary to preserve and conserve our natural and cultural heritage.

Ans. (1) The visible and invisible relics of the past exist in the present.

(2) They represent the thought and traditions of our ancestors.

(3) We nurture some kind of curiosity and attraction towards them.

(4) The history of our heritage links us with our origin.

Therefore, it becomes necessary to preserve and conserve for our future benefit as well as for the benefit of future generations.

64141.32

(6) The method of history is useful in the research of many subjects. ***(Nov. '20)***

Ans. (1) History is related to events which had happened in the past.

(2) The way our present life style is shaped is based on the historical chain of events.

(3) Historical events are related to various fields like politics, social and religious structure of a community, philosophy, technology and science, etc.

(4) Each of these fields have their own history of building knowledge. The direction of future development in every field is dependent on the state of available knowledge.

Given the importance of history of each field, the research method of history is useful in the research of many subjects.

Q. 8 Read the given passage carefully and answer the questions given below : ***(4 marks)***

(July '19)

Textbook page 19

The earliest museum ... ... artefacts.

8414132

Questions :

(1) Who built this museum ? **(1)**

Ans. This museum was built by Ennigaldi, the princess of Mesopotamia.

(2) Where was the earliest museum in the world discovered? Who discovered it? **(1)**

Ans. The earliest museum in the world was discovered in the city of 'Ur' in Mesopotamia. It was discovered by Leonard Woolley.

(3) What is a noteworthy feature of this museum ? **(2)**

Ans. A noteworthy feature of this museum is the clay tablets inscribed with the descriptions of exhibited artefacts.

Q. 9 Write elaborate answers : ***OR*** **Answer in detail :** ***(3 marks each)***

***(1) How the method of history is useful in the research of following fields :**

(a) Science (b) Arts (c) Management Studies.

Ans. Each field has its own history of building knowledge. The direction of development in every field is dependent on the state of available knowledge in that field. The method of history has proved valuable in the research of various fields.

(a) Science : Scientific discoveries/inventions take place because of human efforts to satisfy needs and curiosity. These efforts are based on scientific knowledge that already existed. Knowledge of the history of science helps in understanding the reasons, chronology and factors that facilitated a scientific invention/discovery. Knowledge of history of science helps in every field.

(b) Arts : Development of any style of art lies in their expression through intellectual, emotional and cultural traditions. While studying any art form we have to understand the history of its traditions, the key to the expressions in it, and emotional temperament of the artist. Prevalent art style in the given period can be understood with the help of cultural history.

(c) Management Studies : All components like means of production, human resources, processes of production, the chain of market and sales, etc. are interrelated and require management.

Different social and economic institutions are involved in these industrial and commercial processes. Knowledge of similar functional systems of the past is essential to bring about changes, improvements and make the management smooth and efficient. It becomes necessary to know its history.

***(2) How can we correlate applied history with our present ?**

Ans. History gives us knowledge about the events that happened in past. Applied history helps us in understanding how the knowledge can be put to use for our benefit as well as for the benefit of future generations. Applied history is correlated with our present in the following ways :

(1) Knowledge of our past helps us in deciding our course of action in present. The heritage of our ancestors exists in tangible and intangible form. We have the curiosity to know more about our part because they represent the creative thoughts and traditions of that period.

(2) With the help of applied history we can not only come to know about the heritage but also conserve and preserve it.

(3) We can be better equipped to face social challenges in the present because the knowledge of history can provide guidance in finding solutions to contemporary social issues and incorporate them in the social planning.

(4) The direction of future development is decided when we rightly analyse our present with our knowledge of the past acquired through applied history.

***(3) Suggest at least 6 solutions for preservation of the sources of history.**

Ans. There are three types of sources which are used to study history. They are written, oral and material sources. These sources are preserved in different ways. According to me, the following measures should be taken to preserve the sources :

(1) A regular repair and maintenance work of forts, memorials and palaces should be carried out. Timely action should be taken to avoid vandalisation of historic and public places.

(2) Historical coins, weapons should be handled with precaution and utmost care. They should be kept in a safe place to avoid the possibility of theft. Social awareness regarding the conservation and preservation of our cultural and natural heritage should be created. People will develop affinity towards the heritage and feel connected.

(3) Variations in environment and climatic conditions pose a threat to monumental structures. Humidity, dampness, moulds and pollution cause irrevocable damage to manuscripts, rare artefacts, statues, coins, etc. To protect them, special arrangements have to be made like rooms with controlled temperature or sanitising and detoxing the rooms.

(4) Oral literature like *owis*, folk songs should be compiled and written down.

(5) Public training programmes should be conducted for understanding the importance of history.

(6) Experts from different fields should be involved in preservation and conservation projects. Stringent laws should be enacted to protect the monuments.

(7) Above all, people's participation in conservation and preservation process is paramount.

(**Note :** *Write any six points.*)

(4) What objectives can be fulfilled through the heritage projects ?** ***(March '19)

Ans. The following objectives can be fulfilled through the heritage projects :

(1) Preservation, conservation and development of heritage sites can be done without any change in its original state / structure.

(2) The local social structure and psychology of the local people, challenges they face in the present situations and their expectations can be surveyed.

(3) In the process of completing the project of conservation, preservation and development of a heritage site, due precaution should be taken to avoid hurting the sentiments of the local people.

(4) Participation of the local people in the proposed project can be facilitated.

(5) In order to engage and employ the local skills in a creative way and create better opportunities of livelihood, it becomes easier to design systematic plans.

(5) Which agencies carry out the work of conservation and preservation of the cultural heritage of India?

Ans. The preservation and conservation of Indian cultural heritage is done at various stages :

(1) The work of preservation and conservation primarily falls under jurisdiction of the Archaeological Survey of India.

(2) In addition, INTACH (Indian National Trust for Art and Cultural Heritage) is also actively working in this field.

(3) Experts from various fields and local people too participate in the work of conservation and preservation of natural and cultural heritage.

(6) What are the main objectives of 'National Film Archives' ?

Ans. The main objectives of 'National Film Archives' are as follows :

(1) To research and obtain the rare Indian films. (2) To preserve such films for the benefit of future generations. (3) To categorise the important

6414132

aspects of films to create documentation, catalogue them and carry out research in the field. (4) To establish a centre for dissemination of films culture.

(7) What are the opportunities created by affiliated professional fields of Applied History ?

Ans. Affiliated fields of Applied History which include museums, archives, tourism and hospitality, entertainment, mass media, etc. needs the following professionals :

(1) Experts like Historians, Archaeologists, Sociologists, legal experts, etc. are assigned new projects. (2) Officers like Managers, Secretaries and Directors are taken into service. (3) Technicians like engineers, architects, skilled photographers, laboratory assistants, archive management professionals are hired. (4) Tourist guides, boarding and lodging, food services, entertainment and related business get a wide scope for flourishing.

(8) What is the role of Applied History ? Write about increase participation of people in this field ?

Ans. (A) The role of Applied History is as follows :

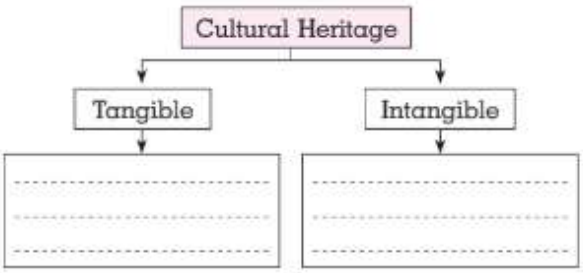
(1) In public training programmes for understanding the importance of history. (2) Using knowledge of history, to create awareness regarding the conservation and preservation of our cultural and natural heritage. To facilitate participation of people in various projects and programmes related to applied history even in their capacity as tourists. (3) To enhance professional skills of people and to develop industrial commercial field. (4) To carry out preparatory work and plan for effective implementation of heritage projects.

(B) The participation of people can be increased in this field in the following manner :

(1) The field of applied history includes museums, archives, collection and maintenance of artefacts. (2) Tourism creates interest in history which in turn creates awareness among people to preserve ancient monuments and sites in their vicinity.

This realisation increases people's participation in the field of applied history.

(9) Explain, in detail, with the help of given chart : *(Nov. '20)*



Ans.

Cultural Heritage

Tangible

(1) Ancient Sites
(2) Buildings
(3) Artefacts
(4) Manuscripts
(5) Sculptures
(6) Paintings

Intangible

(1) Oral traditions and their languages
(2) Traditional knowledge
(3) Social customs and rituals of celebrating festivals
(4) Styles of performing arts
(5) Certain traditional skills
(6) Communities, groups who represent such traditions, customs and skills.

6414132

(10) Observe the picture and write information about it.

OR

Write information about any one place included in cultural heritage list.

Ans. (1) This picture is of the largest Indian rock-cut ancient Hindu temple located in the Ellora cave. (2) This famous rock-cut Shiva temple was constructed during the reign of Rashtrakuta king Krishna I. It is regarded as a marvel of architecture. (3) It bears an eloquent testimony to the high level skill attained by India in the arts of sculpture and architecture under the Rashtrakuta patronage. (4) A sculpture of an elephant and a pillar can be seen in the picture. (5) The famous rock cut temple in Maharashtra was declared as a world heritage site by UNESCO in 1983.

Project

(1) Show the Indian heritage sites on the map of India.

(2) Show three of each of the following heritage sites on the Map of India :

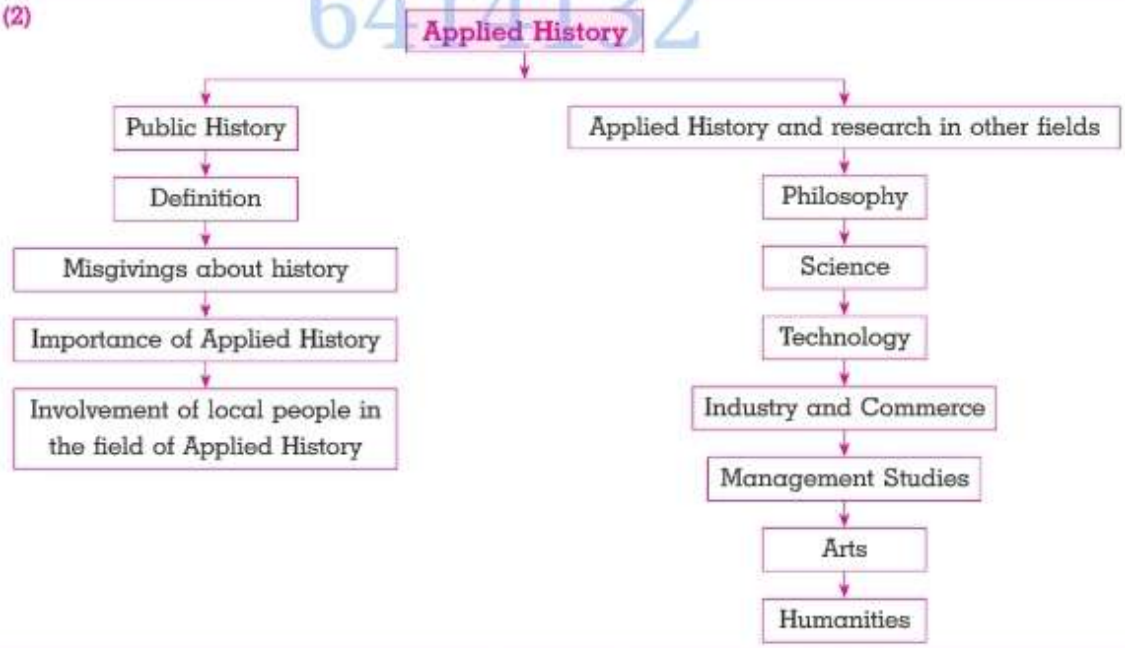
(1) Tangible and Intangible Cultural Heritage. (2) Cultural Heritage sites. (3) Natural Heritage sites.

Memory Map

(1)

6414132

(2)



Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

4 HISTORY OF INDIAN ARTS

IMPORTANT POINTS

4.1 What is Art?

(1) Meaning :

(1) When the human instinct of sharing experience, emotions and wisdom with others results in a beautiful creation, it is known as 'Art'.

(2) The crucial factors at the root of artistic creation are imagination power of the artist, his sensibility, state of emotion and his skills.

(2) Types of Arts :

(1) **Visual Art (Drik Kala) :** The origin of Drik Kala can be traced back to pre-historic age. The discovery of many sites of rock art in the world proves it. The art of painting and sculpting is part of visual art.

(2) **Performing Art (Lalit Kala) :** Lalit Kala is also known as 'Aangik Kala'. It includes dance, singing, drama, etc.

(3) Types of traditions of Art :

(1) **Folk Art :** (1) The tradition of folk art has continued from the pre-historic times. (2) The expression of folk art is a natural part of people's way of living. (3) It is created by collective participation of members of a social group.

(2) **Classical Art :** (1) Classical art is expressed within an established frame of consistent rules. (2) A very long period of training is required to master any form of classical art.

(4) Style in Art :

(1) Every artist has his own art style.

(2) When a style is repeatedly practised by many artists over a long period of time it becomes a tradition. Such a tradition gets established as an 'art style'.

(3) Several art styles developed in every culture reflect characteristics of a certain period and region. They help in the study of history.

4.2 Indian Traditions of Visual Arts (Drik Kala) :

(1) Painting :

(1) Paintings are two dimensional for example, sketches or paintings of nature, objects and individuals.

(2) Paintings are drawn on various surfaces such as rocks, wall papers, canvas of different types and earthen pots.

(3) The mural of Bodhisattva at Ajanta caves is a fine example of the art of painting.

(2) Folk styles of Paintings :

(1) The style of folk painting dates back to stone ages. Such paintings have been discovered in many countries.

(2) The rock paintings in the caves at Bhimbetka are famous. They are declared as part of World Heritage Site.

(3) Rock paintings depict humans, animals and geometric figures.

(4) The style of rock paintings and the subject of portrayal went on changing according to the cultural changes from stone age to the beginning of agriculture.

(5) Black, red and white colours were used in the rock painting, made from natural substances.

(6) The practice of customs such as decorating the house walls and courtyards (Rangawali) by drawing various figures and symbols during marriages or using panels of paintings to narrate stories during festivals helped the regional styles of folk painting to develop.

C41141 32

(3) Different types of folk styles of painting :

Sr. No.	Folk styles of painting	Information
1.	Maratha style painting	(1) Development started in the latter half of 17th century. (2) This style consists of coloured paintings and they occur as murals and miniatures used in manuscripts. (3) This style was influenced by the Rajput and European styles of painting. (4) The style of a painting helps us to understand lifestyle, attires, customs, etc. (5) Murals of Maratha style can be seen in the old wadas at places like Wai, Menavali and Satara in Maharashtra.
2.	Warli style of painting	(1) The tradition of Warli painting is one of the finest examples of folk style of painting in Maharashtra. (2) Jivya Somya Mashe popularised the Warli style of paintings. (3) He has been honoured with Padma Shri in 2011 and many national and international awards.
3.	Chitrakathi tradition	(1) The tradition of narrating stories from Ramayana and Mahabharata with the help of wooden puppets and paintings is known as Chitrakathi or Pingul tradition. (2) The tradition of Chitrakathi is mentioned in Manasollas, a book written by the Chalukya King Someshvara in the 12th century C.E. (3) The Thakur tribal community in the Konkan region near Kudal have preserved this tradition. They live in a village called 'Pinguli' and hence it is called Pingul tradition. (4) It is drawn on paper and painted with colours made from natural substances. These are preserved carefully and passed on from one generation to another. (5) The artists and the government are trying to preserve this tradition which is on the verge of extinction.

641132

Let us know

(1) Maratha style of painting :

Pictorial handwritten religious texts, pictures on the wooden board, miniature paintings, glass paintings are the different types of paintings which evolved during Maratha period. Many religious texts in Marathi like Dnyaneshwari, Shivlilamrut are available with pictures depicting the 'Dashavtar'. The Maratha style of painting was influenced by the Rajput and European styles of painting which brought diversity in painting. Wall paintings during the Peshwa period, i.e. the 18th century are available. Wall paintings were found on the front side of the castle, drawing room, wall reserved for inhouse temple, peaks, etc. The subjects of these wall paintings were mostly mythological. A thin wet layer of limestone was first applied on the wall and then the pictures were drawn on it. Colours used were extracted from natural sources like flowers, leaves and plants and even from elements like charcoal, gold and silver. The prosperity in the later period of the Maratha rule had helped it to reach great heights.

(2) Warli style of painting :

A circle, a triangle and a square placed at different angles make basic characters used in Warli paintings. Humans, animal bodies and other objects are depicted using triangles

joined at the tip. The Warli paintings depict day-to-day activities of the people of the tribe and hence mostly are drawn on harvest festival, folk story, celebrations in temple, marriage, etc. The paintings were drawn on red coloured mud walls of huts. Ochre coloured walls are painted with a paste of rice and water. They used skewed bamboo sticks as paint brushes to draw the paintings. After 1970, Warli paintings became known all over the world. The artist Jivya Somya Mashe who popularised the painting all over the world died on 15th May, 2018.

(4) Classical style of paintings :

(1) The ancient Indian texts have explained various aspects of arts in great detail. There are altogether 64 arts mentioned in these texts.

(2) Out of them painting is mentioned as *alekhyam* or *alekhya vidya*.

(3) It is said to have six main aspects *(Shadange)*.

(1) *Roopbheda* (Different shapes and forms)

(2) *Pramana* (Proportionate depiction of various features of an image)

(3) *Bhava* (Expressions)

(4) *Lavanyayojana* (Aesthetics)

(5) *Sadrushyata* (A resemblance to reality)

(6) *Varnikabhang* (Colour composition)

(5) Miniature Paintings in Manuscripts :

(1) Miniature paintings show Persian influence.

(2) The Deccan miniature style was developed under the patronage of the Deccan Sultanates.

(3) The Mughal miniature style shows a blend of Indian and Persian styles.

(6) Western style of Painting :

(1) The Indian artists came under the influence of the European style of painting during the British period.

(2) In the times of Savai Madhavrao Peshwa, in Shanivar Wada, at Pune, an art school was established under the leadership of James Wales, a Scottish artist.

(3) Gangaram Tambat, a Marathi artist worked with Wales.

(4) Some of his drawings are preserved in the Yale Centre of British Art of Yale University.

(5) J. J. School of Art and Industry was established in 1857, offers courses in European style of painting.

(6) Pestonji Bomanji made replicas of Ajanta paintings.

(7) Exact portrayal of the object of painting is characteristic of the European style.

(7) Sculptural Art :

(1) Sculptures are three-dimensional, structures having (length × breadth × depth) such as images, statues, pots and objects with artistic embellishments.

(2) Sculptures are made using either rock or metal or clay.

(3) The entire temple of Kailasa at Verul is a unique monolithic sculpture, i.e. carved out of a single rock.

(4) The lion capital of the Asoka pillar found at Sarnath is the national emblem of India.

(8) Folk styles of Sculptural Art :

(1) Carving tools out of stone can be said to be the beginning of sculptural art.

(2) The custom of making clay images for rituals is prevalent since Harappan times in many regions of India.

(3) The Ganesh idols, masks of Gauri, bull figurines made for *Bailpola*, wooden memorials, *Veergals* (memorial stones), the decorated clay storage bins, etc. are a few examples of the folk traditions of sculptural art.

(9) Classical styles of Sculptural Art :

(1) The tradition of Indian Sculptural art is more than 5000 years old. It started with making of seals, of stone and bronze statues.

(2) The tradition of stone sculptures of larger size began in the Mauryan period with the Ashoka pillars.

(3) The Sanchi stupa was erected during the rule of Emperor Ashoka.

(4) The stupa at Borobudur in Indonesia, built during 8th-9th century, is the largest stupa in the world. It was declared as a World Heritage site by UNESCO in 1991.

6414132

(10) Indian Iconography :

(1) Iconography is a branch of knowledge associated with everything about making of images of gods and goddesses.

(2) The Gandhara School of Art which came into being in the 2nd century B.C.E. in Afghanistan had Greek and Persian influences.

(3) The period between 1st to 3rd century C.E. (the Kushana period) saw the rise of Mathura School of Art.

(4) The Mathura School laid the foundation of Indian iconography.

(5) The Kushana kings made use of images of various deities on their coins.

(6) The iconographic rules and standards were formulated during the period of the Gupta empire.

(7) The art of making bronze images of gods and goddesses was developed under the patronage of the Chola Kings during 9th to 13th century.

(11) Architecture and Sculpture :

Sr. No.	Architecture Type	Details
1.	Rock-cut caves	(1) The tradition of rock-cut caves originated in India in the 3rd century B.C.E. (2) Rock-cut caves represent a union of architecture and sculptural art. (3) Entrances, interiors with its carved columns and images are excellent specimens of sculptural art. (4) The rock-cut caves at Ajanta and Verul in Maharashtra were declared as World Heritage Sites in 1983.
2.	The Temple Architecture	(1) The temple architecture began to develop around 4th century C.E. during the Gupta period. (2) The temples only had a sanctum sanctorum and a veranda with four columns. (3) The magnificent composition of the Kailas temple of Verul testified that the temple architecture in India had reached its peak by the 8th century. (4) By the medieval period, various styles of temple architecture had developed in India. The styles of the temple architecture are identified by the style of the tower *(shikhara)*. (5) The Nagara style of North India and the Dravid style of South India are the two principal styles of Indian temple architecture. A blend of these two styles is known as Vesara. (7) The Bhoomija style is seen in Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh has close resemblance to Nagara style.
3.	Hemadpanti style	(1) The walls are built without using any mortar by locking the stones by using the technique of tenon and mortise joints. (2) The temples are built in a star shape. (3) The outer walls of these star-shaped temples have zigzag designs. This results into an interesting effect of alternating light and shadow. (4) The Ambreshwar temple at Ambarnath, Gondeshwar temple at Sinnar near Nashik, Aundha Nagnath temple in the Hingoli district are few finest examples of Hemadpanti style in Maharashtra.

6414132

4.	Muslim architecture	(1) Islamic architecture is a blend of Persian, Central Asian, Arabic and Pre-Islamic native Indian styles. It came into being in the medieval period. (2) The Kutub Minar, Taj Mahal and Gol Gumbaz are the world famous examples of the Islamic architecture of India. (3) UNESCO has declared Taj Mahal and Kutub Minar as World Heritage Sites. (4) Kutub Minar at Mehrauli is the highest minaret in the world. The Taj Mahal at Agra is looked upon as the paramount example of the beauty of Islamic architecture in India. Gol Gumbaz at Bijapur is famous for its echo which can be heard many times.
5.	Indo-Gothic architecture	(1) Indo-Gothic style of architecture emerged in India during the British period. (2) The building of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Railway Terminus at Mumbai is the finest example of the Indo-Gothic architecture. (3) During this period, many buildings were constructed having this type of architecture, like churches, government offices, residences of top officials and railway stations.

It is interesting to know :

(1) Hemadpanti :

Hemadri Pandit was a Sanskrit Pandit and a great architect who lived in 13th century during the rule of Yadav dynasty. He was a writer and a poet. He wrote a commentry named Ayurveda Rasayan on Ayurvedic Samhita 'Ashtanga Hrdayam, containing description of various diseases and remedies for them. He also introduced use of Modi script. He was a master not only in medical science but also architecture. He was the architect of Hemadpanti style of architecture. The temples in Maharashtra, which were built in 12th -13th centuries are known as Hemadpanti temples. The important feature of Hemadpanti temple is its masonary. The walls are built without using any mortar, by locking the stones by using the technique of tenon and mortise joints. This type of temple structure is found in Maharashtra and Karnataka at several places which showcases the development of architecture in that era. A special characteristic of Hemadpanti temple is its outer wall which is star-shaped.

(2) Gothic Art :

The term Gothic style refers to the style of European architecture, sculpture which linked medieval Romanesque art with the early Renaissance. Originating in 12th century France, it lasted till the 16th century. During this period, it was known as Opus Francigenum (French Work) with the term Gothic first appeared during the later part of the Renaissance.

Gothic architecture is most familiar as the architecture of many of the great cathedrals, castles, palaces, town halls, guild halls, universities and to a less prominent extent private dwellings, such as dorms and rooms. This architecture was seen later in England, Spain, Germany and Italy.

The important features of Gothic architecture are the pointed archs, the ribbed fault, the flying buttress and stained glass windows.

This Gothic style was later seen in sculpture and painting. Indo-Gothic architecture was a blend of Indian and Gothic architecture.

6414132

4.3 Indian traditions of Performing Arts :

Folk Arts :

(1) Different types of folk traditions in form of folk songs, folk dance, folk instrumental music, folk theatre exists in different parts of India.

(2) They developed as an integral part of the religious festivals and social life.

(3) Maharashtra has a varied tradition of folk art like Koli dance, Tarapa dance, Dashavatar of Konkan, Powada, Keertan and Jagar-Gondhal, etc.

Sr. No.	Classical Performing Art	Information
1.	Theatre	(1) The text of Natyashastra written by Bharatmuni is supposed to be the earliest one. (2) There is a detailed discussion on music, dance and theatre in it. (3) Nine rasas as moods are fundamental in Indian performing arts.
2.	Music and Singing	(1) There are two main branches of the Indian classical music : Hindustani music and Carnatic music. (2) Classical and semi-classical. The semi-classical included many styles of folk music. (3) The 'Savai Gandharva' festival of Pune showcases various festivals of music and dance so that common people can view.
3.	Dance	(1) Many dance forms exist in India in different regions. (2) A beautiful blend of all three forms of music, vocal, instrumental and dance can be seen in various Indian classical dance forms. (3) Popular dance forms in India – (i) Maharashtra – Lavani (ii) Odisha – Odisi (iii) Tamil Nadu – Bharatnatyam (iv) Kerala – Kathakali and Mohiniattam. (4) Pandit Uday Shankar created a fusion of Indian classical dance and European Opera.

Do You Know? (Textbook Page 29)

6414132

- **Kitab-e-Navras :**

Sultan of Bijapur, Ibrahim Adilshah II wrote Kitab-e-Navras in 1597. It was about Indian classical music written in Dakkani Urdu. Mughal Emperor Jahangir appreciates the writing of Ibrahim and also his new style of Drupad in his memoirs – Tuzuk-e-Jehangiri. The Kitab-e-Navras is a compilation of 59 Drupads or songs and 17 couplets in different ragas.

Ibrahim Adilshah II wanted to usher in harmony and peace through music. He wrote the book to acquaint people with Navras, translates as nine rasas or ragas. The book starts with a prayer, to seek blessings of Hindu Goddess Saraswati and God Ganapati. The Kitab-e-Navras throws light on music in his times and his court and also mentions about musical instruments used in those days Dr. Arun Prabhune has edited this text in Marathi.

*[Note : *The text is written in Dakkani Urdu language and not in Persian language as given in the textbook.]*

4.4 Art, Applied Art and Professional Opportunities :

(1) Need for experts in Art History :

(1) To work in the field of Journalism.
(2) To decide the exact value of an art object and to ensure that it is genuine.
(3) To work towards the Management and preservation of cultural heritage.
(4) To work as a guide in cultural tourism.
(5) To work in museums, archives management and libraries.
(6) To work as researcher and technical expert in Archaeological Research.

(2) Applied Art :

(1) The visual and performing arts are primarily looked upon as the means of entertainment for people.
(2) Artistic creation is combined with utilitarian purpose to make it economically viable.
(3) When the purpose of art becomes utilitarian it is called applied art.

(3) Fields of Applied Arts :

(1) Industry and Advertisement sector, Art Design of Stage Backdrops (Nepathya), Art direction for Films and Television.

(2) Newspapers, periodicals, layout of books, magazines, greeting cards, invitation cards, gift objects, customized stationery, etc. are the fields.

(3) The field of architecture, photography are also part of applied arts. Ornaments, artistic creations of metals, earthen pots, objects made from cane and bamboo, beautiful glass objects, attractive textile and clothing all can be listed under applied arts.

(4) Training Institutions :

(1) There are a few institutions in India, which impart technical and occupational training.

(2) National Institute of Design in Ahmedabad and J. J. School of Art in Mumbai are well-known institutes in India.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing a correct option : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) The arts of painting and sculpting are .....

(a) visual arts *(b) performing arts*
(c) folk arts *(d) classical arts*

*(2) The ..... saw the rise of Mathura school. ***(July '19)***

(a) Kushana period *(b) Gupta period*
(c) Rashtrakuta period *(d) Maurya period*

(3) Lalit Kala is also known as ..... .

(a) Folk art *(b) Aangik Kala*
(c) Drik Kala *(d) Nagara art*

(4) Jivya Somya Mashe, an artist in the Thane district played a great role in making the ..... style of painting very popular.

(a) Chitrakathi *(b) Maratha*
(c) Warli *(d) Classical*

(5) The Chalukya King, Someshvara, mentioned in ..... book the tradition of Chitrakathi.

(a) Natyashastra *(b) Kitab-e-Navras*
(c) Paintings of Ajanta *(d) Manasollas*

Ans. (1) visual arts (2) Kushana period (3) Aangik Kala (4) Warli (5) Manasollas.

[2]

(1) The ancient Indian texts mentioned ..... styles of Classical Art.

(a) Nine *(b) Thirty-six*
(c) Sixty-four *(d) Eighty-four*

(2) During the reign of Mughal Emperor ....., the Mughal miniature style showing a blend of Indian and Persian was developed.

(a) Akbar *(b) Aurangzeb*
(c) Jahangir *(d) Babur*

(3) Some of the drawings of Gangaram Tambat are preserved in ..... university.

(a) Stanford *(b) Cambridge*
(c) Oxford *(d) Yale*

(4) ..... is the characteristic of European style of painting.

(a) Sketching
(b) Exact portrayal of object
(c) Natural colours
(d) Landscape

(5) Replicas of Ajanta paintings was made by ..... .

(a) Pestonji Bomanji *(b) Gangaram Tambat*
(c) Raja Ravi Verma *(d) James Wales*

Ans. (1) Sixty-four (2) Akbar (3) Yale (4) Exact portrayal of object (5) Pestonji Bomanji.

[3]

(1) The lion capital of the Ashoka pillar found at ..... is the national emblem of India.

(a) Bodhgaya *(b) Patliputra*
(c) Sanchi *(d) Sarnath*

(2) The stupa at ..... in Indonesia is the largest stupa in the world.

(a) Ubud *(b) Sigiran*
(c) Borobudur *(d) Palembang*

(3) The ..... school of art laid the foundation of Indian iconography.

(a) Gandhar *(b) Nagara*
(c) Dravid *(d) Mathura*

0414132

(4) The temple architecture developed in India around 4th century C.E. during the ..... period.
(a) Kushana *(b) Rashtrakuta*
(c) Gupta *(d) Chola*

(5) ..... is a blend of Nagara style of architecture of North India and Dravid style of South India.
(a) Gandhar *(b) Mathura*
(c) Bhoomija *(d) Vesara*

Ans. (1) Sarnath (2) Borobudur (3) Mathura (4) Gupta (5) Vesara.

[4]

(1) The two main branches of the Indian classical music are ..... .
(a) Folk music and Vocal
(b) Dadraa and Thumri
(c) Bhajans and Qawwalis
(d) Hindustani music and Carnatic music

(2) The text of ..... written by Bharatmuni is supposed to be the earliest one discussing music and theatre.
(a) Manasollas *(b) Abhilasha Chintamani*
(c) Natyashastra *(d) Rasratnakar*

(3) Every year the ..... festival is held in Pune.
(a) Kala Ghoda *(b) Gunidas*
(c) Savai Gandharva *(d) Gharapuri*

(4) The ruler of Bijapur, Ibrahim Adilshah wrote ..... text in Persian language.
(a) Tuzuk-i-Babari *(b) Padmavat*
(c) Akbarnama *(d) Kitab-e-Navras*

(5) ..... is a prominent name among artists who created a new style of fusion of Indian and Western dance.
(a) Pandit Shivkumar Sharma
(b) Pandit Hariprasad Chaurasia
(c) Pandit Uday Shankar
(d) Ustad Zakir Hussain

Ans. (1) Hindustani music and Carnatic music (2) Natyashastra (3) Savai Gandharva (4) Kitab-e-Navras (5) Pandit Uday Shankar.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : *(1 mark each)*

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

(March '19)

*[1] Architectural structure	Place
(1) Kutub Minar	(a) Mehrauli
(2) Gol Gumbaz	(b) Vijapur
(3) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Railway Terminus	(c) Delhi
(4) Taj Mahal	(d) Agra

Ans. Wrong pair : Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Railway Terminus – Delhi

[2] Picture	Style
(1) Murals seen in the old wadas at Wai, Menavali	(a) Miniature style
(2) Bhimbetka	(b) Folk painting
(3) Pictures narrating Ramayana and Mahabharata story	(c) Chitrakathi
(4) Painting style in Thane district	(d) Warli painting

Ans. Wrong pair : Murals seen in the old wadas at Wai, Menavali – Miniature style

[3] Architectural structure	Style
(1) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Railway Terminus	(a) Gothic architecture
(2) Gol Gumbaz	(b) Muslim architecture
(3) Temples in South India	(c) Nagara architecture
(4) Gondeshwar Temple	(d) Hemadpanti architecture

Ans. Wrong pair : Temples in South India – Nagara architecture

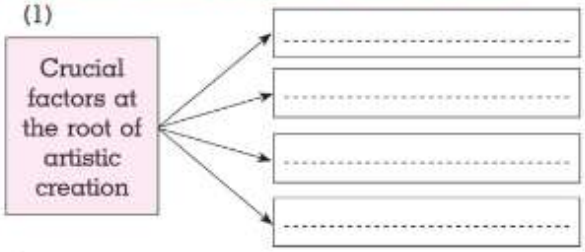
[4] Monument	Emperors
(1) Completed Kutub Minar	(a) Altmash
(2) Construction of Taj Mahal	(b) Emperor Akbar
(3) Gol Gumbaz	(c) Mohammed Adilshah
(4) Built Sanchi Stupa	(d) Emperor Ashoka

Ans. Wrong pair : Construction of Taj Mahal – Emperor Akbar

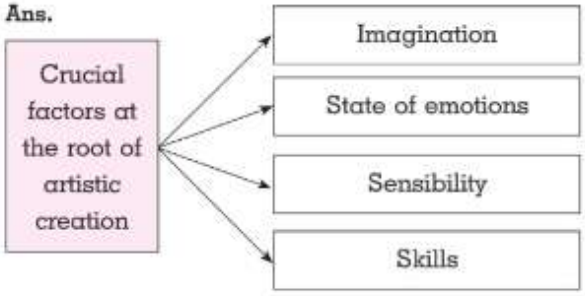
Q. 3 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

(A) Complete the following concept chart :

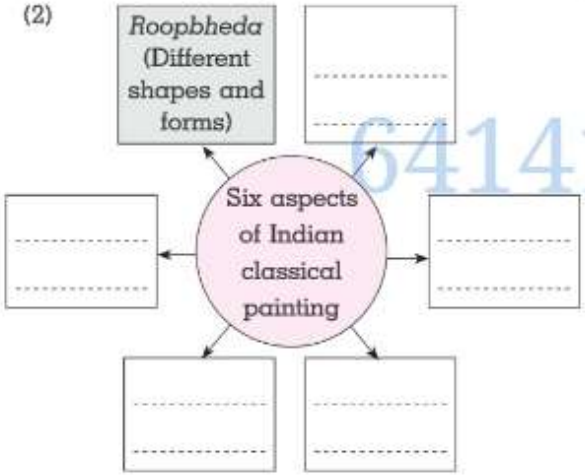
(1)



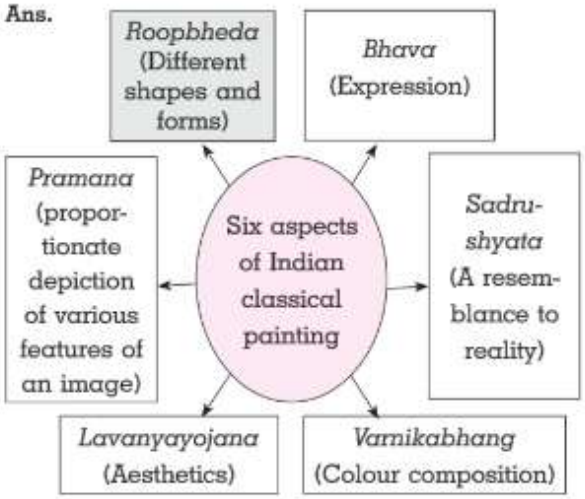
Ans.



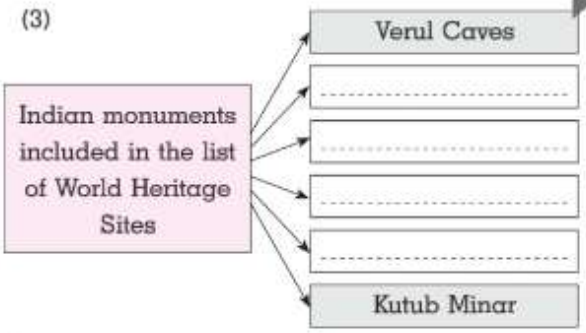
(2)



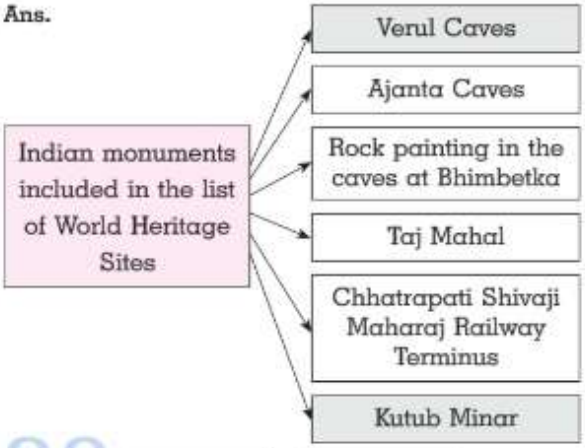
Ans.



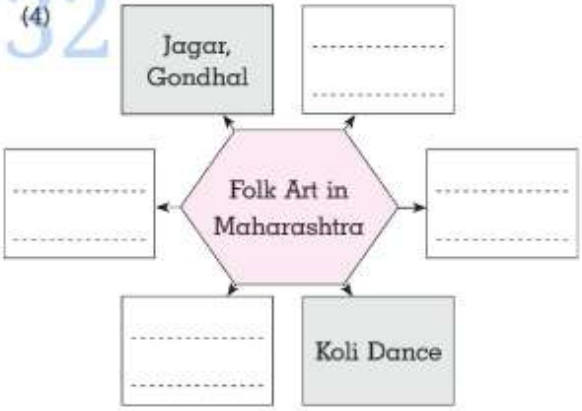
(3)



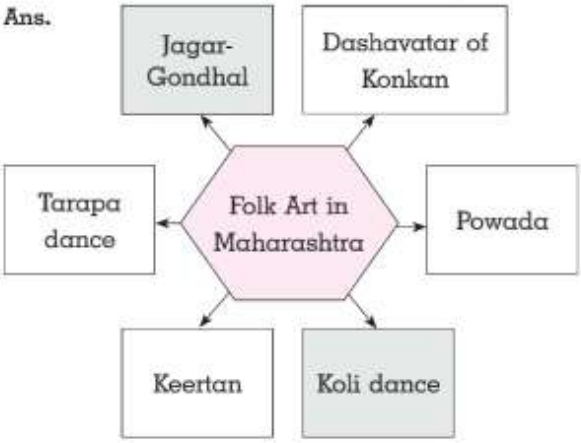
Ans.



(4)

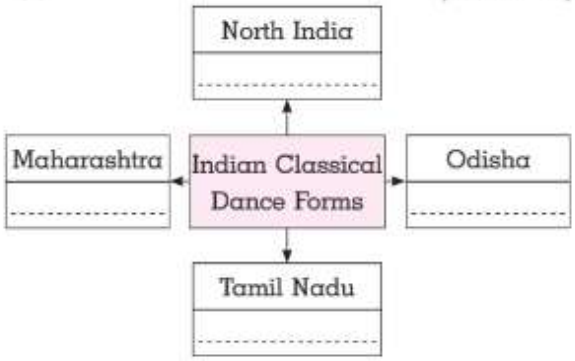


Ans.

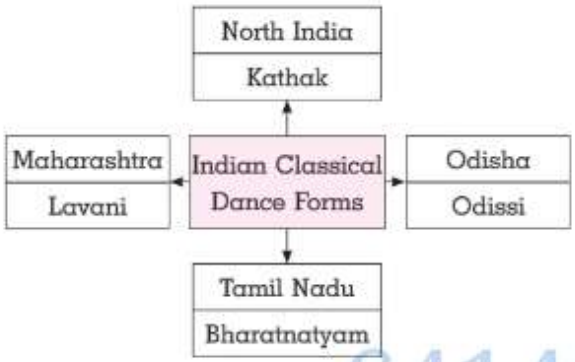


6414132

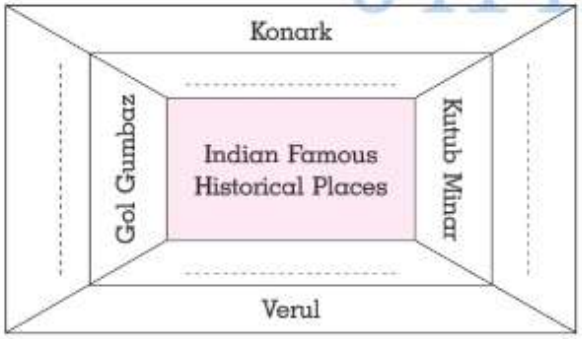
(5) *(March '19)*



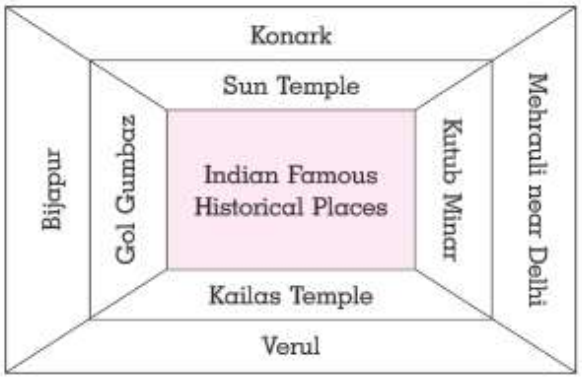
Ans.



(6)



Ans.



(B) Prepare a flow chart on Development of Indian Iconography.

Ans. **Development of Indian Iconography**

↓

The Gandhara School of art came into being in 2nd century B.C.E.

↓

Rise of Mathura school of art in 1st – 3rd century C.E. during Kushana period.

↓

During the Gupta period, the iconographic rules were formulated and standards for sculptural art were set.

↓

The art of making bronze images was developed.

Q. 4 Explain the following Concepts : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Explain the Concept' will be asked under the question 'Write Short Notes' in History. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

***(1) Art :**

Ans. (1) It is a natural instinct in humans to share their emotions, experience, wisdom acquired with others.

(2) This act of sharing, results in beautiful creation, called an 'Art'.

(3) Art gives us an experience of different elements. These elements are expressed through sculpture, singing, painting and dance.

(4) The crucial factors which are at the root of artistic creation are the imagination power of the artist, his sensibility, state of his emotions and skills.

***(2) Hemadpanti style :**

Ans. (1) Hemadpanti temples were primarily built in 12th-13th century.

(2) The main feature of this style is its masonry. The walls are built without mortar, by locking stones, using the tenon and mortise joints technique.

6414132

(3) Hemadpanti temples are built in square-shaped and star-shaped designs. In the star-shaped plan, the outer walls of a temple has a zigzag design which gives interesting effect of alternating light and shadow.

(4) Tourists are attracted to see these beautiful designs. Hemadpanti temples are found at several places in Maharashtra.

***(3) Maratha style of painting :**

Ans. (1) The Maratha style of paintings began to develop in the later half of the 17th century.

(2) This style consists of coloured paintings which are in the form of murals and miniatures used in manuscripts.

(3) Murals of Maratha style can be seen at the entrance of old wadas, in drawing rooms and on the ceilings of the temples.

(4) The Maratha style was influenced by the Rajput and European style of paintings. The Maratha style of paintings helps us to understand various things about the times in which it was developed such as lifestyle, attires, customs, etc.

6414132

Q. 5 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Style in Art :

Ans. (1) Every artist has his own style.

(2) When a style is repeatedly practised by many artists over a long period of time it becomes a tradition. Such a tradition gets established as an 'art style'.

(3) Several art styles developed in every culture reflect characteristics of a certain period and region. They help in the study of history.

(2) Classical Style of Paintings :

Ans. (1) Art which is expressed within an established frame of consistent rules is known as classical art. The ancient Indian texts mentioned altogether 64 arts. The art of painting is mentioned as *alekhyam* or *alekhya vidya* in these texts.

(2) This *alekhya vidya* has six main aspects of paintings *(Shadange)*.

(3) They are shapes and forms *(Roopbheda)*, expressions *(Bhava)*, proportionate depiction of various features of an image *(Pramana)*, Aesthetics *(Lavanyayojana)*, resemblance to reality *(Sadrushyata)* and colour composition *(Varnikabhang)*.

(4) Agama text of Jainism and in Puranas various arts like painting, sculpting are explained in context of temple architecture.

(3) Chitrakathi :

Ans. (1) The tradition of narrating stories from Ramayana and Mahabharata with the help of wooden puppets and paintings is known as Chitrakathi. It is also known as Pinguli.

(2) This tradition is mentioned in Manasollas, a book written by the Chalukya King Someshvara in the 12th century. People belonging to Thakur community still practise this art. They are from village, Pinguli near Kudal in Maharashtra.

(3) The Chitrakathi pictures are drawn on paper and painted with natural substances. To complete the narration of a single story it takes around 30 to 50 pictures.

(4) These pictures are preserved and are passed on from one generation to another. The artists and government are trying to preserve this tradition which is on the verge of extinction.

(4) Miniature Painting :

Ans. (1) Painting in a small size square is called Miniature painting.

(2) The miniature reached people through manuscripts. The earlier period of miniature painting shows the influence of Persian style.

(3) The Deccan miniature style was developed under the patronage of the Deccan Sultanate.

(4) Mughal miniature painting style of painting was developed during the reign of Mughal Emperor Akbar. It shows a blend of Indian and Persian style.

(5) Western style of painting :

Ans. (1) Indian artists came under the influence of European style of painting during the British period.

(2) An art school at Shaniwar Wada at Pune was established under the leadership of Scottish artist James Wales.

(3) J. J. School of Art and Industry was established in 1857 to offer the courses in European style of painting. Pestonji Bomanji made replicas of Ajanta paintings.

(4) James Wales had done a portrait of Savai Madhavrao and Nana Phadnavis. Exact portrayal of the object of the painting is a characteristic of European style.

(6) Gangaram Tambat :

Ans. (1) An art school was established under the leadership of Scottish artist James Wales at Shanivar Wada in Pune.

(2) Marathi artist Gangaram Tambat worked with James Wales.

(3) He made drawings of rock-cut caves at Verul and Karle.

(4) Some of his drawings are preserved in the Yale Centre of British Art of Yale University.

(7) Temple architecture :

Ans. (1) Temple architecture began to develop in India around 4th century C.E. during the Gupta period. In the initial stage of the Gupta period, the temples had only the Sanctum Sanctorum (Garbhagriha) and a Veranda with four columns.

(2) Temple architecture reached its peak by the 8th century C.E. and its example is the Kailas temple of Verul. By medieval period various types of temple architecture had developed in India.

(3) The styles of tower *(Shikar)* determined various styles of temple architecture in India. The Nagara style of North India and Dravid style of South India are two prominent styles of Indian temple architecture. A blend of Nagara and Dravid is known as Vesara style.

(4) Bhoomija style seen in temples of Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh has very close resemblance to 'Nagara' style.

(8) Indo-Gothic Architecture :

Ans. (1) During the British period, a new architectural style arose in India which was a blend of Indian and Gothic known as Indo-Gothic style of architecture.

(2) During the British period, buildings like churches, government offices, residences of top officials, railway stations were built in Indo-Gothic style of architecture.

(3) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Railway Terminus in Mumbai is the finest example of Indo-Gothic style of architecture.

(9) Kitab-e-Navras :

Ans. (1) Ibrahim Adilshah II, the ruler of Bijapur, wrote a book in Persian language entitled 'Kitab-e-Navras'. This text is about Indian classical music.

(2) It includes the verses suitable for singing. It is a composition of excellent poetry expressed through Dhrupad style giving the experience of ecstasy to the interested audience.

(3) The Navras mentioned in Sanskrit literature are explained in this text.

(10) Contribution of Pandit Uday Shankar :

Ans. (1) Pandit Uday Shankar created a new dance style. He successfully created a fusion of Indian classical dance and European opera.

(2) He also included various forms of folk dance in his style.

(3) He expanded the scope of Indian performing arts.

Q. 6 Explain the following sentences with reasons : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) An expert with deep understanding of art history is required in the art market.**

(July '19; March '20)

Ans. (1) There is an independent market for purchase and sale of art objects.

(2) The authenticity of the object, its standards can only be assessed by an expert.

(3) Only an artist can know the exact value of an art object or ensure if it is genuine or not.

(4) So, when art objects are assessed all the above points are considered. This requires special expertise.

Hence an expert with deep understanding of art history is required for this task.

***(2) It is necessary to preserve the tradition**

like Chitrakathi, which is on the verge of extinction. ***(Nov. '20)***

Ans. (1) The stories from Ramayana or Mahabharata narrated with the help of wooden puppets and paintings is known as Chitrakathi or Pinguli tradition.

(2) It is preserved by the Thakur community.

(3) As the Chitrakathi pictures are drawn on papers and painted using colours made from natural substances, they deteriorate rapidly if not maintained.

(4) Therefore it is necessary to preserve the tradition like Chitrakathi as it is part of our glorious cultural heritage and is on the verge of extinction.

(3) Indian performing arts were enriched over time.

Ans. (1) A constant stream of rulers like the Greeks, Arabs, Mughals and the British came to India.

(2) During their rule, Indian people came into contact with their styles of folk art.

(3) The culture which they brought along lasted and blended with existing streams of Indian performing arts.

(4) As a result, many styles of classical vocal music, instrumental music and dance came into existence.

Therefore Indian performing arts enriched over time.

(4) The field of Applied Arts needs professionals.

Ans. (1) An artistic creation is combined with utilitarian purpose to make it economically viable in applied arts.

(2) Many stages of production are reached before the concept of creation becomes a reality.

(3) Each field in applied arts requires detailed planning and meticulous management at each stage of production.

(4) Ornaments, earthen pots with colourful designs, objects made from Cane and Bamboo, beautiful glass objects, attractive textiles and clothing all listed under applied arts essentially require trained and skilled individuals at every stage. Some of the production processes of artistic objects have a history of certain traditions. It is important to have knowledge of those traditions.

Hence, it is essential to have trained and skilled professionals at every stage.

Q. 7 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

Note : *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

(1) Write about Folk traditions of sculptural art :** ***(March '19)

Ans. (1) The tradition of folk art dates back to the Stone Ages.

(2) The custom of making clay images for rituals has been prevalent in India since Harappan times.

(3) It has continued even today in many regions of Bengal, Bihar, Gujarat and Rajasthan.

(4) During the festivals, Ganesh idols are made along with the masks of Goddess Gauri. Bull figurines are made for the festival of Bailpola.

(5) Wooden memorials, *Veergals* (memorial stones), the decorated clay storage bins, etc. are examples of folk tradition of sculptural art.

(6) The sculptures made for religious and festival reasons became masterpieces of artists' creation.

***(2) Write about Gandhara School of Art.**

Ans. (1) The regions around Afghanistan showed great influence of Greeks and Persians from 2nd century B.C.E.

(2) Gandhara style of art was a fusion of Greek-Roman and Indian style.

(3) Gandhara school was heavily influenced by Greek methodologies.

(4) The materials used to make sculptures were Grey sandstone, Mud, Lime and Stucco.

6414132

(5) Grey sandstone is more prominently used in Gandhara School of Art. The Gandhara school images are known for their anatomical accuracy, spatial depth and foreshortening.

(6) The sculptures in Gandhara style are found in Taxila, Peshawar and on the North West Frontier.

Q. 8 Read the following passage and answer the questions : *(4 marks)*

Textbook page 23

Rock paintings dating ... ... natural resources.

Questions :

(1) In which states of India are the sites of rock paintings found? **(1)**

Ans. The sites of rock paintings are found in the states of Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Uttarakhand, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and Telangana.

(2) How old is the tradition of rock paintings? **(1)**

Ans. The tradition of rock painting dates back to the Stone Age.

6414132

(3) What are the features of rock paintings? **(2)**

Ans. (1) Rock paintings depict humans, animals, geometric figures, flora and fauna in various figures and also in colour.

(2) Natural colours in black and red are used in them which are extracted from natural substances.

(3) The style of rock paintings seems to be changing according to the cultural changes from Stone Age to the beginning of agriculture.

(4) We get to know about ancient people, their natural surroundings and also the way they exploited available natural resources.

Q. 9 Answer the following questions in detail : *(3 marks each)*

***(1) Write in detail about the folk styles of painting.**

Ans. (1) The art of rock painting dates back to Stone Age. These rock paintings have preserved the style of folk painting.

(2) Rock paintings usually depict humans, animals and geometric figures.

(3) The style of rock paintings seems to be changing according to the cultural changes from Stone age to the beginning of agriculture.

(4) Man started depicting flora and fauna in a different style and also figures.

(5) There was difference in colours too. Black and Red were used in rock paintings. Colours extracted from natural substances were used.

(6) The man started using the knowledge he got from the surroundings and nature and depicted it in the pictures.

(7) In the later stage of development, man started customs such as decorating the walls and courtyards *(Rangawali)* by drawing various figures and symbols or using panels of painting to narrate stories. It helped in the development of folk paintings.

***(2) Explain the characteristics of the Islamic architecture in India by giving examples.**

Ans. A blend of Persian, Central Asian, Arabic and pre Islamic native Indian styles created the Islamic architecture of India.

Following are the characteristics of Islamic architecture developed in the medieval period under the patronage of Muslim sultanates :

(1) Built in Islamic style, the Kutub Minar is the highest minaret in the world. It is 73 metres (240 ft) in height.

(2) The Taj Mahal built by the Mughal emperor Shah Jahan is looked upon as the paramount example of Islamic architecture.

(3) The Gol Gumbaz at Bijapur in Karnataka built in 17th century is known for its echo which can be heard many times.

(4) The forts at Agra and Delhi are known for their massive walls of redstone. The walls are interrupted by graceful curves and lofty bastions.

Red sandstone, domes, arches, minarets, magnificance all combined form characteristics of Islamic architecture.

***(3) What kind of professional opportunities are available in the field of arts?**

(March '20; Nov. '20)

Ans. Various opportunities are available in different fields of art :

(1) Art historian can work in field of journalism. Art students can work in museums, archives, libraries. Information Technology, archaeological research and Indology contribute to recently developed fields like Heritage Management and Cultural Tourism.

(2) An expert in art is required to assess the exact value of an art object and also in its sale and purchase. Experts are required in the field of manufacturing of objects for home decoration.

(3) Ornaments, artistic creations of metals, earthen pots with colourful designs, objects made from cane and bamboo, beautiful glass objects, attractive textiles and clothing all come are under applied arts.

(4) These fields require experts in manufacturing and sales. Hence many opportunities of employment are available in the field of arts.

6414132

(4) Give information about the rock-cut caves in India.

Ans. (1) The tradition of rock-cut caves originated in India in the 3rd century B.C.E.

(2) The entire composition of a rock-cut cave represents a union of architecture and sculptural art.

(3) The entrances of such rock-cut caves, interiors with its carved columns and images are excellent specimens of sculptural art.

(4) The paintings on the walls and ceilings have survived till today.

(5) The rock-cut caves at Ajanta and Verul in Maharashtra were declared as World Heritage Sites in 1983.

(5) Which fields are related to applied arts ?

Ans. (1) An artistic creation with a utilitarian purpose is called applied arts. Industry and advertisement, Interior Design and production of ornamental objects, Art Design of stage backdrops, Art Direction for films and television are the fields of applied arts.

(2) Layout of books, magazines, production of greeting cards, invitation cards, gift objects, calligraphy are also related to applied arts.

(3) Still and animated graphics, created with the help of computers are used for various purposes. This field needs experts with technical knowledge.

(4) In short, whichever art is known and is applied to create something new becomes applied art.

(6) Differentiate between Classical and Folk art.

Ans. Some differences are noted between Classical and Folk art. They are as follows :

Classical Art	Folk Art
1. Classical art does not have such a long tradition.	1. The tradition of folk art has continued from the pre-historic times.
2. Classical art is not connected to everyday life.	2. Folk art is an integral part of everyday life.
3. It takes a very long time period to master classical art.	3. The creation of folk art has taken place naturally because of people's involvement.
4. Classical art developed within the established frame of rules.	4. Folk art developed as an integral part of the religious festivals and social life.
5. As classical art follows set rules, different types of styles, methods and schools are developed.	5. Folk art is not bound by any rules.

*(7) Complete the given table :

Styles of Temple Architecture	Nagara	Dravid	Hemadpanti
Characteristics			
Examples			

Ans.

Styles of Temple Architecture	Nagara	Dravid	Hemadpanti
Characteristics	(1) Series of miniature towers are arranged. (2) Towers taper towards the top. (3) Tower appears to be continuously rising from the base of the temple to the top.	(1) Temple towers resembled pyramid shape. (2) Gopura (main entrance) was large and magnificent than the tower. (3) Mythological stories were carved on walls and ceilings.	(1) The temple structure was star-shaped with outer walls having zigzag design. (2) The walls were built without using any mortar. (3) The stones were locked by using the technique of tenon and mortise joints.
Examples	(1) Konark Sun Temple (2) Lingraj Temple of Bhubaneshwar (3) Kandariya Mahadev temple at Khajuraho	(1) Meenakshi Temple at Madurai (2) Chariot Temple at Mahabalipuram (3) Brihadeeshvara temple at Thanjavur (4) Tirupati Temple	(1) Gondeshwar temple at Sinnar (2) Ambreshwar temple at Ambarnath (3) Aundha Nagnath temple at Hingoli (4) Kopeshwar temple at Khidrapur

6414132

*(8) Observe the given picture and answer the question given below :

Q. Observe the picture and write about it : *(July '19)*

(1) Name of the painting tradition. (1)

Ans. This picture is from Warli tradition.

(2) Nature's description. (1)

Ans. Artist has sketched trees, leaves and shrubs in the picture. A fish is also drawn.

(3) Sketch of human activities. (1)

Ans. Women dancing in a circular pattern is also sketched in the picture.

(4) Designing features. (2)

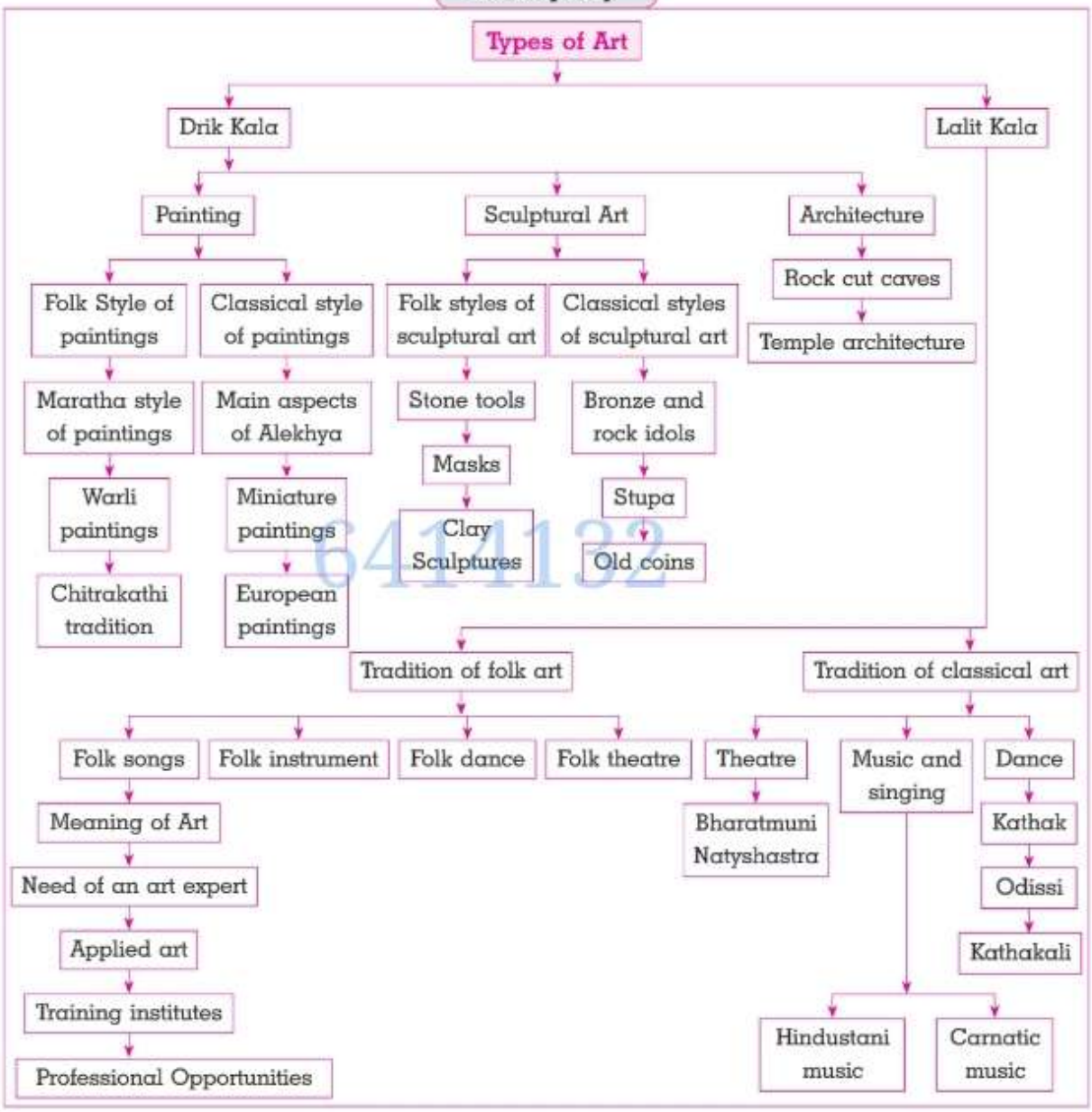
Ans. Pictures of men, women and children are sketched. Warli paintings do not portray the exact objects but only a sketch. Human figures are drawn with the help of a triangle, circle and square which are placed at the tip.

Note : There are several images of temples and monuments of Islamic Architecture as well as Ashok Stambh. Questions can be asked on any one of these images. Observe them carefully. Gather information on the period when that style of sculpture/architecture and painting was prevalent. You will be able to write your answer.

Project

(1) Collect additional information of the World Heritage Sites in India.
(2) Observe the sculptors or image makers at work in your locality and interview them.

Memory Map



6411132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

5 MASS MEDIA AND HISTORY

IMPORTANT EVENTS AND YEAR

1. 29 January, 1780 – The first English newspaper 'Bengal Gazette' started in India.
2. 6 January, 1832 – The first newspaper in Marathi 'Darpan' started in Mumbai.
3. 1852 – Telegraph services started in India.
4. July, 1924 – A private Radio Station started in Madras.
5. 23 July, 1927 – The First English news bulletin was broadcast.
6. 1929 – 'Pragati' a periodical was published.
7. 1936 – Indian State Broadcasting Service (ISBS) started.
8. 15 September, 1959 – The first Doordarshan Centre – Delhi Doordarshan was inaugurated by President Dr. Rajendra Prasad.
9. 2 October, 1972 – Doordarshan Centre in Mumbai began its telecast.

   (**Note :** *The date given in the Textbook of Std. XII and Encyclopaedia is 2nd October 1972 and not 1st May.*)
10. 15 August, 1982 – Colour Television was introduced.
11. 1991 – Indian government granted permission for private, national, international channels to telecast in India.

IMPORTANT POINTS

6414132

5.1 Introduction to Mass Media :

(1) Means of Communication in earlier times :

(1) According to the orders of the king, a crier would run in the streets beating drums to convey news.

(2) Then, the news would spread among people by word of mouth.

(2) British Period :

(1) People started receiving printed news through newspapers after the arrival of the British.

(2) Newspaper became a medium of circulating news, information and knowledge.

5.2 History of Mass Media :

(1) Newspaper :

(1) Newspaper is a publication which mainly prints news, editorials, people's opinions and other contents. It is distributed regularly at a definite time.

(2) Newspaper provides various local, national and international news.

(3) Newspapers are called the fourth column (pillar) of democracy.

(4) They are historical documents which record current events.

(5) In recent times, many newspapers have introduced e-newspapers.

(2) Forerunners of modern Newspaper :

Different means to convey King's order to the people

- **Egypt and Emperor Ashoka :** Custom of placing inscriptions, with royal decrees, at public places.
- **Roman Empire :** Decrees written on papers with various information were distributed in all regions.
- **Julius Caesar :** Newspapers named *Acta Diurnas* used to be placed at public places in Rome to convey royal commands.
- In the **7th century C.E., China** royal dictates were distributed among people at public places.
- **England :** Handouts were distributed giving information on important events or war.
- The ambassadors of a king posted at various places would send back important news to the royal court.

Let us know

- **News :**

"A community needs news, for the same reason that a man needs eyes. It has to see where it is going" says British author Dame Rebecca West. News is information from all over the land. The medium which prints this information is newspaper. England Gazette was the first newspaper started in England in 1666. James Augustus Hickey started the Bengal Gazette and laid the foundation of newspapers in India. In the later period, many newspapers were printed in English and regional languages.

(3) Bengal Gazette :

(1) The first English newspaper was started in Calcutta on 29th January, 1780.

(2) It was started by an Irish gentleman James Augustus Hickey.

(3) It was called 'Calcutta General Advertiser' or 'Bengal Gazette.'

Sr. No.	Newspaper	Editor/ Started by	Information
1.	Darpan (1832)	Balshastri Jambhekar	(1) First newspaper in Marathi. (2) It was started on 6th January 1832 in Mumbai hence, the day is celebrated as 'Patrakar Din' (Journalists' Day). (3) The political, economic, social and cultural events of these times can be viewed through Darpan. Events reported in Darpan are : (i) Expenditure of East India company was reported. (ii) The danger of Russian attack on India. (iii) Remarriage of Hindu widows. (iv) Achievements of Raja Ram Mohan Roy. (v) Committee appointed for cleanliness in city and other such news were printed in Darpan, throwing light on various situations of those days.
2.	Prabhakar	Bhau Mahajan	(1) We get to read thorough history of French Revolution. (2) The letters by Lokhitvadi (Gopal Hari Deshmukh) were published in Prabhakar. (3) It aimed at creating social awareness.
3.	Dnyanoday		(1) Printed Maps of Asia in 1842 and Europe in 1851. (2) Illustrations were printed for the first time. (3) Installation of telegraph was reported in this paper. (4) Printed *'Chakya Mhasoba'*, i.e. the news about beginning of railway services in India. (5) Printed the news of the Indian War of Independence of 1857.
4.	Induprakash		(1) Work for the cause of social awakening. (2) Supported the cause of widow remarriage.
5.	Deenbandhu	Krishnarao Bhalekar, close associate of Mahatma Phule	(1) Mouthpiece of Bahujansamaj. (2) Throws light on the conditions of Bahujan Samaj in those times.

64144132

Sr. No.	Newspaper	Editor/ Started by	Information
6.	Kesari and Maratha (1881)	Gopal Ganesh Agarkar and Lokmanya Tilak	(1) Published articles about prevalent Social and Political problems. (2) Described the condition in the country which led to social awakening. (3) Propagated various texts and books in Indian languages. (4) Created awareness among the people about political systems in foreign countries. (5) Created discontent among the masses against British rule.

Let us know

(1) Balshastri Jambhekar :
(1812 – 17th May 1846)

A great thinker and journalist. He was fluent in English, Marathi and Sanskrit. After his appointment as native secretary he translated many books. He started the newspaper 'Darpan'. In spite of having no prior knowledge about newspaper, he decided on its subject, language, layout, articles, etc. He advocated improvement in the social system; wrote essays on widow remarriage, education of women, men-women equality in his paper. He started the tradition of periodicals. His contribution is valuable in the making of intellectual Maharashtra.

(2) Shatpatre :

Gopal Hari Deshmukh published more than 100 letters in Bhau Mahajan's newspaper Prabhakar. In 1866, these letters were collected and compiled into a book and was published. The book was titled 'Shatpatre'. There are a total of one hundred and eight letters which discussed the then prevalent social, political, religious and cultural conditions. Though he praised rich Indian traditions, he did not hesitate to criticise superstitions, lethargic and conservative attitude of Indians at large. We come to know from Shatpatre that he worked ardently for social reformation.

(1) Magazines and Journals (Periodicals) :

(1) Meaning and Type :

(1) Magazines which are published at regular intervals are called 'Periodicals'. Magazines and Journals are two types of periodicals.

(2) They are categorised as weekly, bi weekly, monthly, bimonthly, quarterly, six monthly, annual, etc. depending on the duration at which they are published.

(3) There may be some chronicles which are published at no fixed time.

(2) Early Magazines :

(1) Balshastri Jambhekar started the first monthly magazine in Marathi known as 'Digdarshan'.

(2) 'Pragati', now a defunct journal, was started in 1929 and edited by Tryambak Shankar Shejwalkar.

(3) Marathi journals like 'Bharatiya Itihas ani Sanskruti' and 'Marathwada Itihas Parishad Patrika' are periodicals devoted to Indian history in the present times.

Let us know

- **Periodicals :**

A periodical is anything that comes out with regular issues. A daily newspaper, a weekly newsmagazine, a monthly journal and an annual book series are all examples of periodicals.

A journal is a periodical based on necessity. Anyone working in a particular field generally subscribes to them. They can be described as reference books in instalments. Articles are generally written by experts in the subject.

6414132

A 'Magazine' is a periodical with a popular focus, aimed at general public and containing news, personal narratives and opinions. Articles are written by professional writers. Magazines often have lots of eye-catching illustrations.

Time, Newsweek, Frontline, Outlook, Femina, The Week, etc. are some of the popular periodicals.

(3) Electronic or Digital Journalism :

(1) Electronic or Digital Journalism or Web Journalism is practised using ultra modern technology like the computers and the internet.

(2) Web news portal, social media, web channels, YouTube provide historical content for readers.

Concept

- **e-newspaper :**

In recent times, e-newspaper has got prominent place in Mass Media.

- In e-newspaper, news comes in sequence and not in accordance with importance like in a printed newspaper.
- We have to click on the news headline that we want to read and then it appears on the screen in detail.
- There is a place provided to express the opinion of the reader.
- 'The Hindu' and 'Kesari' became the first English and Marathi e-newspapers respectively.
- Presently, almost all newspapers have their digital edition, i.e. e-newspapers.

64141132

(4) Radio (Akashvani) :

(1) Development of AIR :

(1) A private radio company, Indian Broadcasting Company (IBC) broadcasted daily programmes, which was later taken over by the British Government.

(2) It was later named as Indian State Broadcasting Service (ISBS).

(3) On 8th June 1936, it was named as All India Radio (AIR).

(4) AIR came under Information and Broadcasting Ministry of the Indian Government after independence.

(5) A famous poet, Pandit Narendra Sharma suggested the name 'Akashvani'.

Let us know

- **Akashvani :**

Alexander Graham Bell invented telephone in 1876. Words were communicated/travelled from one place to other using wires.

Telegram (wireless communication) was invented by Italian scientist Guglielmo Marconi in 1896.

The first radio centre was started by British Broadcasting Company which was established in 1922 and expanded all over the world.

In India, the first radio station was started by Bombay Presidency Club in 1923. In India, it was called 'Nabhovani'.

It was later named Akashvani. *'Bahujan Hitay, Bahujan Sukhay'* is the tagline of 'Akashvani'.

(5) Format of Akashvani's programmes :

(1) Initially, Akashvani gave information about government's programmes and projects.

(2) Later on, programmes related to entertainment, social awareness and literacy were broadcast.

(3) It also broadcast special programmes for women, labourers, youngsters and farmers.

(4) Programmes were broadcast in 24 languages and 146 dialects from Vividh Bharati.

(5) Recently, private radio stations like Radio Mirchi and many other FM stations are providing radio services.

Let us know

- **Underground Radio Station :**

The resolution to start the 'Quit India Movement' was passed on 8th August 1942 at the session of the Indian National Congress. Mahatma Gandhi gave the slogan 'Do or Die' to the people. The movement began on 9th August.

During this period, Mrs. Usha Mehta, Vithal Jhaveri initiated a secret radio station in Mumbai. This radio station was known as 'Azad Station'. Patriotic songs, speeches and news about Quit India were broadcast. This gave great inspiration to the movement. Such underground radio stations were also started at Kolkata, Delhi and Pune.

(6) Television (Doordarshan) :

(1) The first President of India, Dr. Rajendra Prasad, inaugurated Delhi Doordarshan Centre.

(2) Mumbai Doordarshan was started on 2nd October, 1972.

(3) Colour television started on 15th August, 1982 and private channels started their telecast in 1991.

64141132

Let us know

- **Doordarshan :**

Transmitting signals over long distances was one of the greatest triumphs of 19th century inventors. Many tried, leading to a long list of supposed 'pioneers' of television, the most famous being the Scottish inventor John Logie Baird. England, France and America all had operational television stations by 1939. In 1959, the British company, Philips gifted the close circuit unit kept in an exhibition which was organised in New Delhi. The first telecast of Indian television started on 15th September, 1959 from Delhi Doordarshan Centre. Famous literary figure P. L. Deshpande was the first producer of Doordarshan.

5.3 Why do we need Mass Media?

(1) To facilitate free flow of information to all strata of the society.

(2) To avail a platform to readers to express their views and opinions.

(3) To make democracy stronger.

(4) To create social awareness and educate the masses.

(5) As television shows visuals and images it overcomes the limitations of newspapers.

5.4 Critical Understanding of the information received through Mass Media :

(1) Information received through mass media should be reviewed critically.

(2) The news or information printed in newspapers or shown on television may not represent the exact truth.

(3) Handwritten diaries of Adolf Hitler were published by a magazine in Hamburg city of Germany. Those diaries were later proved to be forged.

5.5 Mass Media and Professional Opportunities :

Sr. No.	Name of the medium	Professional Field
1.	Newspaper	Editor, reporter, printer, photographer, writer, technician, computer operator, office staff
2.	Akashvani	Office staff, centre head, Interviewer, news editor, technicians working in studio, manager, etc.
3.	Doordarshan	Journalist, news editor, cameraman, art director, lightman, technical director, interviewer, artists, anchors, make-up man, etc.

5.6 History Applied in Mass Media :

Sr. No.	Mass Media	Application of History
1.	Newspapers	(1) To unfold the background of an event in the news. (2) If past references are required while reviewing the news. (3) To make the columns like '50 years ago or 100 years ago' informative. (4) In order to review the economical, social and political events knowledge of similar events in the past is very essential. (5) While writing columns to commemorate the 100th year of an event having historical significance.
2.	Akashvani	(1) While presenting programmes, celebrating Independence Day or Republic Day references of speeches made by previous Prime Ministers and Presidents are given. (2) Knowledge of history is essential while planning radio programmes. (2) On occasions such as birth or death anniversaries of national leaders, Centennial Year or Golden Jubilee Year, special programmes are presented giving information about their work. (3) For presenting programmes like 'On This Day in History' one needs to have knowledge of history. (4) Knowledge of history is helpful while presenting programmes on historical events, leaders or conducting discussions on the same.
3.	Television	(1) While producing historical or mythological serials, maintaining accuracy with regard to the presentation of environment, outfits, weaponry, lifestyle, lingual expression, etc. is essential. (2) We should have a deep understanding of history of the specific period. (3) In order to present programmes on lives of players, soldiers, heroics of men and women achievers, empires, forts, heritage, etc. knowledge of history is necessary.

64141132

You would find this interesting : (Textbook Page 37)

- **Bharat Ek Khoj :**

(1) It was based on Pandit Nehru's book, 'Discovery of India'.

(2) It is presented in the form of narration of Indian history from the Harappan period until India's freedom struggle.

(3) The serial was admired in all parts of India because of its comprehensive visual presentation and detailed research on social, cultural and political history of India.

(4) Stories about India's past and present were explained through dramatisation using folklore and informative speeches. Pandit Nehru's perspective of looking at history and equally comprehensive visual presentation are special features of this serial.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing a correct option : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) The first English newspaper in India was started by ..... ***(March '19)***
(a) James Augustus Hickey
(b) John Marshall
(c) Allen Hume
(d) Balshashtri Jambhekar

*(2) Television is an ..... medium.
(a) visual *(b) audio*
(c) audio-visual *(d) printed*

(3) ..... is the first newspaper in Marathi.
(a) Deenbandhu *(b) Prabhakar*
(c) Darpan *(d) Kesari*

(4) 6th January is celebrated as ..... in Maharashtra.
(a) Periodical Day *(b) Newspaper Day*
(c) Printing Day *(d) Journalist Day*

(5) The letters 'Shatpatre' published in Prabhakar were written by ..... .
(a) Lokmanya Tilak *(b) Lokhitvadi*
(c) Mahatma Gandhi *(d) Justice Ranade*

Ans. (1) James Augustus Hickey (2) audio-visual (3) Darpan (4) Journalist Day (5) Lokhitvadi.

[2]

(1) The honour of printing illustrations for the first time in an Indian newspaper goes to ..... .
(a) Dnyanoday *(b) Darpan*
(c) Prabhakar *(d) Kesari*

(2) Deenbandhu was started by ..... who was a close associate of Mahatma Phule.
(a) Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar
(b) Lokmanya Tilak
(c) Narayan Meghaji Lokhande
(d) Krishnarao Bhalekar

(3) ..... newspaper was started by Agarkar and Lokmanya Tilak.
(a) Deenbandhu and Induprakash
(b) Darpan and Prabhakar
(c) Dnyanoday and Digdarshan
(d) Kesari and Maratha

(4) Balshastri Jambhekar started ..... the first monthly magazine in Marathi.
(a) Digdarshan *(b) Prabhakar*
(c) Darpan *(d) Dnyanoday*

(5) ..... was acknowledged as the fourth pillar of democracy.
(a) Representatives *(b) Periodicals*
(c) Newspaper *(d) Books*

Ans. (1) Dnyanoday (2) Krishnarao Bhalekar (3) Kesari and Maratha (4) Digdarshan (5) Newspaper.

[3]

(1) The first English news bulletin was broadcast on 23rd July, 1927 from the ..... radio station.
(a) Kolkata (b) Madras (c) Mumbai (d) Delhi

(2) Dr. Rajendra Prasad, the first President of India inaugurated the ..... Doordarshan centre.
(a) Mumbai *(b) Bangalore*
(c) Lucknow *(d) Delhi*

(3) Newspapers published special supplements or a special issue to commemorate occasions like completion of seventy-five years of ..... in 2017.
(a) Khilafat Movement
(b) Non-Co-operation Movement
(c) Civil Disobedience Movement
(d) Quit India Movement

(4) ....., a German weekly magazine, had purchased a number of so called handwritten diaries that were later proved forged.
(a) Time Magazine *(b) Statesman*
(c) Stern *(d) Reuters*

(5) Akashvani has preserved recordings of all speeches delivered by the ..... on 15th August.
(a) President *(b) Vice President*
(c) Prime Minister *(d) Army General*

(6) Akashwani comes under the Ministry of ..... of the Indian Government.
(a) Social welfare
(b) Human Resource and Development
(c) Information and Broadcasting
(d) Education Technology

Ans. (1) Mumbai (2) Delhi (3) Quit India

6414132

Movement (4) Stern (5) Prime Minister. (6) Information and Broadcasting.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : *(1 mark each)*

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

(July '19; March '20; Nov. '20)

*[1] Newspaper	Editor
(1) Prabhakar	(a) Acharya P. K. Atre
(2) Darpan	(b) Balshastri Jambhekar
(3) Deenbandhu	(c) Krishnarao Bhalekar
(4) Kesari	(d) Bal Gangadhar Tilak

Ans. Wrong pair : Prabhakar – Acharya P. K. Atre

[2] Newspaper	Issues
(1) Prabhakar	(a) History of French revolution
(2) Induprakash	(b) Advocated widow re-marriage
(3) Deenbandhu	(c) Information on Telegraph
(4) Kesari	(d) Voiced social and political problems.

Ans. Wrong pair : Deenbandhu – Information on Telegraph

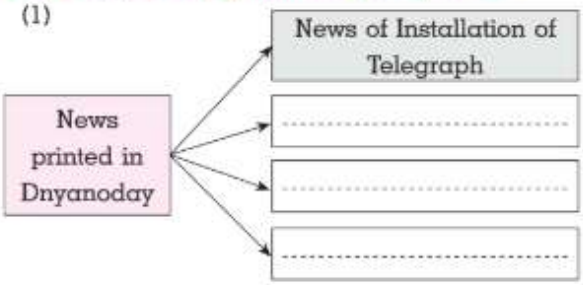
[3] Newspaper/ Magazine/Book	Editor
(1) Pragati	(a) Tryambak Shankar Shejwalkar
(2) Digdarshan	(b) Narendra Sharma
(3) Deenbandhu	(c) Krishnarao Bhalekar
(4) Discovery of India	(d) Pandit Nehru

Ans. Wrong pair : Digdarshan – Narendra Sharma

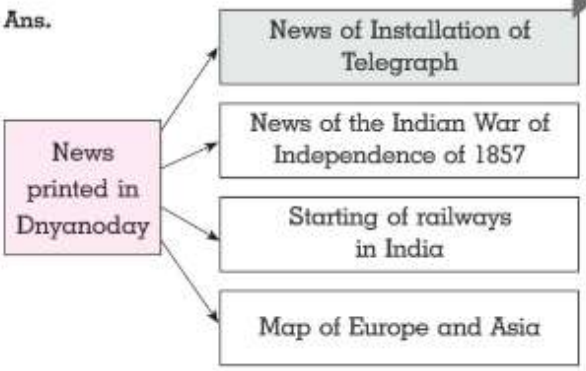
Q. 3 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Complete the graphical description :

(1)



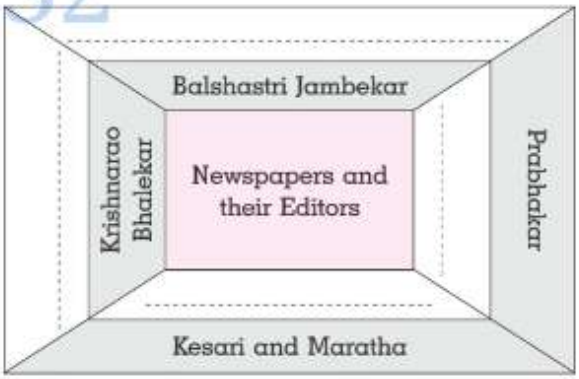
Ans.



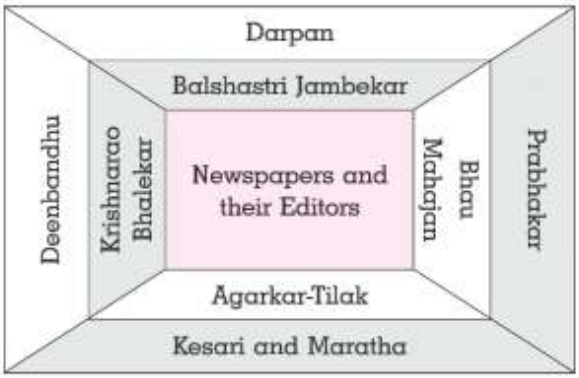
(2)

Ans.

(3)



Ans.



64141132

(2) Show the progress of Indian television Time-line :

15 September 1959	.....	15 August 1982	.....
.....	Mumbai Doordarshan was started	.....	Private Channels were granted rights to telecast

Ans.

15 September 1959	2nd October 1972	15 August 1982	1991
Delhi Doordarshan was started	Mumbai Doordarshan was started	Introduction of Colour television	Private Channels were granted rights to telecast

Q. 4 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Explain the Concept' will be asked under the question 'Write Short Notes' in History. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

***(1) Role of newspapers in the Indian struggle for independence :** *OR*

Newspapers, in those times, were a very important medium of creating social awareness.

Ans. Newspapers played an important role in the Indian independence struggle. It is as follows :

(1) Newspapers served as an important medium to create awareness during those times.

(2) They described greatness of Indian culture and history to gather support of masses for the freedom movement.

(3) They supported social, political and religious movements and opposed imperialism.

(4) They discussed various social and political issues. The ideas of social reformers, national leaders and various organisations active in independence struggle reached people through newspapers.

***(2) Need of Mass Media :** *(March '19)*

Ans. Mass media includes print and electronic and various news media.

(1) It facilitated free flow of information to all strata of the society and brought the world closer.

(2) Editorials, various columns and supplements are essential parts of newspapers. Readers also get a platform to voice their opinions. In fact, newspapers can help to make democracy stronger.

(3) Akashvani broadcasted various programmes of the government as well entertainment and awareness creating programmes. It fulfils the need of the government to connect with people.

(4) Television is an Audio-Visual medium which has made it possible to cross the inherent limitations of newspapers and radio to show the actual visuals of an event to people.

Mass Media is very important as it plays an important role to strengthen democracy.

***(3) Mass Media and Professional opportunities :**

Ans. There are many professional opportunities available in printed, electronic and digital media.

(1) Writers, columnists, editors are required to write articles, columns and editorials in newspapers. Newspapers also require reporters to gather news and technicians to work in the press.

(2) There is requirement of actors and technicians in electronic media.

(3) Artists are required to present programmes on television, in the same way news presenters, anchors are required. If the articles, columns and programmes are based on history, an expert in history is required.

(4) Bengal Gazette :

Ans. (1) Bengal Gazette is the first newspaper which was started in India.

6414132

(2) It was started by James Augustus Hickey, an Irish national.

(3) It was first published on 29th January, 1780. It was also called 'Calcutta General Advertiser'.

(4) Bengal Gazette laid the foundation of newspaper in India.

(5) Electronic or Digital Journalism or Web Journalism.

Ans. (1) In the modern times, the computer and internet have become indispensable parts of printing and publishing process. Computer technology has led to the widespread practice of digital journalism.

(2) Websites run by newspapers are basically extensions of newspapers themselves. Modern periodicals are part of electronic or digital journalism.

(3) People get access to news through social media like Twitter, Instagram, Facebook, YouTube and from web news portals, web channels. This information is available in English and many other languages.

(4) Journalists working in this area today have to have many more skills than in the past when writing was the only requirement. Information available on these mediums should be reviewed critically and used with utmost care.

6414122

Q. 5 Explain the following sentences with reason : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Any information received through mass media needs to be reviewed critically.**

Ans. (1) Information provided in the media may not represent the exact truth. We need to scan it carefully.

(2) We have to understand idealistic and investigative motives of newspapers, government policies and prevailing social conditions behind the newspiece.

(3) The information received through Mass Media might be prejudiced or give a one-sided idea.

(4) 'Stern', a German weekly magazine, purchased and published a number of so called handwritten diaries of Hitler. It then sold them to a number of publication companies. However, later it was proved that those diaries were forged.

Hence it is essential to verify the information received through Mass Media.

***(2) Knowledge of history is essential for newspaper articles.** *(July '19)*

Ans. (1) In order to unfold the background of an event in the news, we have to resort to history.

(2) Some columns are based on historical events. These columns provide historical information about economical, social and political events in the past.

(3) Newspapers publish supplements in addition to the regular edition or special issues to mark the completion of 50 or 100 years of an event. On such occasions, one has to review history of that particular event.

(4) Even while writing columns like what happened in history on this day it is necessary to know past event. Hence, the knowledge of history is essential for writings of such type.

***(3) Television is the most popular medium.** *(March '19)* **OR**

Short Note – Television. *(July '19)*

Ans. (1) Television being an audio-visual medium brings us into contact with events in an exciting and clarifying way. It crossed the inherent limitations of newspapers and radio to show actual visuals.

(2) It becomes possible for people to watch all the national and international events sitting at home.

(3) In 1991, Indian government granted permission to private, national and international channels to telecast in India. Television became a treasure house of entertainment.

Therefore, the television is the most popular medium.

(4) Newspaper is an important medium of education and information.

Ans. (1) Newspapers report events which are interesting to the public. But the importance of newspaper stretches far beyond a passing human interest in events.

(2) It covers a miscellany of topical issues. News would involve matters of higher importance like war, global warming, education, national elections or trivial issues such as scandals, gossips and debates on minor controversies.

(3) Newspapers have contributed significantly to the spread of literacy and the concept of human rights and democratic freedoms. They are integral to the development of democracy. In fact, they can help in making the democracy stronger.

(4) Newspapers not only report the events but continue to shape opinions in the global village.

(5) 6th January is observed as 'Patrakar Din' or 'Journalist Day' in Maharashtra.

Ans. (1) Balshastri Jambhekar started the first newspaper in Marathi on 6th January, 1832 in Mumbai.

(2) He is referred to as the 'First Editor' as he was the first editor.

(3) He laid the foundation of Marathi newspaper by starting Darpan.

As 6th January is his birth date, it is observed as 'Patrakar Din' or 'Journalist' Day' in Maharashtra.

(6) Television and history are closely related.

Ans. (1) Television plays a major role in developing interest in history. While producing shows and serials based on history and mythology, it is essential to have an accurate knowledge of history and know the minute details.

(2) 'Bharat Ek Khoj', Raja Shivchhatrapati, Ramayana, Mahabharata are among the few popular serials based on history and mythology. While producing these serials, it was essential to know the prevalent social conditions, outfits, lifestyle, weaponry, lingual expressions of the people. Historians who had knowledge on these subjects are required.

(3) While making programmes based on sportsmen, literature, war, historical events, forts and animal life, it is important to give history of their development in that particular period.

(4) While conducting discussions on television on topics like social problems, education, economics, health, it is important to give references from the past.

This shows that the knowledge of history is required in the making many of programmes on Television. Hence Television and history are closely related.

Q. 6 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

Note : *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

***(1) Explain the Objectives of Newspapers.**

Ans. The main objectives of newspapers are as follows :

(1) Newspapers provide various local, national and international news to the people and inform them about daily events.

(2) They narrate political, economic, cultural and social history of the country.

(3) Newspapers fulfill their role as the fourth column of democracy by creating public awareness and becoming a medium of mass education.

(4) They even condemn the anti-social elements in the society and support the weaker section.

***(2) How is history helpful in the planning of the Akashvani programmes ?**

Ans. Akashvani broadcasts all types of programmes from celebration of independence day to entertainment programmes. In planning these programmes, the knowledge of history is essential.

(1) Akashvani invites historians as experts for discussions while presenting programmes on various occasions such as the anniversaries of births and deaths of national leaders, anniversaries of historical events, speeches of all Prime Ministers/ Presidents.

(2) Programmes like 'On This Day in History' is a daily programme which highlights importance of that day and date in history.

(3) Information has to be verified by historians before it reaches the people. Lectures on the contributions of various national leaders need to be supported by historical information. In the following ways history is helpful in the planning of Akashvani programmes.

6414132

***Q. 7 Read the following passages and answer the questions :** *(4 marks each)*

Note : *'Picture-based question can be asked on the Logo of Akashvani. Answers of the following passage questions will be helpful to write answer.*

(1)

Textbook pages 34, 35

Radio : 'Indian ... ... radio services.

(1) What was the new name of IBC? (1)

Ans. Indian Broadcasting Company (IBC) was taken over by the British Government. It was named as the Indian State Broadcasting Service. (ISBS). On 8th June 1936, it was renamed as 'All India Radio' (AIR).

(2) How was AIR named Akashvani? (1)

Ans. AIR was named as Akashvani on the suggestion of the famous poet Pandit Narendra Sharma.

(3) Which programmes are broadcasted by Akashvani? (2)

Ans. (1) Initially, Akashvani broadcasted government programmes and schemes.

(2) Later it broadcasted various entertainment and literary programmes.

(3) Akashvani presents various programmes for creating awareness.

(4) Special programmes are also broadcasted for farmers, workers, youth and women.

(2) *(March '19)*

Textbook page 37

Bharat Ek Khoj ... ... visual presentation.

(1) On which book is the serial 'Bharat Ek Khoj' based on? (1)

Ans. The serial Bharat Ek Khoj is based on 'Discovery of India', a book written by Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru.

(2) Who directed the serial 'Bharat Ek Khoj'? (1)

Ans. The serial was directed by Shyam Benegal.

(3) Which factors/aspects of Indian history are depicted in 'Bharat Ek Khoj'? *OR*

Why was 'Bharat Ek Khoj' a serial telecasted by Doordarshan admired in all parts of India ? (2)

Ans. The television serial 'Bharat Ek Khoj' presented social, political and economic life from ancient to the modern period in India.

(1) It portrayed various aspects of Indian history like Harappan civilisation, Vedic history and the interpretation of epics like Mahabharata and Ramayana.

(2) It used the technique of dramatisation effectively to recreate the Mauryan period and show the impact of Turk-Afghan invasions. The Mughal period and their contributions which have long-lasting effect on social and cultural fabric of India is shown. The rise of Bhakti movement, role of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj in getting *swarajya* is portrayed.

(3) The last episodes (finale) of the serial narrate social movements and India's freedom struggle in modern period.

Thus, the serial effectively portrayed the journey of India from Harappan civilisation to the modern period and therefore was admired in all parts of India.

Q. 8 Answer the following questions in detail : *(3 marks each)*

(1) What were the different means of communication known around the world before the advent of newspaper? ***(March '20)***

Ans. The following means of communication were used to convey news before the advent of newspaper :

(1) Inscriptions with royal decrees placed at public places was a custom in Egypt. Emperor Ashoka followed the same method to reach out to his subjects.

(2) In the Roman Empire, royal decrees were written on papers and those were distributed in all regions. It also contained information of various events taking place in the nation and its capital.

(3) During the reign of Julius Caesar *'Acta Diurna'*, meaning acts of everyday, used to be placed at public places in Rome.

6414132

(4) In the 7th century C.E., in China, royal dictates were distributed among people at public places.

(5) In England handouts were distributed occasionally among people at public places giving information about war or any important events.

(6) Travellers arriving from different faraway places would add spice to stories from those places and narrate the same to local people. The ambassadors of a king posted at various places would send back important news to the royal court.

(2) Write information on Periodicals based on its types. ***OR***

Define Periodicals, types and its classification. ***(Nov. '20)***

Ans. Magazines and journals which are published at regular intervals are known as Periodicals.

Types : (1) They are categorised as weekly, biweekly, monthly, bimonthly, quarterly, six monthly and annual.

(2) There are some chronicles which are published at no fixed time.

Classification : Periodicals can be classified as popular and scholarly.

(1) If a periodical aims at specialists and researchers, it is a 'journal'. Articles are generally written by experts in the subject.

(2) Popular periodicals are magazines published with variety of content. They can be on fashion, sports, entertainment and films.

(3) Bharatiya Itihas ani Sanskruti and Marathwada Itihas Parishad Patrika are periodicals of present times. Periodicals are an important source to study history.

(3) Write about the important role of newspaper in the freedom struggle.

Ans. (1) The press was the chief instrument for carrying out the political tasks and propagation of nationalist ideology.

(2) Both English and Vernacular press started by prominent leaders like Gopal Ganesh Agarkar and Lokmanya Tilak acted as catalyst to the freedom struggle. They started 'Kesari' and 'Maratha' in 1881.

(3) Newspapers played a great role in building up an increasingly strong national sentiment and consciousness among people. It was an instrument to arouse, train, mobilise and consolidate nationalist public opinion.

(4) The newspapers were an effective tool in the hands of social reformers. They exposed social evils such as child marriage, ban on remarriage of the widows, inhuman institution as untouchability, caste fetters, etc. It became a weapon in their hands to educate masses.

(5) A comparative study was presented in newspaper on western education, knowledge and national education.

(6) Newspapers also discussed political institutions in India and the west. The main aim of these newspapers was not to gain profit but to serve the people.

(4) Give a review of Akashvani's progress.

Ans. (1) Indian Broadcasting Company, a private radio company was taken over by the British Government in 1927 and named 'Indian State Broadcasting Service (ISBS)'. On 8th June 1936, it was renamed as 'All India Radio (AIR)'.

(2) AIR became integral part of the Ministry of Information and Broadcasting after independence. It was renamed Akashvani on the suggestion of Pandit Narendra Sharma.

(4) Initially it used to broadcast Government's programmes and schemes. Later it started broadcasting various entertainment, awareness creating and literary programmes.

(5) Akashvani started 'Vividh Bharati' programmes. It broadcasts special programmes for farmers, workers, the youth and women.

(6) Vividh Bharati Programmes are broadcasted in 24 regional languages and 146 dialects.

(5) Give a short account of the development of Indian television.

Ans. (1) Television service started in India in 1959. Dr. Rajendra Prasad, the first Indian President, inaugurated the Delhi Doordarshan centre.

6414132

(2) Mumbai centre began to telecast its programmes on 2nd October 1972. Colour television was introduced in India on 15th August 1982.

(3) The national telecast began in 1983. Doordarshan started Channels like DD Sports, DD Metro, news, etc. along with 10 regional channels.

(4) In the year 1991, the Indian government gave permission to private, national and international channels to telecast in India.

(5) Presently there are more than 800 national and regional channels. Some of them are exclusive news, sports, music, movies and religious channels which telecast programmes 24 hours a day.

(6) Write about the news printed in 'Darpan'.

Ans. The 'Darpan' newspaper started by Balshastri Jambhekar printed all types of news like political, economic, social and cultural. Some of them are mentioned below :

(1) The Accounts of Expenditure from the Three Administrative Divisions of the East India Company.

(2) The Danger of Russian Attack on the Nation.

(3) Appointment of a Committee for Cleanliness of the City.

(4) Remarriage of Hindu Widows.

(5) The Inception of Theatre at Calcutta.

(6) Achievements of Raja Ram Mohan Roy in England.

All these reports published in the paper throw light on various situations/events of those days.

(7) Distinguish between Newspapers and Magazines.

Ans. Newspapers and magazines differ in their format, objectives and duration of getting published. The differences are noted below :

Newspapers	Magazines
1. Newspapers document the current events.	1. Magazines give no importance to current news.
2. News, articles, columns, editorials have importance in a newspaper.	2. Magazines give preferences to particular subject and publish articles on it.
3. Newspapers are also called 'Dailies' as they are published everyday.	3. Duration of publication of magazine varies. Some are published weekly, fortnightly, monthly and annually.
4. The main purpose of newspaper is to report local, national and international news.	4. Instead of providing news, their content is entertaining and knowledge-based.
5. Newspapers make the people aware of the events happening in the society. They do not stick to any one subject.	5. Magazines are about a specific topic. On the basis of their appearance, size, readability, content and audience, magazines differ from newspapers.
6. Newspapers mostly write about current news. Whatever happens in the world appears in the newspaper within a span of 24 hours. It shapes public opinion and keep people updated about the activities of the government.	6. As magazines have lot of detailed information on specific topics they are considered as historical source.

64141192

***(8) Complete the following table :**

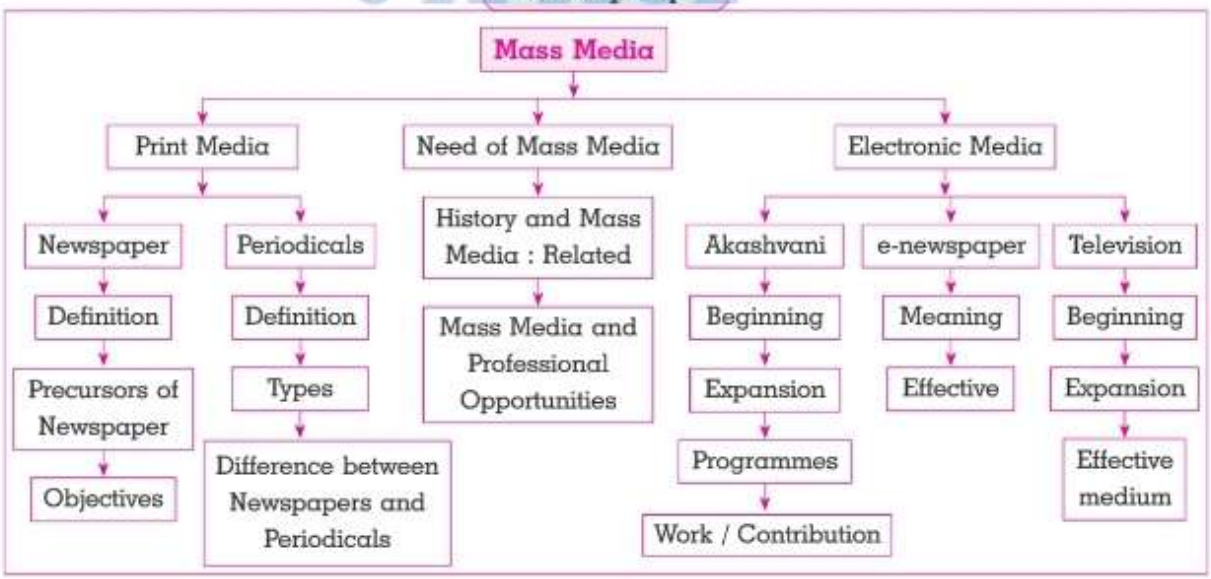
	Newspapers	Radio	Television
Background/Beginning	.....	.....	.....
Information Programmes	.....	.....	.....
Functions	.....	.....	.....

Ans.

	Newspapers	Radio	Television
Background/ Beginning	James Augustus Hickey started Calcutta General Advertiser or Bengal Gazette on 29th January, 1780. It was the first newspaper in English.	A private radio station was started known as Indian Broadcasting Company.	First Doordarshan centre was started in Delhi.
Information Programmes	News, articles, columns, opinions of the people, editorials, advertisements etc. are published.	Along with entertainment programmes, have literary, informative programmes on farmers, women and educative values.	Events around the world, movies, music, information about environmental and historical places, sports are shown either live or recorded.
Functions	(1) Report daily news. (2) Public awareness and mass education. (3) Provide information and strengthen democracy. (4) Oppose injustice and give publicity to developmental work.	(1) Provide news from different sectors. (2) Entertain through music, dramas, songs, etc. (3) Present social problems and educate the masses about it. (4) Conduct discussions on various issues ranging from environment to culture.	(1) Telecast daily events and entertain. (2) Educate the masses. (3) Publicise programmes which are for social benefit. (4) Bring about social awakening opposing evil traditions and practices.

6414132

Memory Map



Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

6 ENTERTAINMENT AND HISTORY

IMPORTANT POINTS

6.0 Entertainment :

(1) Means of Entertainment :

(1) Entertainment refreshes our mind and gives us pleasure and happiness.

(2) Hobbies like reading, games, drama, films, are means of entertainment.

(3) Celebrations, fairs, festivals, sports, dance and music were popular means of entertainment in ancient and medieval times.

(2) Types of Entertainment :

(1) **Active entertainment :** A person's mental and physical involvement in practising handicraft and participation in sport activities is called active entertainment.

(2) **Passive entertainment :** When a person is not participating in actual sense but only playing the role of a viewer, for example, watching a movie or listening to music it is called passive entertainment.

6.1 Why do we need Entertainment?

(1) It is essential to have entertainment of excellent quality for the healthy growth of one's personality. Entertainment keeps our mind lively and fresh.

(2) Games and hobbies makes a person physically more energetic.

(3) Pursuing games and hobbies helps in the development of our personality.

(4) It breaks the monotony and helps us get rid of boredom.

(5) Eventually our efficiency at work improves.

(6) It relieves the mind and body.

6414132

6.2 Folk Theatre :

Sr. No.	Types of Folk Art	Information
1.	Puppetry *(Kathputali)*	(1) Remains of clay dolls were excavated from the archaeological sites of Harappa, Egypt and Greece. It was assumed that they were used as puppets. (2) The traditional art of Puppetry has two styles, one that developed in Rajasthan and the other in southern regions of India. (3) The role of the narrator known as *Sutradhar* is very crucial in the success of *Kathputali* shows. (4) Though the stage for puppetry is quite small, the puppeteers make use of light and sound in an ingenious way. (5) There are four types of puppets used in *Kathputali* shows, they are shadow puppets, wooden puppets, string puppets and hand puppets.
2.	*Dashavatara*	(1) *Dashavatara* is a folk theatre based on stories of the 10 incarnations of Lord Vishnu, namely *Matsya, Koorma, Varaha, Narsimha, Wamana, Parashurama, Rama, Krishna, Buddha and Kalki.* (2) The characters representing Gods use wooden masks. (3) The show is mostly musical but some dialogues are spontaneous. The show ends by breaking *dahi handi,* an earthen pot of curd followed by *Aarti*.

Sr. No.	Types of Folk Art	Information
		(4) *Dashavatara* shows are mostly performed in Konkan region and Goa. Shyamji Naik Kale's *'phad'*, i.e. a troupe performed *Dashavatara* all over Maharashtra. (5) Vishnudas Bhave, the pioneer of Marathi theatre, staged mythological plays by introducing some modifications in the *Dashavatara* style. His mythological plays have background of *Dashavatara* theatre.
3.	*Bhajan*	(1) Singing songs in praise of god is known as *Bhajan*. It is accompanied by instruments like *taal* (cymbals), *mridangam* and *pakhavaj*. (2) There are two types of *Bhajan* – The pattern of moving in a circular fashion and singing without a break is called *Chakri Bhajan*. (3) The style in which singer-actors act as devotees and deliver dialogues in the form of devotional songs is *Songi Bhajan*. (4) Tukadoji Maharaj popularised *Khanjiri Bhajan*. *Bhajans* composed by Saint Tulsidas, Surdas, Meerabai and Kabir are popular in North India. (5) Compositions of Purandardas, Kanakdas, Vijaydas, Bodhendraguruswami and Thyagaraj are sung in Karnataka. (6) Saint Narsi Mehta gave momentum to *Bhakti* movement in Gujarat and Saint Namdev supported tradition of *bhajan kirtan* in Maharashtra through the *Varakari* sect.
4.	*Keertan*	(1) Naradmuni is supposed to be the founder of the *Keertan* tradition. Saint Namdev is known as the first *Keertankar* of Maharashtra. (2) Naraadiya or Haridasi and Varakari are two main traditions of *Keertan*. In *Haridasi Keertan*, *Haridas* or *Kathekaribuva* shoulders the responsibility of narration of the story and singing the composition. (3) In *Varkari Keertan* collective participation is more important. The players of cymbals are equally important along with the *Keertankar*. (4) *Haridasi Keertan* further has two parts *Poorvarang* and *Uttarrang*. *Poorvarang* comprises of *Naman* and *Nirupanacha Abang* and *Nirupan*. *Uttarang* comprises narration of a story to illustrate the main theme. (5) Keertan was used as a medium to create social awareness by Satyashodhak Samaj. Dattopant Patwardhan of Wai, Maharashtra started tradition of *Rashtriya Keertan*. (6) *Rashtriya Keertan* placed emphasis on creating awareness by narrating the life stories of great leaders of the independence movement. Sant Tukdoji Maharaj and Govindbua Afle performed *Rashtriya Keertan*.
5.	*Lalit*	(1) *Lalit* belongs to *Naradiya Keertan*. It is popular in Goa and Konkan region. During religious festivals, *Lalit* performances are arranged. (2) The presiding deity is invoked for the fulfilment of desires of the village community. *Lalit* is also performed in theatrical style. (3) A few texts of *Lalit* is available in Hindi as well. *Lalit* forms a backdrop of modern Marathi theatre.

6414133

Sr. No.	Types of Folk Art	Information
6.	*Bharud*	(1) A metaphorical song imparting spiritual and ethical lesson is called *Bharud*. *Bharud* is similar to a road show and is experimental. (2) It shows a wide range of subjects, has dramatic quality, easy rhythm and humour. (3) *Bharuds* composed by Saint Eknath are popular in Maharashtra. He composed them with the purpose of educating people on various aspects of life.
7.	*Tamasha*	(1) The origin of the word *Tamasha* is in Persian language. It means a pleasing sight. (2) It evolved from amalgamation of folk theatre and classical arts. (3) There are two types of traditional *Tamasha* – *Sangeet Bari* and *Dholakicha Phad*. (4) Dance and music are given more importance than drama in a *Sangeet Bari* whereas drama is the main part in *Dholakicha Phad*. *Vag* a lively and entertaining part of drama was included a little later. (5) It begins with *Gan* (praising the Lord Ganesha) followed by *Gavalan*. The *Vag* is presented in the second part of *Tamasha*. (6) *'Vichchha Mazi Puri Kara'* or *'Gadhavache Lagna'* are examples of the modern form of Tamasha.
8.	*Powada*	(1) *Powada* is a dramatic narration in which poetry and prosaic extracts are recited alternately. (2) *Powada* narrates deeds of heroic men and women in an impressive and inspiring style. (3) One such *Powada* was composed by the poet Adnyandas on the incident of killing of Afzal Khan by Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj as well as one composed by Tulsidas on the battle of Simhagarh. (4) In the British period, *Powadas* were composed to narrate the stories of Umaji Naik, Chapekar brothers and Mahatma Gandhi. (5) During the Samyukta Maharashtra movement, the *Powadas* were used as a medium to create public awareness.

64144132

Concept

(1) Lalit :

Lalit is a traditional form of entertainment in Maharashtra. It is performed in theatrical style and belongs to tradition of Naraadiya Keertan. It is popular in Konkan and Goa and has great importance. During Navratri or any other religious festivals, programmes like Keertan, Bhajan or religious discourses are arranged. On the last day of the festival, the presiding deity which is assumed to be sitting on the throne is invoked.

People from different communities come to invoke the deity to seek blessing for the fulfilment of their wishes. This is known as Lalit. Stories of Krishna, Rama and great devotees are presented during Lalit performance.

(2) Tamasha (Folk Theatre) :

Tamasha is an old form of popular entertainment in Maharashtra. It is presented in two types Sangeet Bari, Dholakicha Phad. It is known as Khadi gammat and Zadipatti in Vidarbha district. Tamasha acquired a distinct form in late Peshwa period of Maratha Empire. It is performed in front of a limited audience, by limited artistes in an enclosed place. Dance, music and songs have importance in Sangeet Bari. Traditional instruments like one string instruments, tabla, cymbals are used in

performances. Dancers dance to the rhythm with footbells or anklebells adorning their feet. Lavani is a genre of music popular in Maharashtra. Lavani is a combination of traditional song and dance, which is particularly performed to the beats of Dholki, a percussion instrument.

Lavani has contributed substantially to the development of Marathi folk theatre. Lavani developed into two distinct performances, namely Phadachi and Baithakichi Lavani. The performers performed on the rhythm of ankle bells. Lavani is performed with high tempo.

Dholakicha Phad begins with praising Lord Ganesha. This is the beginning called Gan. It is later followed by Gavalan. After that begins the Vag, it is the second part of Tamasha. Vag often has a social, mythological and historical theme. Vag ends with singing of Bhairavi. In the beginning, Vag had no written script. The dialogues were said spontaneously. Tamasha started with light and spontaneous form of entertainment but later became infamous due to slapstick humour.

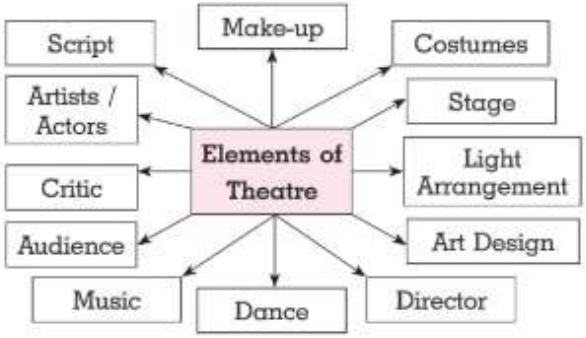
6414132

6.3 Marathi Theatre (Drama) :

(1) Theatre is a form of performing art devoted to performances either solo or collective.

(2) Actors and audience both are integral part of this Lalit art.

Elements of Theatre :



(3) Contribution of the Bhosale rulers of Tanjore :

(1) The rulers of Tanjore, the Bhosale family, were great patrons of drama. Some of them had written a few plays.

(2) They promoted plays in Marathi and southern languages.

(3) Some of them translated a few Sanskrit plays.

(4) Vishnudas Bhave :

(1) He is known as the father of the Marathi theatre.

(2) Seetaswayamvar was the first play presented by him.

(3) It was followed by many historical, mythological and also light farcical stage plays.

(4) The farcical plays dealt with many social issues in a humorous way.

Concept

• Farce :

Farce is a light theatrical comedy which aims at entertaining the audience through situations which are highly exaggerated, extravagant and thus improbable. Situations are humorous because of their ludicrous and often ridiculous nature. Farce was part of Sanskrit theatre too.

The genre of farce developed in the 15th century Europe as a way to make serious things, such as religious texts foolish. The roots of Marathi theatrical farce lies in the English theatre.

In the 20th century, farce found new expressions in the films of Charlie Chaplin. Farce is centred around situations. It maintains a high tempo during performance.

(5) V. J. Kirtane :

(1) In the initial years, written scripts were not used.

(2) Lyrics were written down but the dialogues used to be spontaneous.

(3) V. J. Kirtane was the first author who wrote the script of the play, Thorale Madhavrao Peshwe, in 1861.

(4) With that started the tradition of script writing.

(6) Khyal :

(1) In the latter half of the 19th century, Balkrishnabuva Ichalkaranjikar made

special efforts to introduce classical Khyal music in Maharashtra.

(2) Ustad Alladiya Khan, Ustad Abdul Karim Khan and Ustad Rahimat Khan contributed greatly in developing a taste for classical music among the audiences in Maharashtra.

Concept

• Khyal :

Khyal is believed to be an Arabic term, meaning thought, imagination. This word came to India with the Persian language. Khyal implies the idea of some sort of song or verse which is imaginative and conceptual in its nature or its execution at will. It means the singers sing it for prolonged time as long as they can stretch their imagination. A Khyal song is called a Bandish. Every singer generally renders the same Bandish differently. A typical Khyal performance used two songs – the Bada Khyal, in slow tempo (vilambit laya) comprises most of the performance while the Chhota Khyal in fast tempo (drut laya) is used as a finale.

(7) Musical Plays *(Sangeet Natak)* :

(1) Annasaheb Kirloskar – *Sangeet Shakuntal*

(2) Govind Ballal Deval – *Sangeet Sharada*

(3) Shripad Krishna Kolhatkar – *Sangeet Mooknayak*

(4) Krishnaji Prabhakar Khadilkar – *Sangeet Manapaman*

(5) Ram Ganesh Gadkari – *Sangeet Ekach Pyala.*

Concept

• Musical Play/Drama (Sangeet Natak) :

An innovative way adopted by Marathi theatre in 19th century. It included prose with poetry in the form of songs to convey the story. As dialogues enhance entertainment value of regular plays, songs or verses enhance the entertainment value of musical plays. Songs or verses play an important role to show leap in the story line. Songs or poetry or verses are the soul of dramas. Musical plays gave rise to theatrical songs which were simplified classical songs. The golden era of musical plays lasted till the middle of 20th century.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 43)

(1) Krishnaji Prabhakar Khadilkar brought on stage the play *Keechakvadh.*

(2) He symbolised Draupadi as helpless Mother India, Yudhisthira as a moderate, Bheem as the extremists and Lord Curzon was shown as keechak.

(3) This play created discontent in the mind of the audience against the British rule. Therefore, British government banned the play for some period of time.

6414132

(8)

Playwright	Name of the Play	Special feature
1. Acharya Atre	*Sashtang Namaskar, Udyacha Sansar, Gharabaher*	Helped the Marathi theatre to continue when it suffered temporary decline.
2. Vasant Kanetkar	*Raygadala Jevha Jag Yete, Ithe Oshalala Mrutyu*	Plays on historical themes.
3. Vijay Tendulkar	*Ghashiram Kotwal*	It threw light on social evils in the past and on the political system.
4. Vishram Bedekar	*Tilak ani Agarkar*	New type of drama focusing on differences in the opinions of political leaders.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 43)

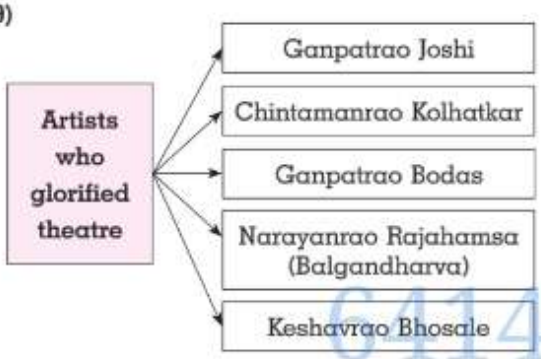
- **Natasamrat :**

(1) Vishnu Waman Shirwadkar (Kusumagraj), a famous author-poet, wrote the famous play *Natasamrat*.

(2) It is based on Shakespeare's well known play 'King Lear'.

(3) The character of a tragic protagonist Ganpatrao Belvalkar represents the blend of two well known personalities of the early Marathi stage Ganpatrao Joshi and Nanasaheb Phatak.

(9)



6414132

6.4 Indian Film Industry :

(1) Cinema :

(1) Cinema is an audio-visual medium that brings together art and technology.

(2) With the technology of motion pictures the film industry started.

(3) It gave rise to the era of silent movies. Later the technology of sound recording was introduced and the age of talkie (movies with sounds) started.

(4) Maharashtra has the honour of making and releasing the first full length movie. Dadasaheb Phalke's *'Raja Harishchandra'* was the first movie completely processed and released in India.

(2) Silent Movies :

(1) The contribution of Harishchandra Sakharam Bhatvadekar, also known as Savedada, is very important in the development of Indian movies. He was the first Indian to make a film (motion picture) in Mumbai.

(2) Madanrao Madhavrao Pitale and the Patwardhan family of Kalyan contributed greatly to the development of Indian movies.

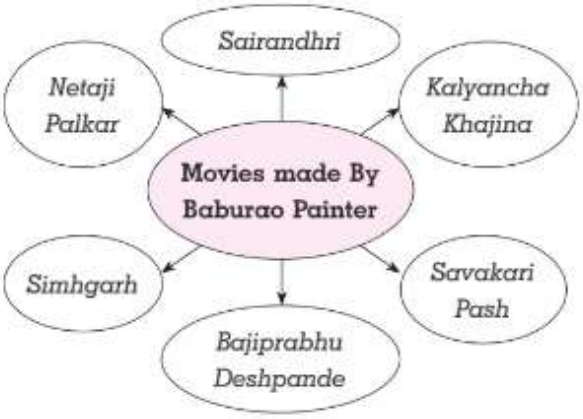
(3) Gopal Ramchandra Torane and his associates made a movie *'Pundalik'* with the help of foreign technicians and released it in Mumbai in 1912.

(4) Dadasaheb Phalke directed a full length movie *'Raja Harishchandra'*. It was processed fully in India and released in Mumbai in 1913.

(5) Later, he created silent movies like *Mohini-Bhasmasur, Savitri-Satyavana*. He also made documentaries on the rock-cut caves of Verul and pilgrim centres of Nashik and Tryambakeshwar.

(6) Anandrao Painter was the first one to make a cine-camera of Indian make.

(3) Movies made by Baburao Painter (Mistry) :



(4) Other Important Movies :

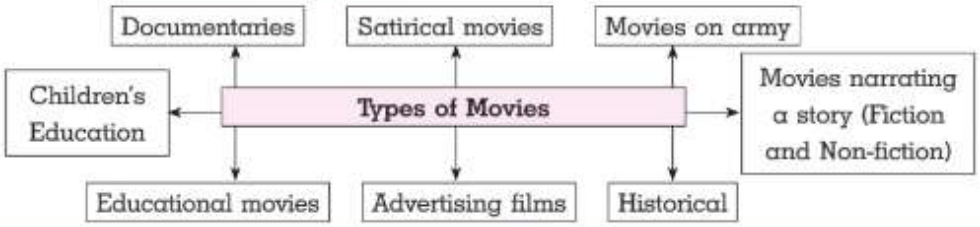
Sr. No.	Name of the movies	Name of the producer	Information
1.	*Bajirao-Mastani* (1925)	Bhalaji Pendharkar	It was banned by the British government as it was suspected to be a medium of spreading nationalistic sentiments.
2.	*Savalya Tandel* *Panna Dai* (Hindi)	Kamalabai Mangarulkar	First woman producer of Marathi movies.
3.	*Ramshastri* (1944)	Prabhat Company	Popular movie
4.	Mahatma Phule	Acharya Atre	Biographical movie.
5.	Vasudev Balwant Phadke	Vishram Bedekar	Biographical movie.
6.	*Dhanya te Santaji Dhanaji*	Dinakar D. Patil	Historical movie
7.	*Bal Shivaji*	Prabhakar Pendharkar	Historical children's movie
8.	Sant Tukaram	Prabhat Film Company	It was shown at the International Film Festival in Paris. Vishnupant Pagnis acted as Sant Tukaram.

(5) Historical Hindi movies :

6414132

(6) Production Studios :

Do You Know? (Textbook page 43)



6.5 Entertainment and Professional opportunity :

(1) Drama	(1) Experts in art design, hairstyle, and makeup. (2) Professional painters, sculptors and architects. (3) Authors as dialogue writers. (4) Directors, musicians, actors, managers.
(2) Cinema	(1) Experts required to recreate an era to make a periodic film. (2) Make-up artists, dress designers, hairstylists, technicians. (3) Light-men, art directors, cameramen, (4) Script writers, actors. (5) Experts in language to be used in the movie, mannerisms and culture.

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing a correct option : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) ..... is supposed to be the first keertankar in Maharashtra.
(a) Saint Dnyaneshwar
(b) Saint Tukaram
(c) Saint Namdev
(d) Saint Eknath

*(2) Baburao Painter made the movie ..... .
(a) Pundalik *(b) Raja Harishchandra*
(c) Sairandhri *(d) Bajirao Mastani*

(3) In the 18th century, ... started a Phad of Dashavatara artists which used to perform all over Maharashtra.
(a) Saint Gadge Maharaj
(b) Adnyandas
(c) Tulsidas
(d) Shyamiji Naik Kale

(4) Traditionally, ... is supposed to be the founder of keertan tradition.
(a) Saint Namdev *(b) Saint Eknath*
(c) Naradmuni *(d) Saint Gadge Maharaj*

(5) The *Powada* composed by the poet ..... on the incident of the killing of Afzal Khan is well-known.
(a) Adnyandas *(b) Tulsidas*
(c) Ramdas *(d) Surdas*

Ans. (1) Saint Namdev (2) Sairandhri (3) Shyamji Naik Kale (4) Naradmuni (5) Adnyandas.

[2]

(1) Compositions of ..... are not part of Bhajans sung in Karnataka.
(a) Purandardas *(b) Surdas*
(c) Bodhendraguruswami *(d) Thyagraj*

(2) Varkari sect has developed a glorious tradition of ..... by chanting God's name.
(a) Powada *(b) Dashavatari Natak*
(c) Bhajan-Keertan *(d) Bharud*

(3) Powada composed by Tulsidas on the battle of ..... is very well known.
(a) Panhala *(b) Raigarh*
(c) Pratapgad *(d) Simhgarh*

(4) Powadas composed by ..... were not the part of Samyukta Maharashtra Movement.
(a) Amarsheikh *(b) Patthe Bapurao*
(c) Annabhau Sathe *(d) Gawankar*

(5) ..... is known as the Father of Marathi theatre.
(a) V. J. Kirtane
(b) Dattopant Patwardhan
(c) Vishnudas Bhave
(d) Annasaheb Kirloskar

Ans. (1) Surdas (2) Bhajan-Keertan (3) Simhgarh (4) Patthe Bapurao (5) Vishnudas Bhave.

[3]

(1) ..... started the tradition of having a complete written script.
(a) V. J. Kirtane
(b) Vishnudas Bhave
(c) Shripad Krishna Kolhatkar
(d) Govind Ballal Deval

(2) In the latter half of the 19th century, ... made special efforts to introduce classical khyal music in Maharashtra.
(a) Bhimsen Joshi
(b) Kumar Gandharva
(c) Kishori Amonkar
(d) Balkrishnabuva Ichalkaranjikar

(3) In India, ... is the first one to make a cine camera.
(a) Anandrao Painter
(b) Baburao Painter
(c) Dadasaheb Torne
(d) Dadasaheb Phalke

(4) In 1925, ... made a movie Bajirao Mastani, which was later on banned by the British Government under the suspicion of spreading nationalistic sentiments.

64141132

(a) *Sanjay Leela Bhansali*
(b) *Dadasaheb Phalke*
(c) *Baburao Painter*
(d) *Bhalaji Pendharkar*

(5) ..... was the first woman producer of Marathi movies.
(a) *Kamalabai Mangarulkar*
(b) *Devika Rani*
(c) *Amirbai Karnataki*
(d) *Kanandevi*

Ans. (1) V. J. Kirtane (2) Balkrishnabuva Ichalkaranjikar (3) Anandrao Painter (4) Bhalaji Pendharkar (5) Kamalabai Mangalurkar.

---

[4]

(1) Technology of motion pictures gave rise to ..... movies.
(a) talkie (b) silent (c) colour (d) 3D

(2) ..... acted as Saint Tukaram in an internationally acclaimed movie.
(a) V. Shantaram (b) Keshavrao Bhosale
(c) Balgandharva (d) Vishnupant Pagnis

(3) Keertan of ..... resembled closely the Satya Shodhak style closely.
(a) *Saint Tukdoji Maharaj*
(b) *Mahatma Phule*
(c) *Saint Gadge Maharaj*
(d) *Saint Eknath*

(4) ..... is a musical play condemning on the evil custom of marrying young girls to aged men.
(a) *Sangeet Sharada*
(b) *Ekach Pyala*
(c) *Sangeet Manapaman*
(d) *Sangeet Sanshaykallol*

(5) The Government of India created a special division named 'Films Division' for making ..... .
(a) *Science fiction movies*
(b) *Documentaries*
(c) *Historical movies*
(d) *Educational movies*

Ans. (1) silent (2) Vishnupant Pagnis (3) Saint Gadge Maharaj (4) Sangeet Sharada (5) Documentaries.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : *(1 mark each)*

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

*[1] Name of the Play	Playwright
(1) Raygadala Jevha Jag Yete	Vasant Kanetkar
(2) Tilak Ani Agarkar	Vishram Bedekar
(3) Sashtang Namaskar	Acharya Atre
(4) Ekach Pyala	Annasaheb Kirloskar

Ans. **Wrong pair :** Ekach Pyala – Annasaheb Kirloskar

[2] First release	Movie
(1) First full length movie released in India	Raja Harishchandra
(2) First historical film in India	Simhgarh
(3) Movie dealing with real social issues	Savkari Pash
(4) Indian movie which got international acclaim	Saint Dnyaneshwar

Ans. **Wrong pair :** Indian movie which got international acclaim – Saint Dnyaneshwar

[3] Film producer	Produced Biographical Movies on
(1) Acharya Atre	Ram Shastri
(2) Vishram Bedekar	Vasudev Balwant Phadke
(3) Dinakar D. Patil	Dhanya te Santaji Dhanaji
(4) Prabhakar Pendharkar	Bal Shivaji

Ans. **Wrong Pair :** Acharya Atre – Ram Shashtri

[4] *(March '19)*

(1) Keechakvadh	Krishnaji Prabhakar Khadilkar
(2) Ekach Pyala	Ram Ganesh Gadkari
(3) Ithe Oshalala Mrutyu	Vasant Kanetkar
(4) Natasamrat	Vijay Tendulkar

Ans. **Wrong Pair :** Natasamrat – Vijay Tendulkar

6414132

[5]

(1) The first play in Marathi	Seetaswayamvar
(2) First play having complete written script	Thorale Madhavrao
(3) Metaphorical Drama	Udyacha Sansar
(4) Play based on Shakespeare's King Lear	Natasamrat

Ans. Wrong Pair : Metaphorical Drama – Udyacha Sansar

[6] Name of the Play	**Playwright** *(July '19)*
(1) Thorale Madhavrao Peshwe	V. J. Kirtane
(2) Ekach Pyala	Annasaheb Kirloskar
(3) Sangeet Sharada	Shripad Krishna Kolhatkar
(4) Sangeet Manapaman	Krishnaji Prabhakar Khadilkar

Ans. Wrong Pair : Sangeet Sharada – Shripad Krishna Kolhatkar

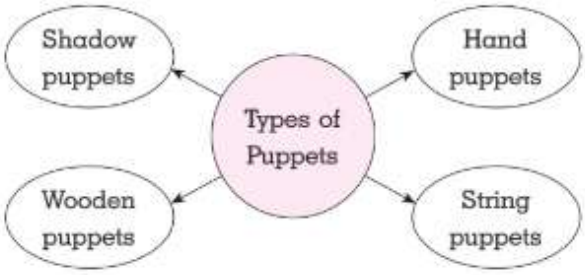
64141132

Q. 3 Complete the graphical presentation : *(2 marks each)*

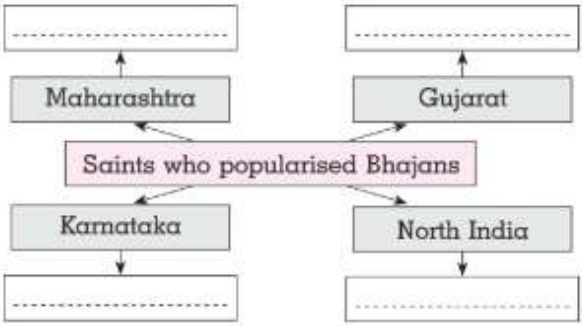
[1] Prepare concept map on :

(1) Types of Puppets : *(March '19; July '19)*

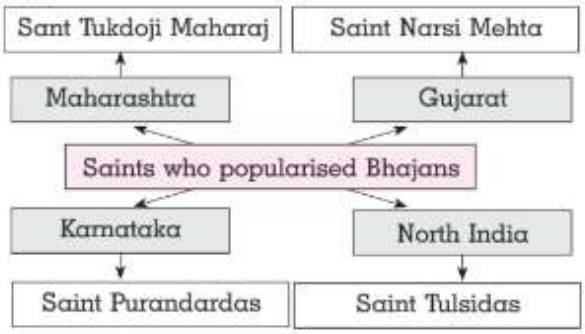
Ans.



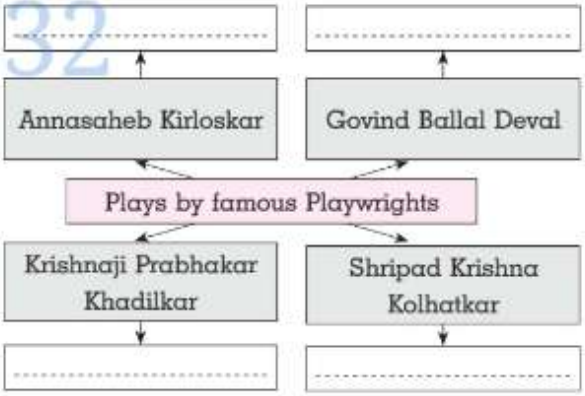
(2) Saints who popularised Bhajans :



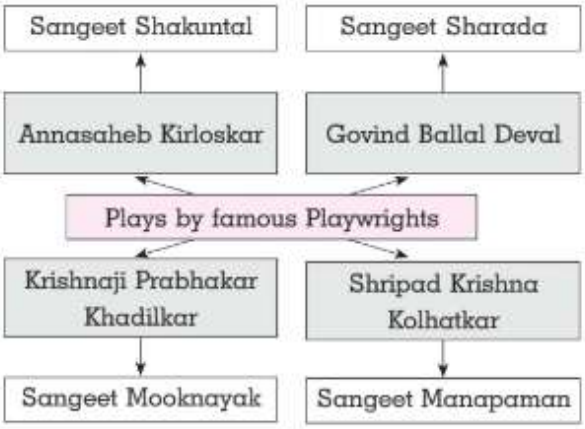
Ans.



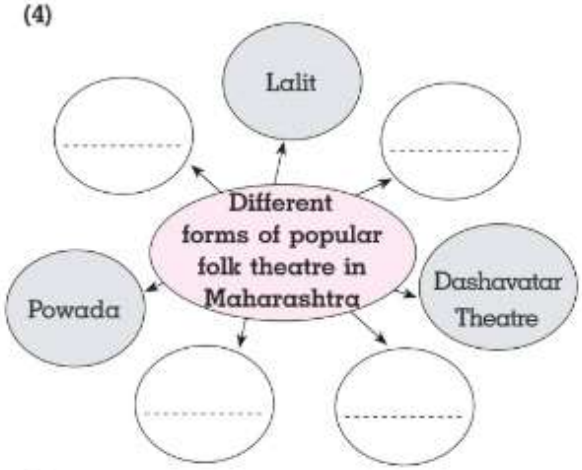
(3) Plays by famous Playwrights :



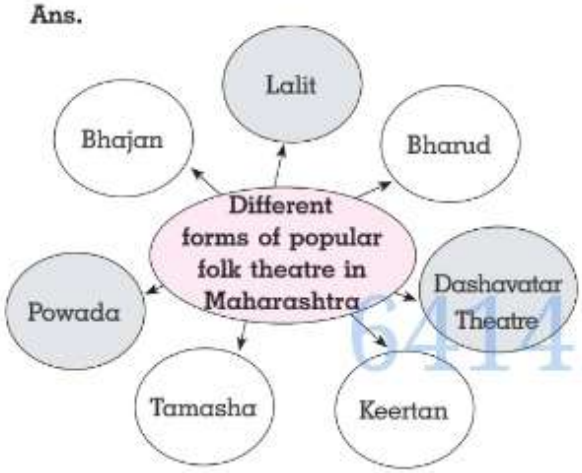
Ans.



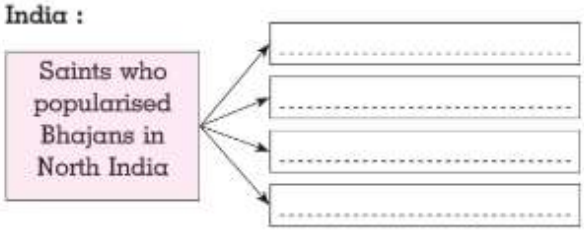
(4)



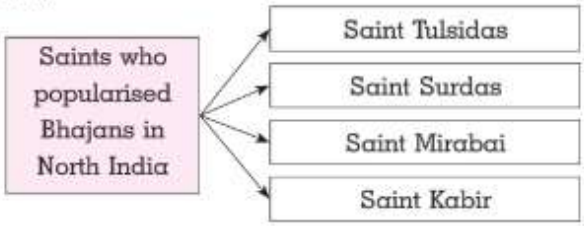
Ans.



(5) Saints who popularised Bhajans in North India :

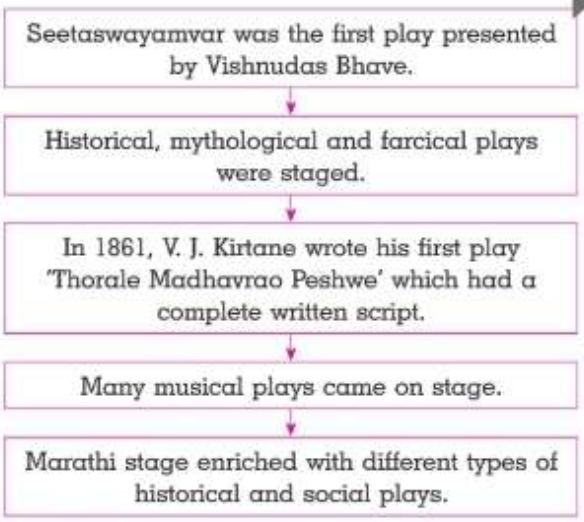


Ans.



[2] Prepare a flow chart on development of Marathi Theatre :

Ans. Development of Marathi Theatre :



Q. 4 Write Short Notes : ***(2 marks each)***

(1) Need of Entertainment :** ***(March '20)

Ans. (1) Entertainment of excellent quality is essential for healthy growth of a person as it is an integral part of one's life.

(2) To break the boredom of routine life and keep the mind lively and fresh we need some entertainment.

(3) It makes us feel more energetic and our efficiency at work improves. Hobbies and games are pursued for entertainment which eventually develops personality.

(4) Entertainment refreshes our mind and helps to distress. Lack of entertainment in one's life will lead to monotonous life and boredom.

***(2) Marathi Theatre :**

Ans. (1) Theatre is a place devoted to performances either solo or collective, of performing arts. The 19th century saw a great development of the Marathi Theatre. Vishnudas Bhave was known as the father of the Marathi Theatre.

(2) In the initial years historical, mythological plays were performed along with light farcical plays. The plays had no written script.

(3) The tradition of having a complete written script began with the play 'Thorale Madhavrao Peshwe' in 1861 written by V. J. Kirtane. This was

6414132

the beginning of the tradition of having a complete written script ready before staging. At the end of 19th century, the tradition of musical plays started. Historical themes and social problems were presented through these plays.

(4) The popular plays by Acharya Atre like Udyacha Sansar, Gharabaher helped the Marathi theatre to sustain through a temporary decline. Vasant Kanetkar, Vishram Bedekar, Acharya Atre, enriched the Marathi theatre.

***(3) Entertainment and Professional Opportunities :**

Ans. (1) There are many professions associated with theatre and cinema.

(2) Professional hairstylists, costume designers, make-up artists, art directors who put up stage backdrops are required in theatre.

(3) Directors, technicians, actors, lightmen, costume and jewellery designers and assistants are required too. Experts in music and script writers, singers are required.

(4) Cinema requires all of them along with dance directors, singers, cameramen, dialogue writers and story writers. Scholars of history can work in this field as art directors.

(4) Dashavatara Theatre :

Ans. (1) The stories presented in Dashavatara shows are based on the ten incarnations of Vishnu.

(2) The method of acting, make-up, costumes in Dashavatara show is set by the tradition.

(3) It is mostly a musical show but there may be a few spontaneous dialogues. At the beginning of the show, Sutradhar, the narrator invokes Lord Ganesha, for its successful run.

(4) Dashavatara is part of the folk theatre in Maharashtra which has its origin in mythological plays.

(5) Bhajan :

Ans. (1) Singing songs in praise of God and chanting God's name accompanied by instruments like taal (cymbals), mridangam, pakhavaj is known as Bhajan.

(2) Bhajan is an important element of devotional music for those who are on the path of devotion. Varkari sect made Bhajans accessible to all.

(3) There are two types of Bhajans, Chakri and Songi Bhajans.

(4) Devotees keep moving in circular fashion and without break in Chakri Bhajan. In Songi Bhajan, singer-actors act as devotees and deliver dialogues in the form of devotional songs.

(6) Bharud :

Ans. (1) Bharud can be described as a metaphorical song that has spiritual and ethical lessons. Bharud is similar to road show.

(2) Bharud is popular because of its wide range of subjects, humorous presentation, dramatic quality and easy rhythm.

(3) Bharuds are composed with the purpose of educating people on various aspects of life.

(4) Even though Bharuds of Saint Eknath are famous, bharuds were composed by many saints including Saint Dnyaneshwar.

(7) Documentaries :

(You would like to know this : Textbook page 44)

Ans. (1) A film which gives information, inspires and educates people and is a short film is a documentary.

(2) Documentaries were made on freedom struggle, national leaders, social issues and superstitions, forts, animal species, sports, etc.

(3) They were aimed at creating public awareness about various issues.

(4) They are shown in the cinema theatres before the start of the main movie.

(8) Means of Entertainment :

Ans. (1) Entertainment is an integral part of man's life. Man has developed many means of entertainment since ancient times.

(2) Ancient times saw the rise of festivals, fairs, sports, dance-music, etc.

(3) The means of entertainment changed with times. Television, mobiles, video games and movies and such other modern means of entertainment were introduced.

(4) Folk music, classical music, plays, books, newspapers, magazines are some mediums of entertainment which are available. Different types of sports, hobbies and travel too are means of entertainment.

6414132

(9) Lalit :

Ans. (1) Lalit is an old form of entertainment popular in Konkan, Maharashtra and Goa. It belongs to the tradition of Naaradiya Keertan.

(2) It is presumed that the presiding deity is present on the throne. It is invoked by the people as it is widely believed that the deity fulfils all the wishes.

(3) Stories of Krishna, Rama and of great devotees are presented during the performance.

(4) Lalit forms a part of the backdrop of modern Marathi theatre.

(10) Keechakvadh :

(Do You Know? Textbook page 43)

Ans. (1) Krishnaji Prabhakar Khadilkar wrote Keechakvadh in the pre-independence era. It was a metaphorical drama.

(2) It was based on the incident of Keechakvadh described in the epic, Mahabharata.

(3) Draupadi represented helpless Mother India, while Yudhishthira represented the moderates and Bheem the extremists. Keechak represented the insolent Viceroy Lord Curzon.

(4) The audience used to perceive characters in this fashion and feel enraged about the imperialistic British rule.

(11) Natasamrat :

(Do You Know? Textbook page 43)

Ans. (1) The renowned author-poet Vishnu Waman Shirwadkar, also known as Kusumagraj wrote Natasamrat.

It is styled after Shakespeare's well known play 'King Lear'.

(2) Ganpatrao Belvalkar, the tragic protagonist of Natasamrat represents a blend of two well-known personalities of early Marathi stage Ganpatrao Joshi and Nanasaheb.

(3) The traits of both great actors are found in the main character of Natasamrat.

(4) Natasamrat is a tragic story of an aging actor who gives his entire wealth to his sons and is humiliated by them. This play was very popular and created history on stage performance and in playwriting.

(12) Tamasha (Folk theatre) :

Ans. (1) Tamasha is a Persian word which means a pleasing sight. Tamasha emerged as an independent form in the 18th century absorbing the traits of folk theatre and classical arts.

(2) Tamasha is classified into 'Sangeet Bari' and 'Dholakicha Phad'. Dance and music are more important than drama in Sangeet Bari. Tamasha with drama as main part was developed later. It included Vag, the dramatic part a little later.

(3) The show begins by singing the praise of Lord Ganesha, known as Gana. It is followed with the presentation of Gavalan.

(4) The second part of Tamasha presents the Vag. The plays like 'Vichchha Mazi Puri Kara' or 'Gadhavache Lagna' were very popular.

Q. 5 Explain the following statements with reasons : ***(2 marks each)***

***(1) Expertise in history is important in the film industry.**

Ans. It is essential to have knowledge of history while making films on historical events or a person.

(1) If the movie has a historical theme then art directors are required to create backdrop designs showcasing the atmosphere of that period. To write movie dialogues, the knowledge of the culture and language as spoken in that period is necessary.

(2) It is important to have knowledge of appropriate hairstyles, costumes, jewellery make-up of that era.

(3) Scholars of history are required who can work as art directors or as consultants to the art director.

(4) Experts in field of history can find many professional opportunities.

***(2) Bharuds composed by Saint Eknath are popular in Maharashtra.**

(March '19) (Board's Model Activity Sheet)

Ans. (1) Saint Eknath composed Bharuds with the purpose of educating people on various aspects of life.

64141372

(2) Bharuds composed by Saint Eknath had a wide range of subjects, dramatic quality, easy rhythm and humour.

(3) People liked the way it was performed.

(4) A message was given in a humorous way.

(3) Puppetry is an oldest form of entertainment.

Ans. (1) Puppet show was an important form of entertainment.

(2) The remains of clay dolls have been found in the excavations at the archaeological sites of Harappa, Egypt and Greece civilisations.

(3) Information on puppets is found in the texts like Mahabharata and in Panchatantra stories.

(4) The ancient text Mahabharat has a mention that puppetry was one of the 64 arts.

(4) Vishnudas Bhave is known as the Father of Marathi Theatre.

Ans. (1) The origins of the Marathi theatre can be traced to Dashavatara tradition. Lalit forms a backdrop of Marathi theatre.

(2) Seetaswayamvar, the first play, written and presented by Vishnudas Bhave was very successful.

6414132

(3) The movement of stage plays started by Vishnudas Bhave was followed in Maharashtra by historical, mythological and also light farcical stage plays.

(4) The farcical plays dealt with social issues in a humorous way.

Therefore, he is known as the Father of Marathi theatre.

(5) An expert in history is required in the field of Drama.

Ans. (1) In order to make the script at the historical play compatible with the dialogues of the actors, the script writers need assistance of experts in languages and the history of languages as well as experts in cultural history of a given period.

(2) In order to achieve accuracy of stage, backdrops on the stage deep knowledge of the history of arts and architecture of the concerned period is essential.

Q. 6 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

Note : *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

(1) Why is Maharashtra known as the land that nurtured the Indian film industry ?** ***(July '19)

Ans. (1) The contribution of Madanrao Madhavrao Pitale, the Patwardhan family of Kalyan and Harishchandra Sakharam Bhatvadekar are very important in the development of Indian movies.

(2) Dadasaheb Torane, A. P. Karandikar, S. N. Patankar, V. P. Divekar sought help from foreign technicians and made a movie entitled Pundalik. It was released in Mumbai in 1912.

(3) 'Raja Harischandra' was the first movie to be processed completely in India. It was released in Mumbai in 1913.

(4) The credit of making a full-length movie goes to Maharashtra.

Therefore Maharashtra is known as the land that nurtured the Indian film industry.

***(2) What is Powada?**

Ans. (1) Powada is a dramatic narration by alternatingly reciting poetry and prosaic extracts. Powada narrates great deeds of heroic men and women in a very forceful and inspiring style.

(2) The Powada composed by Adnyandas, a contemporary poet of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj which narrated the incident of Afzal Khan's death and battle of Simhgarh composed by Tulsidas are very famous.

(3) In the British period, Powadas narrating the stories of Umaji Naik, Chaphekar brothers and Mahatma Gandhi were composed.

(4) During the Samyukta Maharashtra Movement the Powadas were used as medium of creating public awareness.

Q. 7 Read the following passage and answer the questions : *(4 marks each)*

(1)

Textbook page 42

The 19th century saw ... ... history of Marathi Theatre

(1) Who presented the play 'Seetaswayamvar'? (1)

Ans. 'Seetaswayamvar' was the first play presented by Vishnudas Bhave.

(2) Who wrote the musical play 'Sharada'? (1)

Ans. Govind Ballal Deval wrote the musical play Sharada.

(3) How can plays bring about social awakening? (2)

Ans. (1) As theatre is an audio-visual medium, it creates a strong impact on the audience.

(2) They commented on evil customs, traditions, superstitions in our society. This started the reformation process.

(3) Sharada, a musical play, written by Govind Ballal Deval shed light on the evil custom of marrying young girls to aged men in a humorous style.

(4) 'Ekach Pyala' by Ram Ganesh Gadkari made the society aware about the evil effects of drinking.

(2)

Textbook page 40 *(March '20)*

Dashavatara Theatre : Dashavatara is a ... ... Dashavatara tradition.

(1) In which state Dashavatara is part of folk theatre'? (1)

Ans. Dashavatara is part of the folk theatre in Maharashtra.

(2) To whom does the narrator invoke at the beginning of the show'? (1)

Ans. The narrator invokes Lord Ganesha at the beginning of the show.

(3) Explain the form of Dashavatara folk theatre. *(Nov. '20)* **(2)**

Ans. (1) The stories presented in Dashavatara are based on the 10 incarnations of Lord Vishnu.

(2) The method of acting, make-up, costumes in Dashavatara shows is set by the tradition.

(3) The show is mostly musical but sometimes there may be a few spontaneous dialogues.

(4) The characters representing Gods use wooden masks. At the start of the show, the sutradhara invokes Lord Ganesha.

(5) The show ends by breaking dahihandi, followed by aarati, praising the God.

(6) This is part of folk theatre in Maharashtra. Dashavatara shows are presented in the regions of Konkan and Goa after the harvesting season is over.

Q. 8 Answer the following questions in detail : *(3 marks each)*

(1) Write about the art of Puppetry.

Ans. (1) The Kathputali is a traditional art of puppetry which has two styles. One that developed in Rajasthan and the other in South India.

(2) In ancient India, materials like wood, wool, leather, horns and ivory were used to make puppets.

(3) The role of the narrator known as Sutradhar is very crucial in stage show.

(4) The stage for this puppetry show is very small but the puppeteers use light and sound effects in an ingenious way.

(5) Shadow puppets, hand puppets, string puppets and wooden puppets are used in Kathputali shows.

(6) The artists who perform Kathputali shows are found in Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Rajasthan, Telangana, Karnataka and Kerala.

(2) Write about the development of Indian film industry.

Ans. (1) Cinema is a medium that brings together art and technology. With the advent of the technology of motion pictures the film industry came into being. It gave rise to the era of silent movies.

(2) The technology of sound recording paved the way for talkies. Dadasaheb Torane,

6414132

A. P. Karandikar, S. N. Patankar and V. P. Divekar made the movie Pundalik with help from foreign technicians. This was a great step in the development of the art.

(3) Dadasaheb Phalke made a full length movie, completely processed in India. He made silent movies and documentaries also.

(4) Baburao Painter's cousin, Anandrao Painter made the first cine-camera. Baburao Painter made many historical movies and a movie on realistic social issues. Bhalaji Pendharkar made movies invoking nationalist sentiments.

(5) Kamalabai Mangarulkar was the first woman producer, who made movies in Marathi as well as Hindi.

(6) Prabhat Film Company made many religious, historical, mythological and social movies. Production studios like Bombay Talkies, Rajkamal Productions, R. K. Studios, Navketan played significant role in development of the Indian film Industry. Period from 1961 to 1981 is the golden period of Indian film industry.

8414132

(3) Explain the nature of Keertan.

Ans. (1) Keertan involves oratory, singing, acting, dancing and story telling.

(2) Naradmuni is assumed to be the founder of Keertan tradition.

(3) It is pure glorification of God. It is also a medium to educate the masses about good values of life and very purpose of human life.

(4) There are two parts in Naraadiya keertan Poorvarang and Uttarrang. Poorvarang comprises of Naman, Nirupanacha Abhang and Nirupan; Uttarrang comprises of narration of a story to illustrate the main theme. Keertan has two traditions in Maharashtra – Naraadiya and Varakari.

(5) During the independence movement, a new type of Keertan was developed known as Rashtriya Keertan. It is performed in the same way as Naradiya Keertan.

(6) It placed more importance on creating awareness by narrating the life stories of great leaders of the Indian independence movement, scientists, social reforms, etc.

(4) Complete the following chart :

Sr. No.	Point	Bhajan *(Board's Model Activity Sheet)*	Keertan	Lalit	Bharud
1.	Characteristics				
2.	Examples				

Ans.

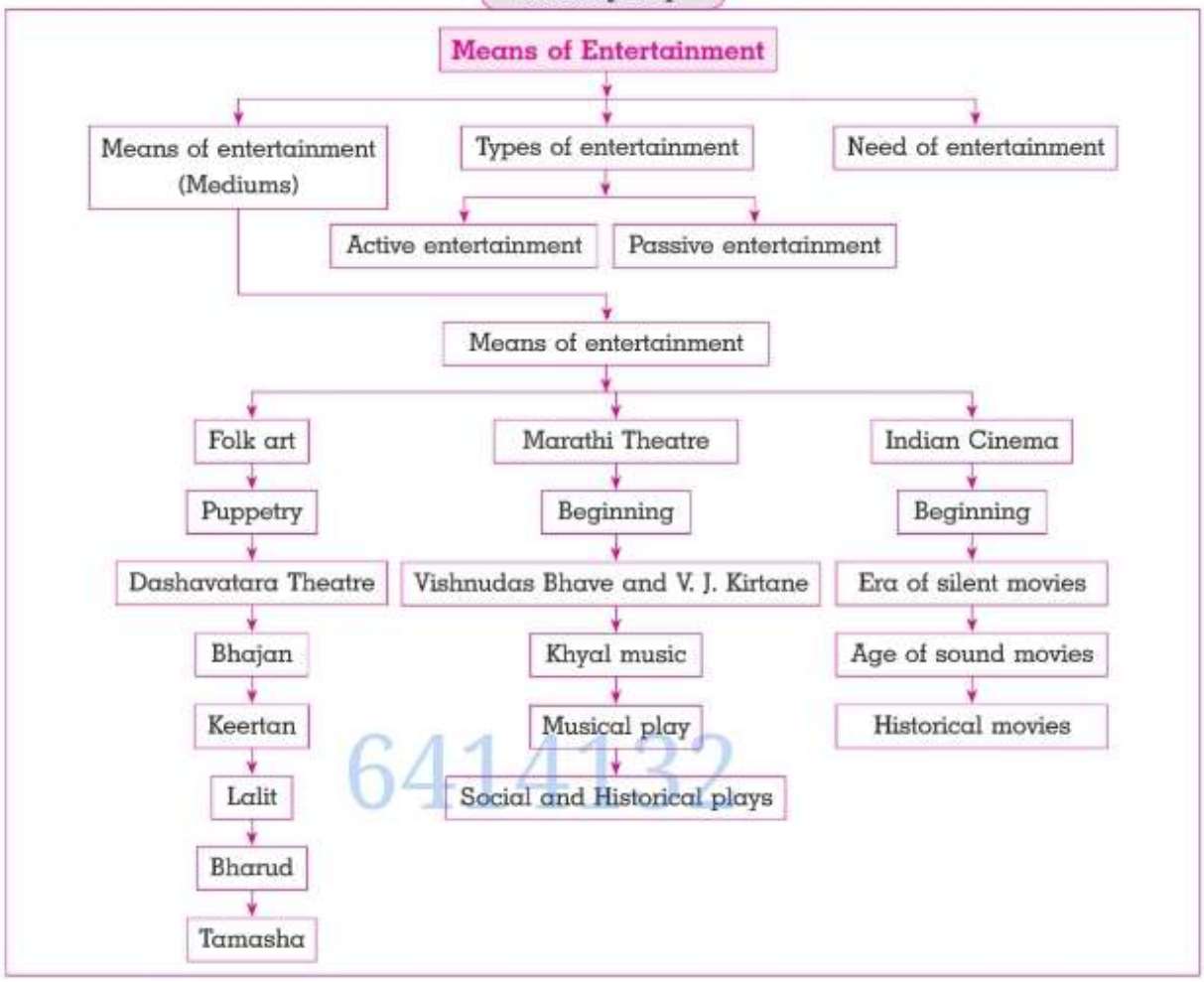
Sr. No.	Point	Bhajan	Keertan	Lalit	Bharud
1.	Characteristics	Singing songs in praise of God and chanting his name accompanied by Taal (Cymbals), Pakhvaj and Mridangam	(1) Naman and Nirupanacha Abhang and Nirupan comprise the Poorvarang (2) Narration of a story to illustrate main theme is Uttarrang	(1) Deity is invoked during festival to fulfill desire. (2) It is performed in a theatrical style. Stories of Krishna, Rama and great devotees are presented during performances.	It is metaphorical song with spiritual and ethical teachings.
2.	Examples	Bhajans of Saint Tulsidas, Saint Tukadoji Maharaj and Saint Namdev	Naraadiya Keertan and Mahatma Phule's Keertan	Popular in Konkan and Goa	Bharuds of Saints Eknath, Namdev and Dnyaneshwar.

64144132

Project

(1) Get the complete lyrics of Saint Eknath's 'Vinchu Chawala' and enact it in the cultural programme of your school.
(2) Prepare a chart on Active and Passive Entertainment mediums which are related to history.
(3) Gather information on dramas based on Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj, Chhatrapati Sambhaji Maharaj, Lokmanya Tilak, Mahatma Gandhi and Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar.
(4) Write information on documentaries made by 'Films Division'.
(5) Search on the internet and prepare a concept map on historical movies not mentioned in the textbook.
(6) Find out the names of historical Marathi movies made during the period between 1970-2015.

Memory Map



6414132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

7 SPORTS AND HISTORY

IMPORTANT POINTS

7.0 Sports :

(1) An activity which combines physical exercise and entertainment is a sport.

(2) It is a natural instinct in human beings to play.

(3) Hunting was a way of obtaining food for the ancient people as well as considered a game and entertainment.

(4) Horse and chariot races, chess, wrestling, games of dice (dyut) are the games which find a place in ancient Indian literary texts and epics.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 46)

Famous training centres for sports in India

- Vadodara – Vyayamshala of famous wrestlers Jummadada and Manikrao
- Patiala – Kreeda Vidyapeeth
- Gandhinagar – Svarnim Gujarat Sports
- Kolhapur – Khasbag Talim and Motibag Talim
- Amravati – Hanuman Vyayam Prasarak Mandal
- Pune – Shri Shiv Chhatrapati Kreeda Sankul

Do You Know? (Textbook page 46)

Olympic Games :

(1) The Olympic games were held every four years in the ancient city of Olympia.

(2) Events such as foot race, running race, wrestling, chariot race (four horses or two horses), long jump, discus throw, javelin throw, etc. were held.

(3) Five intertwined rings is the symbol of modern games. It represents the five continents of the world and gives the message of cooperation, friendship, peace and nature of a conqueror.

(4) Olympic games are a gift given by the ancient state to the world.

7.1 Importance of Sports :

(1) It helps us to overcome pains, worries and suffering.

(2) We can feel ourselves relaxed and refreshed by playing games.

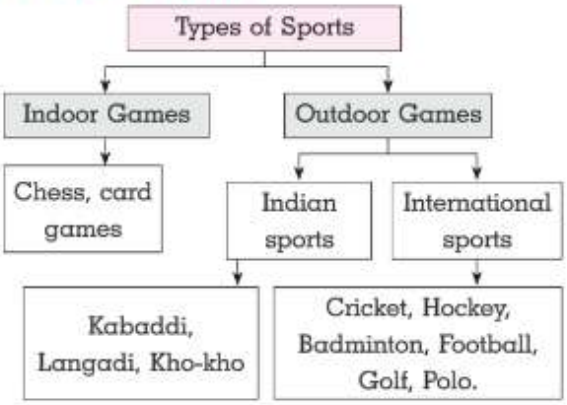
(3) Games which involve a lot of physical activity not only provide good exercise but also help in building a strong body.

(4) One can develop courage, determination and sportsmanship by participating in games.

(5) A sense of cooperation and team spirit develops when we engage in games which require collective participation.

(6) Games help us to develop leadership quality.

7.2 Types of Sports :



(A) Indoor games :

(1) These games are played within a closed environment, sitting at one place.

(2) Some of the indoor games are : Kachkavadya or Chaukabara, i.e. Indian ludo, Sagargote, Bhatukali, etc.

(B) Outdoor games :

(1) **Athletics :** 100 metre, 200 metre, Marathon, obstacle race.

(2) **Based on physical skills :** Shot put, discus throw, long jump, high jump.

(3) **Water sports :** Water Polo, swimming competitions, rowing

(4) **Acrobatic games :** Mallakhamb, rope mallakhamb and gymnastics.

(5) **Adventure sports :** Ice hockey, skiing, etc.

(6) **Games involving thrill :** Gliding, rock-climbing, paragliding, auto racing – cars and motorbike.

(C) Sports Competitions :

(1) The national game of India is hockey. Cricket is very popular in India.

(2) Sports competitions are held at local, taluka, state, national and international levels.

(3) World Championships are organised for Hockey, Chess, Wrestling, Cricket and Football on a grand scale.

(4) International competitions like Olympics, Asiad, Paralympics, Cricket World Cup, etc. are held.

Do You Know? (Textbook pages 47-48)

(1) Vishnubhat Godse mentioned in his travelogue *Maza Pravas* that Her Highness Queen of Jhansi, Lakshmibai was very fond of physical exercise.

(2) In the opinion of Manisha Bathe the different tactics used in *Mallakhamb* were devised and developed by Balambhat Deodhar who was the physical trainer of Peshwa Bajirao II. She noted that he got inspiration from monkeys as they leaped and played on trees with great agility.

(3) Khashaba Jadhav and Maruti Mane were famous wrestlers; Sachin Tendulkar has been awarded the Bharat Ratna, the highest civilian award by the Indian Government.

Major Dhyan Chand :

(Do you know? : Textbook page 49)

(1) Major Dhyan Chand was part of hockey teams as a player in 1928 and 1932 which won gold medals at the Olympics.

(2) He was also captain of the Indian Hockey team which won a Gold Medal at the Berlin Olympics in 1936.

(2) He made great contribution in securing gold medals in all the three Olympics.

(3) He shot more than 400 goals in his entire career which included national and international matches.

(4) Popularly known as the 'Wizard of Hockey', Dhyan Chand's birth date 29th August is celebrated as the National Sports Day in India.

(5) He was honoured with 'Padma Bhushan' in 1956.

7.3 Globalisation of Sports :

(1) International matches of different sports like cricket, football, lawn tennis can be watched in any corner of the world because of live telecast on television.

(2) Citizens of the non-participant countries watch and enjoy these matches too.

(3) The process of globalisation has greatly influenced the field of sports in the 20th-21st century and fans have changed the entire structure of sports economy forever.

(5) Fans watch the matches for entertainment, aspiring players to learn more, commercial companies look at it as an opportunity to advertise and sell their products and retired sportsmen too have an opportunity to be commentators.

7.4 Games, Materials and Toys :

(1) Equipment which are meant for entertainment and education of children are called toys.

(2) Clay toys were discovered in archaeological excavations. These toys were made either by hand or using moulds.

(3) Ancient Indian literature has a mention about dolls.

6414132

(4) Shudraka wrote a play in Sanskrit named *Mrichchhakatika* which means a clay cart.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 49)

(1) A description of games and toys is found in *Kathasaritsagara*.
(2) There is a mention of flying dolls, singing dolls and dolls making sounds on pressing a key.
(3) The tradition of making wooden dolls existed in India since ancient times.
(4) Maharashtra has a tradition of making wooden dolls known as *Thaki*.

7.5 Toys and History :

(1) Toys give us an idea about the development of history and technology.
(2) Toys mirror religious and cultural traditions.
(3) We get to know about the history of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj from the model forts and clay images placed on it during traditional Diwali celebrations in Maharashtra.
(4) An ivory doll was found in the excavation at Pompeii, an ancient city in Italy. Due to this, the Indo-Roman trade relations and cultural contacts which is dated to 1st century C.E. came into light.

7.6 Sports, Literature and Movies on sports :

(1) Sports and Literature :

(1) Sports related literature is a new branch of knowledge.
(2) Many books and encyclopaedias are published related to sports.
(3) Recently, the history of Mallakhamb was published.
(4) Sports magazines like Shatkar were published in English and Marathi.
(5) Articles on sports are often published in newspapers.

(2) Sports and Movies :

(1) Movies are made in English and all regional languages on Sports. For example, Dangal, Mary Kom, Chak De India, etc.
(2) Movies are made on life of Mary Kom (Mary Kom), the first female boxer of India; female wrestlers the Phogat sisters (Dangal); Runner Milkha Singh and cricketers like Sachin Tendulkar and M. S. Dhoni.

(3) Sports Movies and History :

(1) While making a movie on any sport it is essential to have knowledge of that sport.
(2) A study of dressing style, language and social life of that particular period is essential.
(3) To write articles in newspapers, encyclopaedia and sports magazines knowledge of history is required.

7.7 Sports and Professional opportunities :

(1) Professions related to sports :

(1) Writers and critics are required to write about sports and international sports tournaments.
(2) Expert commentators.
(3) Sports journalists, newsreaders and sports experts to give news on various television and radio channels.
(4) Umpires, referees, ground staff and their assistants.
(5) Computer analysts who create statistical data of the live match and their assistants who give it to commentators.
(6) Skilled craftsmen and industries making sports equipment.

(2) Commentators and History :

(1) A mere description of the live match is not enough for commentators.
(2) They should have good knowledge of the history of the game, statistics, illustrious records (who made or who broke), eminent players, historical anecdotes related to the particular game.

(3) Sports and Field of Education :

(1) Sports have importance from school level.
(2) Students can participate in school, inter-school and national level competitions.

6414132

(3) Scholarships offered to sportspersons by the government.
(4) Seats are reserved for sportspersons in government and private enterprises.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 51)

(1) Bal J. Pandit was a well-known and famous commentator of cricket matches on Akashvani.
(2) Along with narration of the game he used to describe career history of the players and the history of the playground.
(3) He narrated anecdotes and records made earlier.
(4) His commentaries were entertaining and hence people used to listen with great interest.
(5) He was well versed in the history of cricket and he used that to make his commentary entertaining and informative.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing the correct option : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) The ancient event of Olympic competitions used to be held at ..... ***(March '19)***
(a) Greece *(b) Rome*
(c) India *(4) China*

*(2) The wooden dolls made in Maharashtra are known as .....
(a) Thaki *(b) Kalichandika*
(c) Gangavati *(d) Champavati*

(3) The activity which combines physical exercise and entertainment is .....
(a) Show *(b) Attitude*
(c) Sports *(d) Competition*

(4) ..... was looked upon as a game and entertainment by ancient people.
(a) Dancing *(b) Playing*
(c) Singing *(d) Hunting*

(5) ..... and its various tactics were devised by Balambhat Deodhar, the physical trainer of Peshwa Bajirao II.
(a) Kabaddi *(b) Atyapatya*
(c) Khokho *(d) Mallakhamb*

Ans. (1) Greece (2) Thaki (3) Sports (4) Hunting (5) Mallakhamb.

[2]

(1) The Indian Government has honoured Sachin Tendulkar with ..... for his illustrious achievements in the field of cricket.
(a) Padma Shri *(b) Khel Ratna*
(c) Arjuna Award *(4) Bharat Ratna*

(2) ..... is the national game of India.
(a) Hockey *(b) Cricket*
(c) Football *(d) Kabaddi*

(3) The National Sports Day of India is celebrated on 29th August which is the birth date of .....
(a) Khashaba Jadhav
(b) Sachin Tendulkar
(c) Major Dhyan Chand
(d) Bal J. Pandit

(4) Vishnubhat Godse in his book Maza Pravas wrote that sports and physical activity had great importance in the daily schedule of .....
(a) Tatya Tope
(b) Queen of Jhansi Lakshmibai
(c) Bahadur Shah Jaffar
(d) Nanasaheb Peshwa

(5) Maruti Mane is known for .....
(a) Hockey *(b) Kabaddi*
(c) Marathon *(d) Wrestling*

Ans. (1) Bharat Ratna (2) Hockey (3) Major Dhyan Chand (4) Queen of Jhansi Lakshmibai (5) Wrestling.

[3]

(1) ..... wrote the play Mrichchhakatika which means a clay cart.
(a) Harshvardhan *(b) Shudraka*
(c) Bhavbhuti *(4) Kalidas*

6414132

(2) The findings in the excavations of ....., an ancient city in Italy includes an ivory doll made by Indian craftsmen.
(a) Rome (b) Athens (c) Sparta (d) Pompeii

(3) An interesting description of games and toys is found in .....
(a) Shakuntal (b) Panchatantra
(c) Mrichchhakatika (d) Kathasaritsagara

(4) Major Dhyan Chand was honoured in 1956 with ..... for his marvellous achievements in hockey.
(a) Padma Shri (b) Padma Bhushan
(c) Padma Vibhushan (d) Bharat Ratna

(5) ..... was the first Indian female boxer to win a bronze medal in the Olympics.
(a) P. V. Sindhu (b) Mary Kom
(c) Geeta Phoghat (d) Saina Nehwal

Ans. (1) Shudraka (2) Pompeii (3) Kathasaritsagara (4) Padma Bhushan (5) Mary Kom.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : *(1 mark each)*

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

6414137

[1]

(1) Mallakhamb	Outdoor game based on physical skills
(2) Water Polo	Water sport
(3) Skating	Adventure ice sports
(4) Chess	Outdoor game

Ans. Wrong pair : Chess – Outdoor game

[2]

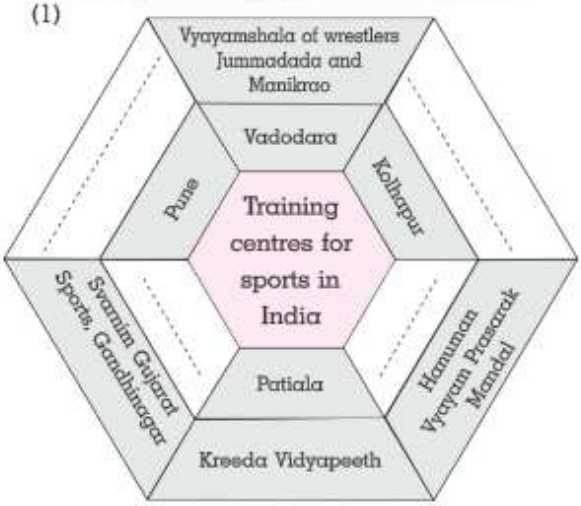
(1) Mallakhamb trainer	Balambhat Deodhar
(2) Wizard of Hockey	Milkha Singh
(3) First Indian female boxer	Mary Kom
(4) First Indian female wrestlers	Phogat sisters

Ans. Wrong pair : Wizard of Hockey – Milkha Singh

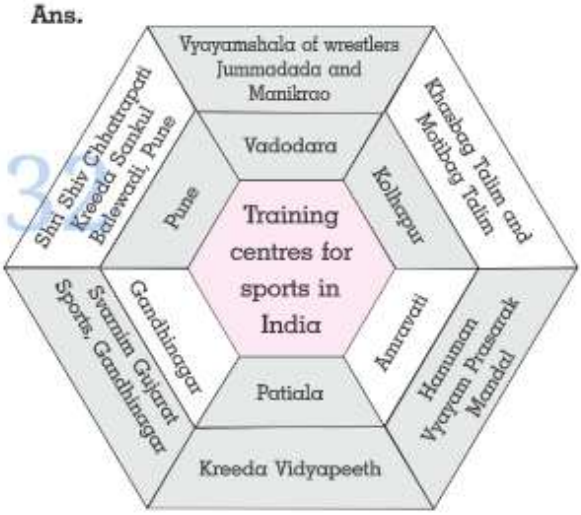
Q. 3 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

(A) Complete the graphical description :

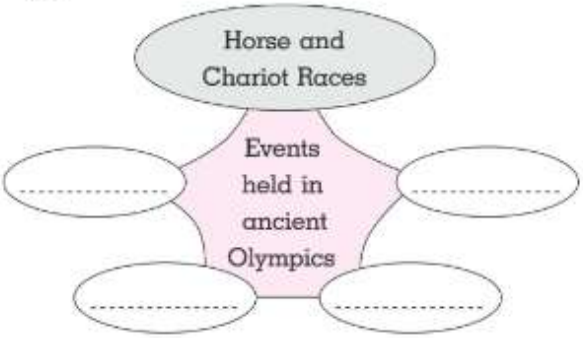
(1)



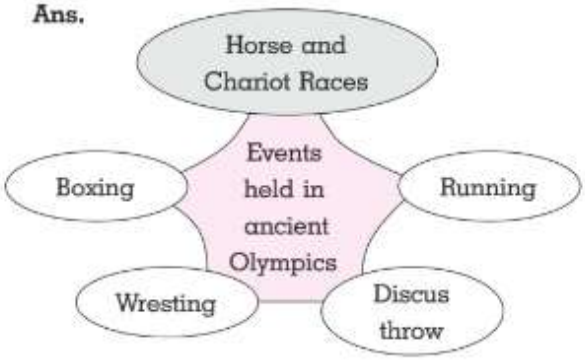
Ans.



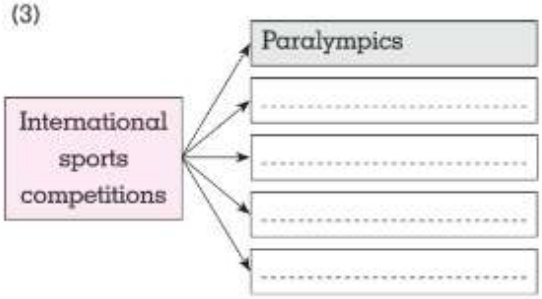
(2)



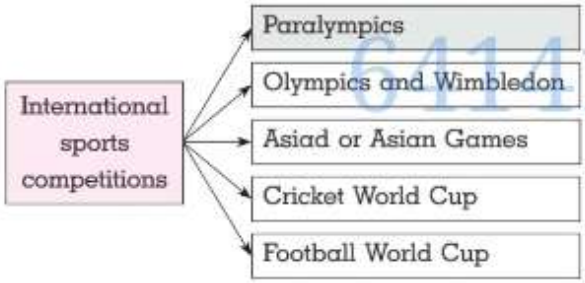
Ans.



(3)



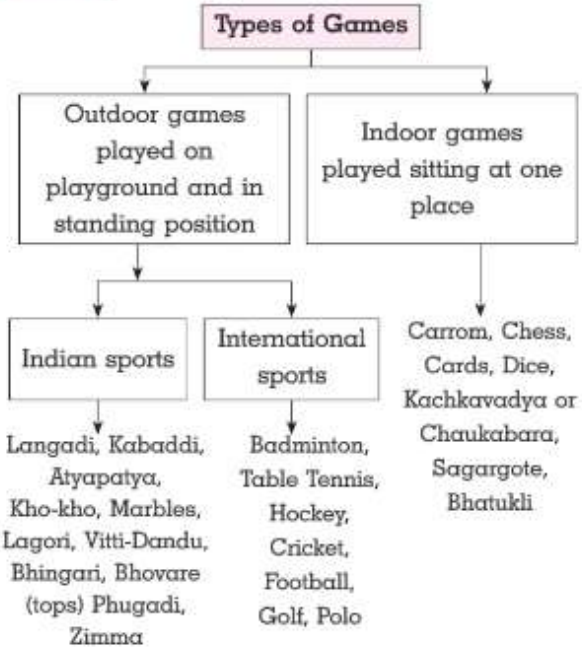
Ans.



(4)

Ans.

(B) Prepare a Tree-Diagram on types of games : *(March '20; Nov. '20)*



Q. 4 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Toys and Festivals : *(March '19)

Ans. (1) Toys and festivals are inter-related since ancient times.

(2) Toys are used for decoration in different cultures and religions during festivals. In some cultures toys are distributed as gifts. Santa Claus gifts children toys during Christmas.

(3) As part of Diwali celebration in Maharashtra, model forts are made displaying images of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj, his soldiers and animals which are toys.

(4) Clay images of snakes and bullocks are sold during festivals like Bail pola and Nagpanchami.

(2) Sports and Movies : *(Nov. '20)

Ans. (1) The presence of sports was limited to a scene in the movies made earlier.

(2) In recent times, biographical movies are made on sportspersons and on sports. Movies like Lagaan and Dangal are made related to cricket and wrestling respectively.

(3) Biographical movies are made on Mary Kom, and the Phogat sisters.

(4) Movies are made on careers of famous sprinter Milkha Singh, Bharat Ratna Sachin Tendulkar and Cricketer Mahendra Singh Dhoni. Overall, movies and sports are related from the silent era till date.

(3) Indigenous Games :

Ans. (1) The games which have their origin in India and are an important part of Indian culture are indigenous games.

(2) They are of two types – 'Indoor Games' and 'Outdoor Games'. Indoor Games are played within a closed environment and a number of them are played by sitting at one place. Chess, card games, dice, carrom, etc. are indigenous indoor games.

(3) An open space or preferably a playground is required to play outdoor games. Kabaddi, Atyapatya, Kho-kho, etc. are indigenous outdoor games.

(4) The special feature of indigenous games is that they do not require high cost material and hence are less expensive. Phugadi, Zimma, Bhatukali are some of the indigenous games played by girls.

In modern times, all national and international games are played by both girls and boys.

Q. 5 Explain the following statements with reasons : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Currently the structure of sports economy has significantly changed.** ***(July '19)

Ans. (1) The process of globalisation has influenced the field of sports in the 20th-21st century.

(2) International matches of various sports like Cricket, Football, etc. are telecast in every corner of the world.

(3) Fans watch these matches for entertainment, and aspiring players to learn more. The citizens of the non-participating countries also watch these matches.

(4) Retired players get a chance on television channels as commentators. Matches garner a large audience, hence the commercial companies look at it as an opportunity to advertise and sell their products.

All these factors have led to change in the structure of sports economy.

***(2) Toys can tell us about cultural history.**

Ans. A tradition of making different type of toys for entertainment is going on since ancient time.

(1) Toys give us an idea about the cultural and religious development of that period.

(2) Clay models of forts and clay images of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj, his soldiers, people and animals are made during Diwali festival in Maharashtra. They are placed on fort and gives us an idea about the structures of forts during that period.

(3) An ivory doll found at Pompeii, an ancient city in Italy, sheds light on Indo-Roman trade and cultural relations.

(4) The mention of games, toys and flying and dancing dolls in Kathasaritsagara give us an idea about cultural history of toys.

In this way, we come to know about cultural history from toys.

6444132

(3) Major Dhyan Chand is called the Wizard of Hockey.

Ans. (1) Major Dhyan Chand was part of hockey teams as a player in 1928 and 1932 which won gold medal at Olympics.

(2) He was also captain of the Indian Hockey team which won a Gold Medal at the Berlin Olympics in 1936.

(3) He shot 25 goals against America and Japan in the 1932 Olympics.

(4) He shot more than 400 goals in his entire career which include national and international matches.

Owing to his brilliant achievement he is called the 'Wizard of Hockey'.

(4) Globalisation has influenced sports.

Ans. (1) No sport is limited to any one country. Television and other media channels telecast matches widening the reach of sports in all corners of the world.

(2) International competitions like Olympics, Asiad, Paralympics, Cricket World Cup can be

watched by people irrespective of being in any part of the world.

(3) World Cup matches of cricket, hockey and football are held.

(4) No country has a monopoly on any sport which means that globalisation has influenced sports.

(5) A commentator should know the history of the game.

Ans. (1) The mere description of a live match is not enough for commentators.

(2) A commentator should have good knowledge of the history of the game, previous records (who made or who broke) and eminent players in the past and present as well as events related to different competitions.

(3) Along with the history and information of the playground, commentator should narrate records made by the players in different matches.

(4) It will make his commentary interesting. Therefore, it is essential for the commentator to know the history of the game.

(6) Sports have great importance in the education field.

6414132

Ans. (1) Sports are an integral part of education. The making of a player begins at school level.

(2) Many types of sports events are held at the international level. To make the players competent they are given opportunity to play at district, state and national level.

(3) They are promoted and sponsored by the government and private sectors. Talented and ranking players get State scholarship or National scholarship.

(4) Seats are reserved for them in colleges and Universities. It has been observed that the foundation of successful players is laid in school life.

(7) Bal J. Pandit's commentary was entertaining. ***OR***

What made the commentary of Bal J. Pandit entertaining ? ***(March '19)***

Ans. (1) Bal J. Pandit not only described the game but also gave information about the history of the playground.

(2) He gave information on players and history of their career.

(3) He would narrate anecdotes about the game and records made by players in respective game.

(4) He had good knowledge of the game and its history. He was eloquent too in his narration.

So, his narration made the cricket commentary entertaining.

(8) What do we need to know while making movies on sports?

Ans. While making a movie on sports the makers should have complete information of the sport as well as its history.

(1) Nowadays special research teams are appointed by production houses which do thorough research on the subject of the movie.

(2) In order to gather information on the sportsperson or the sport it is essential to study books, articles, columns written by eminent sports writers.

(3) If the movie is on a sportsperson, all interviews published in national and international magazines and newspapers should be read.

(4) Factors such as period, type of equipment used, sports wear, dressing style, social life needs to be studied.

(5) General understanding of the people about the game, practises and famous sportspersons is required.

Q. 6 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

Note : *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

Explain the importance of sports. ***(March '20)***

Ans. Sports has gained great importance for the following reasons :

(1) Sports helps us to overcome our pains, worries and sufferings. We feel relaxed and refreshed by playing games.

(2) Games which involve a lot of physical activity not only provide good exercise but also help in building a tenacious and strong body.

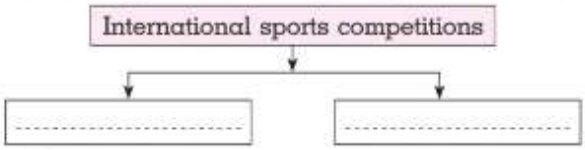
(3) One can develop courage, determination and sportsmanship playing games. A sense of cooperation and teamspirit develops when we participate in games which require collective participation.

(4) Team games also help in developing a leadership quality.

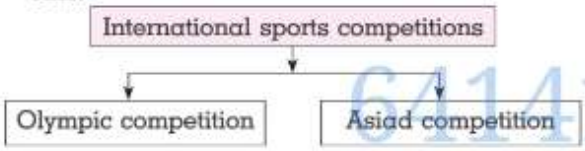
Q. 7 Read the following passage and answer the following questions : *(4 marks)*

Do you know? (Textbook page 50)
Although sports and ... ... and private establishments.

(1) Complete the Concept Map : (1)



Ans.



(2) How are the experts in history helpful regarding international sports competition? (1)

Ans. Experts in history are helpful to write and critically analyse the game.

***(3) How are professional opportunities available in field of sports?** (2)

Ans. There are many professional opportunities available in the field of sports.

(1) Writers are in demand who can write on sports and critics to write reviews are in demand.

(2) Commentators are in demand on Television, radio and various other private channels. Experts and assistants are needed to provide information regularly.

(3) Coaches train the players, playground staff to maintain the field, umpires, etc.

(4) Cameramen, computer experts and team of assistants to have uninterrupted transmission. Trained and qualified referees are required to work at district, national and international levels.

Overall, a great number of job opportunities are available in the field of sports.

Q. 8 Write detailed answer to the following : *(3 marks each)*

***(1) Write about the history of sports equipment and toys in ancient India.**

Ans. (1) The history of sports equipment and toys dates back to epic age. The ancient Indian literature and epics mention various games such as games of dice, wrestling, horse and chariot race.

(2) Sports are of two types 'Indoor Games' and 'Outdoor Games'. Indoor games such as chess, card games, dice, carrom, kachkavadya or Indian ludo, Bhatukali were very popular. It can be noted that all of them required equipment to play.

(3) Cards to play card games, dice to play game of dice, a board and pieces to play chess, bunch of seeds or stones to play sagargote; (playing house) to play Bhatukali.

(4) Likewise, Outdoor games like marbles, lagori (seven stones), vitti-dandu, bhavare (tops) all require material like marbles, stones, tops, a small and large stick to play.

(5) A Sanskrit play by Shudraka is named as Mrichchhakatika. It means a clay cart. A clay cart was a toy used to play during Harappan period.

(6) Kathasaritsagara has very interesting descriptions of games and toys. There are descriptions of flying dolls. There is a mention that on pressing a key some dolls used to fly, some used to dance and some used to make sounds.

***(2) Explain the close ties between sports and history.**

Ans. Sports and history are closely related with each other.

(1) It is a must for a sports writer to know the history of the game he chooses to write on.

(2) In order to write a review on any sport competition, the critic should have knowledge of competitions held in the past.

(3) A comparative study of the skills, techniques and strategies used in the past and developments or improvements in the present makes the review comprehensive.

6414132

(4) The writer has to resort to history while writing columns or articles on sports events like Olympics or Asiad or any national or international matches.

(5) While commentating on Akashvani and Doordarshan, an expert commentator needs to have good knowledge of the history of the game, previous records of illustrious and eminent players, statistical analysis and historical anecdotes related to the game and players.

(6) Coaches, special experts, selection committee should have information of the players, their strength and weakness and also history of the players in the opposing team. Even players should know history of their competitors.

In short, it is essential to know the history of all the aspects related to sports.

(3) Explain the difference between Indoor and Outdoor Games.** ***(July '19)

Ans.

Indoor games	Outdoor games
1. Most of the indoor games are played by sitting at one place. They are played in a closed environment.	1. Outdoor games are played on a field.
2. Indoor games require skills but physical exercise is negligible.	2. Outdoor games need more physical exercise and skill.
3. As there is no exertion in indoor games, so it is not essential to develop stamina.	3. Outdoor games require stamina and strength.
4. Indoor games do not involve adventure.	4. Outdoor games involve adventures at times. e.g., Autoracing
5. Indoor games includes international games like Chess, and household games like Indian Ludo (Playing house), Bhatukali and many more.	5. Outdoor games involve national and international games like Kabaddi, Kho-kho, Hockey, Cricket, etc.
6. With the exception of chess and carrom no competitions are held for rest of the indoor games.	6. National and international competitions are held of almost all outdoor games.

6414132

(4) Write about the history of sports literature and toys in ancient India.

Ans. A new enterprise is developing in publishing related to sports in India. There is extensive written work on various sports.

(1) Many books related to sports and biographies are published. Encylopaedias are being written on sports.

(2) An independent encyclopaedia is written on exercise. The History of Mallakhamb is recently published. Sports magazines are published fortnightly and monthly. Many newspapers have allotted a separate section or last pages for news related to sports.

(3) 'Shatkar' was a sports magazine published some years ago.

There is ample of literature available on sports.

(5) Trace the development of toys and their importance.

Ans. (1) Toys and games have been essentially part of entertainment from ancient times. Every developing society has made toys for the entertainment and education of their children.

(2) Toys were found at archaeological sites at various places. The toys were made of clay, baked clay, terracotta and ivory.

(3) Either a mould was used to make the toy or it was fashioned by hand.

(4) Toys and the material used to make them were indicators of the development and advancement of civilisations.

(5) An interesting description of flying dolls is found in Kathasaritsagara. The dolls used to fly, made some sound and some danced when a key was pressed.

(6) Toys give us information about the period it was made, how they were made, religious and cultural practices and technical know-how of the people.

(6) Observe the picture and write information related to the event. ***(3 makrs)***

Ans. (1) This picture is the logo of the modern Olympic Games. The five interlocked rings represent the five continents of the world.

(2) The rings coloured blue, yellow, black, green and red on a white field are known as the 'Olympic rings'. The symbol was originally designed in 1912 by Pierre de Coubertin.

(3) Olympic rings are the symbol of games which were first played in the ancient city of Olympia. They were held after every four years.

(4) The ancient Olympics had fewer events than the modern games and only Greek men were allowed to participate. Events such as Horse and Chariot race, Footrace, Wrestling, Boxing, Discus Throw, Pentathlon were held.

(5) The Greeks standardised rules of the sports were laid which was helpful to organise the games systematically.

(6) The modern Olympic games are also held every four years. It is a great honour for sportspersons to participate and win the Olympic medals.

Project

(1) Collect information about your favourite player.

(2) Discuss the hardships faced by sportspersons while training for the sport with the help of information gathered through movies and literature.

6414132

Memory Map

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

8 TOURISM AND HISTORY

IMPORTANT POINTS

8.1 Tourism in the Past :

(1) **Tourism :** Visiting places in distant regions for a specific purpose is known as Tourism.

(2) **Tradition :**

(1) Travelling is an old tradition in India.

(2) To go for local fairs, festivals, pilgrimages was common in olden days.

(3) People travel long distances for good education and trade.

(4) To look for new regions, trade and to propagate religion were some of the reasons for which people travelled far and wide.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 52)

Sr. No	European Travellers	Travelling Period	Country	Information
1.	Benjamin of Tudela	1159-1173 C.E.	Spain	(1) The first European traveller/discoverer. (2) He visited many countries in Europe, Africa and Asia. (3) He wrote about his experience in his diaries which are considered an important document of history.
2.	Marco Polo	13th Century	Italy	(1) Asia, especially China, became known to Europe because of him. (2) He wrote about the rich flora and fauna, social life, information on trade systems in Asia.
3.	Ibn Battuta	14th Century		(1) He travelled for 30 years and made a resolution never to take the same route twice. (2) His travel accounts took people on a virtual travel of the Islamic world. (3) His accounts helped researchers to understand medieval history and social life.
4.	Gerardus Mercator	16th Century	The Netherlands (Belgium)	(1) He was a cartographer who made a world map and the globe of the earth. (2) His maps proved to be useful and gave momentum to navigation.

6414132

Do You Know? (Textbook page 52)

Religious Tourism :

(1) It is mentioned in the Buddhists texts that Gautam Buddha and Buddhist monks travelled to preach Buddhism and give discourses on Dhama.

(2) Even the Jain monks and sadhus travelled constantly all over India.

(3) The Chinese monk Yuan Shwang visited India in 630 C.E.

(4) Saint Eknath, Saint Namdev, Guru Nanak, Ramdas Swami travelled extensively all over India during the medieval period.

(3) Thomas Cook :

(1) In the latter half of 19th century, Thomas Cook organised a trip for 600 people from Leicester to Loughborough by railway.

(2) He successfully circumnavigated entire Europe.

(3) Later, he opened a travel agency and sold tourists tickets.

(4) His ventures opened the doors for the development of modern tourism.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 53)

Maza Pravas : Vishnubhat Godse

(1) Vishnubhat Godse in his travelogue wrote about his journey to Ayodhya and back to Maharashtra.

(2) He was an eye witness to the Indian War of Independence in 1857.

(3) He wrote extensively on the various incident of that period and on the life of the Queen of Jhansi Lakshmibai.

(4) His writings give us an idea about the nature of Marathi language in the 18th century.

(5) *Maza Pravas* is considered an important source of history.

8.2 Types of Tourism :

(1)

Types of Tourism

(1) Local Tourism
(2) Interstate Tourism
(3) International Tourism
(4) Geographic Tourism

(1) Religious Tourism
(2) Historical Tourism
(3) Geographic Tourism
(4) Cultural Tourism
(5) Educational Tourism
(6) Health Tourism
(7) Scientific Tourism
(8) Agro-Tourism
(9) Sports Tourism
(10) Eco-Tourism

6414132

(2) Difference in local, national and international tourism :

Local/ Interstate Tourism	International
1. Travelling is easy.	1. It is not easy to travel.
2. No hassles because of paper work.	2. It is essential to keep documents with us.
3. No need for Visa.	3. Visa is required to travel to a foreign country.
4. No need for currency exchange.	4. Currency exchange is required.
5. We can make changes in the itinerary to suit our convenience.	5. Fixed itinerary has to be followed, we cannot make any change in it.
6. Language mostly is not an obstacle.	6. Language can be an obstacle.
7. We can stay as long as we want.	7. Our stay in a foreign land is limited.

(3) Information on types of Tourism :

Sr. No.	Tourism	Information
1.	Historical Tourism	(1) Tours are arranged to satisfy the interest of the people. (2) Tours are arranged to see forts, battlefields, ancient monuments. (3) Historical tourism is not unknown. The mention of hiking tours to forts by Gopal Neelkanth Dandekar gives testimonal to this fact. He arranged tours to forts linked to Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj. (4) Visit to forts in Rajasthan, ashram of Mahatma Gandhi, Vinoba Bhave and places related to Indian War of Independence of 1857, etc. also served the same purpose.

2.	Geographic Tourism	(1) People are naturally attracted to see the beaches, mountain ranges, valleys, snowcapped peaks, animal sanctuaries where tours are regularly arranged. (2) Tourists go to see with interest like Valley of Flowers in Uttarakhand, Crater Lake at Lonar, Ranjankhalage at Nighoj in Maharashtra.
3.	Health Tourism	(1) Affordable and qualitative health services are available in India which attracts many foreigners. (2) Being a tropical country ample sunlight is available in India which is a major attraction to tourists from cold climatic regions. (3) Ayurveda therapies and yoga training have roots in India.
4.	Agro-Tourism	(1) Visit to agricultural centres, agricultural universities comes under agro-tourism. (2) A visit to countries like Israel to study the novel experiments and technological advancements is also known as Agro-tourism.
5.	Sports tourism	(1) It is a new type of tourism which developed in the 20th century. (2) Wimbledon, World Chess Championship, Olympics, Cricket World Cup and such other international tournaments are held in different countries. (3) Travelling to attend events like Himalayan car rally, Wrestling competitions, comes under Sports tourism.
6.	Cultural tourism	(1) Travelling to different parts of India to understand culture, history and traditions is considered as cultural tourism. (2) Visits to reputed educational institutions and historical memorials are part of it. (3) Visiting music, dance and different film festivals to study and get a glimpse of local culture is known as cultural tourism.
7.	Tourism based on special events	(1) Many religious and literary conferences are held in the world. (2) International seminars, book exhibitions and conferences are held. Film festivals are arranged. Such events promote tourism and travelling for these reasons is known as tourism based on special events.

6414132

8.3 Development of Tourism :

(1) Facilities for tourists :

(1) Safe and secured transport facilities.
(2) Ensure safety of the tourists.
(3) Availability of good accommodation and hotel arrangements.
(4) Good washrooms on the travel routes and at tourists sites.
(5) Special attention towards the needs of the specially-challenged people.

(2) Precautions to preserve the rich historical heritage sites :

(1) To avoid defacing or vandalising the monuments.
(2) Refraining from writing names on walls or carving on trees.
(3) Avoid painting ancient monuments in garish colours and making the precincts filthy.
(4) Heritage sites should have basic facilities in its precincts or around. It should be filth free.

(3) Factors required to boost tourism :

(1) Information on the tourist sites should be written in English and the local language.
(2) Pamphlets, guides, maps and history books should be made available to the tourists.
(3) A guide should be qualified in travel and tourism course, a proficient speaker, having good knowledge of the site. Bilingual guides should be available if required.

8.4 Preservation and Conservation of Heritage :

(1) Our heritage :

(1) India is bestowed with Cultural (man-made) and Natural Heritage.

(2) We have to preserve the ancient, medieval and modern heritage of the country.
(3) The Taj Mahal at Agra, Jantar Mantar observatory at Jaipur, forts in Maharashtra, caves, etc. enrich our heritage of historical monuments.
(4) Heritage sites in our country are visited by foreign tourists in large numbers.

(2) Preservation of heritage :

For the preservation of heritage we have to make resolutions :

(1) I shall strive to maintain the cleanliness of heritage sites.
(2) I shall not do anything, which will damage any historical site.

8.5 Professional opportunities in the Tourism and Hospitality Industry :

(1) Tourism, an industry :

(1) Tourism is an industry which has potential to generate maximum employment.
(2) It is a stable industry and has a lot of scope for experimentation.
(3) If managed professionally, it is very profitable.
(4) In modern times, tourism has become a profession which is independent and active at local, national and international level.

(2) Benefits of having foreign tourists :

(1) A country receives money on granting visa.
(2) Income is generated from hotel, transport, and food services.
(3) Guides and interpreters get income.
(4) Tourists buy newspapers, reference books and souvenirs.

(3) Business and job opportunities :

(1) Local markets, handicraft and cottage industry get a boost.
(2) Increase in demand for locally processed food.
(3) Production and sale of ethnic handicraft goods increase.
(4) It increases the income of local artisans, businessmen and wage earners.
(5) Employment opportunities in the hotel industry accommodation and in shops.

(4) Heritage Walk :

(1) To go on tour of historical places is 'Heritage Walk'.
(2) Heritage walk can give us a thrill to be a part of history.
(3) Efforts are made in India and in the world to increase the number of heritage walks.
(4) Projects are undertaken to preserve and conserve historical monuments, gather authentic information about it and publish the same.
(5) 'Heritage Walk' in Ahmedabad is famous. They are organised in Mumbai and Pune as well.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 56)

- **Ahmedabad 'Heritage Walk' :**

The famous Heritage Walk in Ahmedabad city started on 19th November 1997. It is a 2.5 kms walk which starts from Swami Narayan temple in Kalupur and finishes at Jama Masjid. The time allotted for the walk is between 8.00 am to 10.30 am. Around 20 places are covered during this walk. Old temples, Jain Derasars, Masjid, Pols, Domes, Palatial Houses are seen along the way. One is amazed seeing the carvinges on prayer halls. Carved out in wood and marble, these prayer sites are symbols of unity. The sculptures in them are made in British, Hindu, Islamic and Persian styles. We get a glimpse of the cultural life of Ahmedabad city. There is a market for handicrafts and imitation jewellery.

(5) Tourist places in Maharashtra :

Caves	Ajanta and Ellora caves, Verul, Bhaje, Kanheri caves.
Temples	Pandharpur, Shirdi, Shegaon, Tuljapur, Kolhapur, Nashik, Jejuri, Paithan, Dehu, Alandi, Haji Malang, Mount Mary's Church.

6414132

Hill stations	Mahabaleshwar, Panchgani, Chikhaldara, Matheran, Lonavala, Khandala.
Dams	Koynanagar, Jayakwadi, Bhatghar, Chandoli, Panshet, Bhandara, Khadakwasla.
Sanctuaries	Sagareshwar, Dajipur, Tadoba, Kamala.
Historical places	Raigad, Sinhagad, Sindhudurg, Vijaydurg, Palace of Kolhapur, Janjeera, Memorials.

(6) Maharashtra Tourism Development Corporation (MTDC) :

(1) The Maharashtra Tourism Development Corporation was formed in 1975.

(2) Its main objective was to give a boost to tourism.

(3) The Corporation has built tourist hotels at 47 places which can accommodate more than 4000 tourists.

(4) Many private enterprises also render hospitality services.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 57)

(1) A village named Bhilar is nestled in the scenic beauty near Mahabaleshwar, the Land of Strawberries.

(2) A village came to be known as 'Village of Books' because of the scheme of Maharashtra Government.

(3) Each household in this village maintains a library, i.e. collection of books for the tourists to read.

(4) To inculcate 'Reading Culture' movement and also for the tourists to enjoy reading this scheme was implemented.

Every alley has houses in a row. Small advertising boards are put up near the first house in the row. They show what kinds of books are kept in the houses in a particular row.

(5) In this collection, we find books of old and new authors and saints ranging in types from biographies, autobiographies, fiction, poetry, literature by women, on sports and children's literature.

6414132

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing the correct option : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) Thomas Cook established a travel agency selling ..... . ***(Nov. '20)***

(a) handicrafts *(b) toys*
(c) food items *(d) tourist tickets*

*(2) Bhilar is known as the 'Village of ..... .' ***(July '19; March '20)***

(a) Books *(b) Plants*
(c) Mangoes *(d) Pandits*

(3) The Chinese monk ..... travelled in India in 630 C.E.

(a) Hiuen Tsang *(b) Yuan Shwang*
(c) Fa-Hien *(d) Ho Chi Minh*

(4) The number of people travelling back and forth from India has increased considerably because of ..... .

(a) India's first war of Independence
(b) India's independence
(c) Economic liberalisation
(d) Good railway services

(5) ..... used to arrange hiking tours in Maharashtra to explore the sights closely linked to Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj.

(a) N.S. Inamdar *(b) Ranjit Desai*
(c) Vishnubhat Godse
(d) Gopal Neelkanth Dandekar

Ans. (1) tourist tickets (2) Books (3) Yuan Shwang (4) Economic liberalisation (5) Gopal Neelkanth Dandekar.

[2]

(1) In order to provide good amenities on the pilgrim routes like Chardham Yatras and Bara Jyotirlings ..... had spent from her personal funds.

(a) Queen Lakshmibai
(b) Ahilyabai Holkar
(c) Nanasaheb Peshwa
(d) Vishunbhat Godse

(2) A visit to ..... at Nighoj in Maharashtra is geographic tourism.

(a) palace *(b) fort*

(c) ranjankhalage *(d) temple*

(3) ..... has conducted experiments of advanced technology in agriculture.

(a) Egypt *(b) Jordan* *(c) Italy* *(d) Israel*

(4) Travelling to attend events like Maharashtra Kesari is known as ..... .

(a) Geographic Tourism

(b) Health Tourism

(c) Agro Tourism

(d) Sports Tourism

(5) ..... successfully circumnavigated Europe.

(a) Marco Polo

(b) Thomas Cook

(c) Benjamin of Tudela

(d) Gerardus Mercator

Ans. (1) Ahilyabai Holkar (2) ranjankhalage (3) Israel (4) Sports Tourism (5) Thomas Cook.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : *(1 mark each)*

6414132

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

*[1]

(1) Matheran	Hill Station
(2) Tadoba	Rock-cut Caves
(3) Kolhapur	Pilgrim Centre
(4) Ajanta	World Heritage

Ans. **Wrong Pair :** Tadoba – Rock-cut Caves

[2]

(1) First Cartographer who made world map	Thomas Cook
(2) First European discoverer	Benjamin of Tudela
(3) Italian traveller who introduced China to Europe	Marco Polo
(4) Traveller who travelled extensively in Islamic world	Ibn Battuta

Ans. **Wrong Pair :** First Cartographer who made world map – Thomas Cook

[3] Place	Popular for
(1) Lonar	Lake
(2) Jayakwadi	Hill Station
(3) Gharapuri	Rock-cut caves
(4) Jantar Mantar	Observatory

Ans. **Wrong Pair :** Jayakwadi – Hill Station

[4] *(March '19)*

(1) Gharapuri (Elephanta)	Cave
(2) Pandharpur	Pilgrim centre
(3) Sagareshwar	Dam
(4) Panchagani	Hill station

Ans. **Wrong Pair :** Sagareshwar – Dam

[5]

(1) Chikhaldara	Hill station
(2) Tuljapur	Pilgrim centre
(3) Sagareshwar	Sanctuary
(4) Tadoba	Rock-cut caves

Ans. **Wrong Pair :** Tadoba – Rock-cut caves

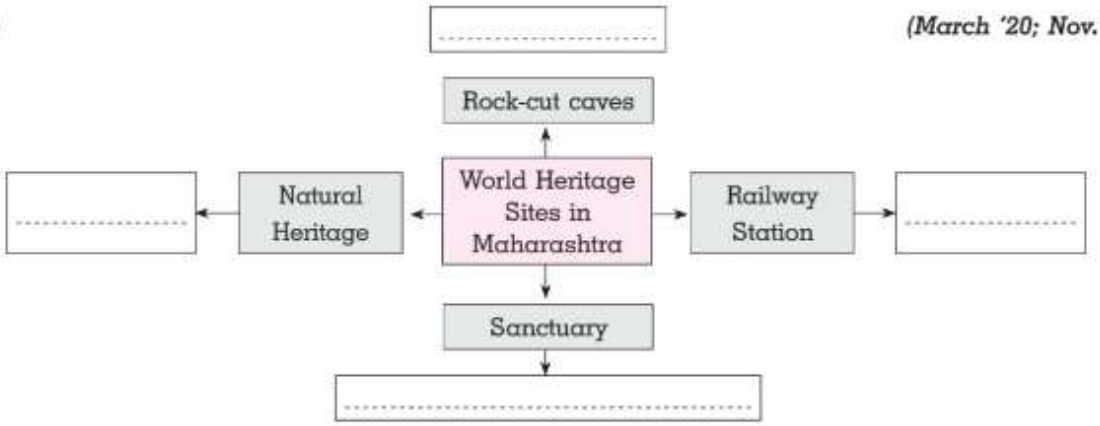
[6] *(Nov. '20)*

(1) Historical Tourism	Visit to historical places
(2) Tourism based on special events	Visit to film festival and book exhibitions
(3) International Tourism	Visit to hill stations
(4) Sports Tourism	Visit to sports events

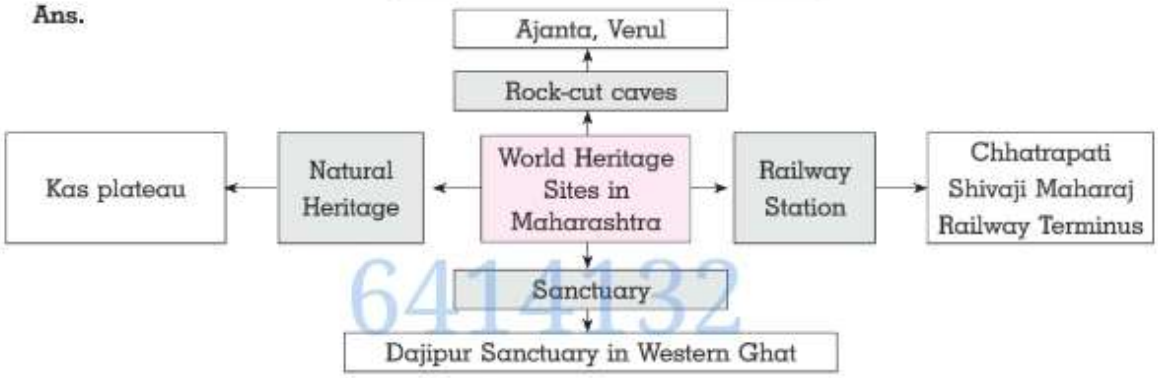
Ans. **Wrong Pair :** International Tourism – Visit to hill station.

Q. 3 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

*(1) *(March '20; Nov. '20)*

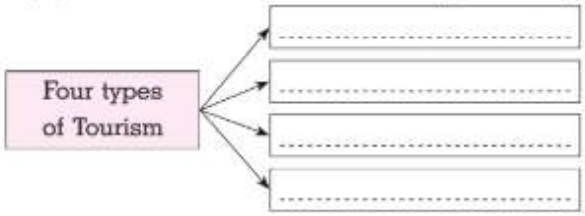


Ans.

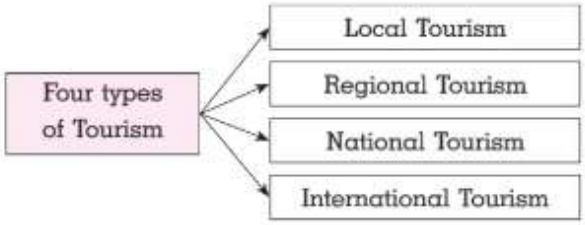


6414132

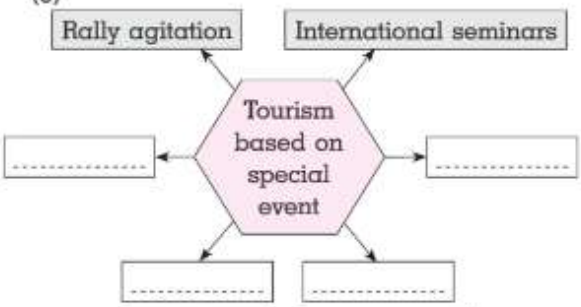
(2) *(March '20)*



Ans.

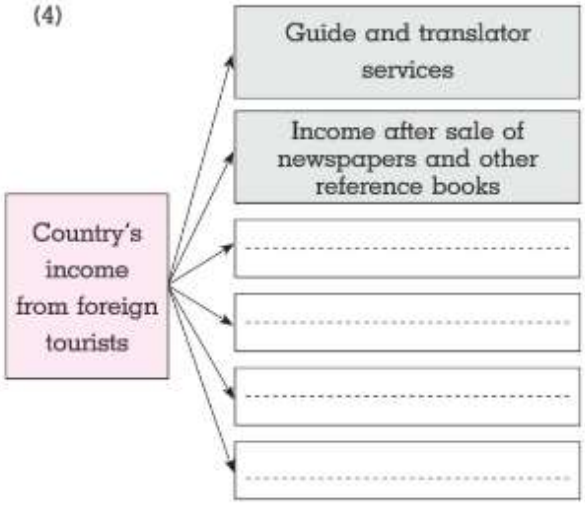


(3)

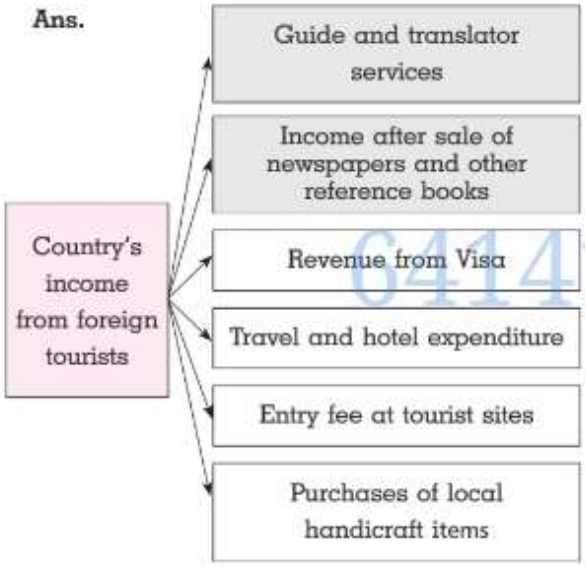


Ans.

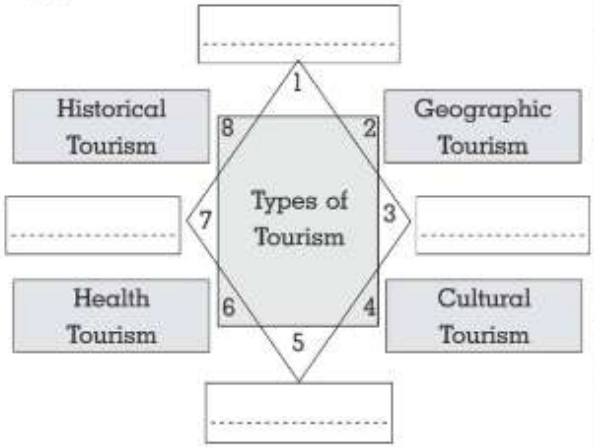
(4)



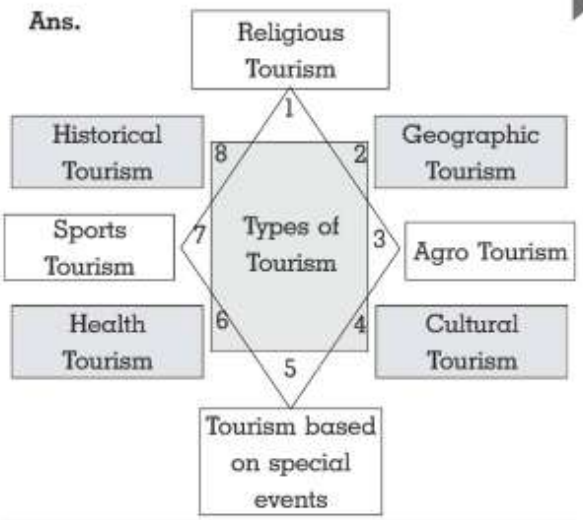
Ans.



(5)



Ans.



Q. 4 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Tradition of Travelling :**

Ans. (1) The tradition of travelling from one corner to another is not new.

(2) It existed in India since ancient times. In stone age, man was constantly on the move in search of food but that was just wandering not travelling.

(3) India has got a rich tradition of travelling. People go for local fairs, temple fairs, festivals and pilgrimage which comes under cultural tourism. People travelled long distance for education and trade. Many students visited Nalanda, Takshashila universities in the past.

(4) As travelling is a natural instinct in man, the tradition of travelling for various reasons is prevalent since ancient times.

***(2) Marco Polo :**

Ans. (1) Marco Polo was born in a business family in the Italian city of Venice in 1254 C.E.

(2) He was the first European traveller to reach China taking the silk route.

(3) His travelogue introduced Asia, especially China to Europe.

(4) He wrote about the rich flora and fauna, social life, information on culture and trade system in Asia. His writings initiated trade between Europe and Asia.

***(3) Agro-Tourism :** *(July '19)*

Ans. Visit to agricultural centres and agricultural universities comes under agro-tourism.

6444132

(1) In recent times lot of research is conducted in the agricultural field. Many new agricultural universities and research centres are formed in India.

(2) Projects are undertaken to inform farmers about suitable soil for their crops, organic manures, earthworm compost, etc. Sikkim state is the first organic state of India.

(3) Though it receives less rainfall, Israel has made a lot of development in agricultural sector. To obtain information on novel techniques in farming and on projects started, students and city people travel to places.

(4) As urban population has very little exposure to rural life and agriculture, agro-tourism is developing rapidly.

(4) Benjamin of Tudela :

Ans. (1) Benjamin of Tudela is known to be the first traveller in the world. He was born in Spain.

(2) He travelled through Asia, Europe and Africa in between 1159 – 1173 C.E.

(2) He visited France, Germany, Italy, Greece, Syria, Arabia, Egypt, Iraq and Persia. He even visited India and China.

(3) He noted down his experiences and observations about people and their living style in his diaries.

(4) He made accurate observations about the social life in the medieval period. Hence, his accounts are authentic and are studied by scholars studying the medieval period.

(5) Ibn Battuta :

(1) Ibn Battuta was born on 25th February, 1304 in present Morocco. He was a great 14th century traveller who travelled for 30 years. His travel accounts enabled people an insight into the Islamic world.

(2) Having made the resolution of not taking the same route again, he travelled to South and East Africa, South and East Europe, Middle and South east Asia in the Indian subcontinent.

(3) His writings are helpful for those who study medieval history and social life.

(4) In his book Battuta said, "Travelling – it leaves you speechless, then turns you into storyteller."

(6) Gerardus Mercator :

Ans. (1) Gerardus Mercator of 16th century was the first Dutch cartographer.

(2) He was the first one to make a world map and globe of the earth. He made large and small maps which could be hung on a wall.

(3) Mercator used the word 'Atlas' for the first time. He made scientific and astronomical instruments.

(4) His maps gave momentum to navigation around the world.

(7) Tourism :

Ans. (1) Visiting places in distant regions with a specific purpose is known as Tourism.

(2) Tourism can also be defined as going for local fairs, festivals, pilgrimage, entertainment, leisure, historical or places of natural beauty. Man has a natural instinct to travel.

(3) Travelling is an old tradition which has undergone changes with time. In modern times, tourism has changed in its nature and form.

(4) Tourism expands from the local to the international level. As tourism develops it opens the doors of development for a country.

(8) Heritage Walk :

Ans. (1) Heritage walk involves physical walking in the area and observing the historical sites. People go for heritage walks to see historical palaces, forts and old temples.

(2) The first hand experience we get is inspirational in forming an emotional connect and a long lasting impression.

(3) Many enthusiastic organisations held such heritage walks in city of Ahmadabad, Mumbai and Pune to enable the people to get glimpses of history.

(9) Cultural tourism :

Ans. (1) India has rich tradition of folk arts. Festivals are arranged to promote such art forms.

(2) Travelling to see such festivals comes under Cultural tourism.

(3) Visiting historical places to get a glimpse of local culture is also cultural tourism.

(4) It also involves visiting reputed educational institutions and understand their traditions as well as travelling to see festivals and celebrations in different parts of the country.

(5) Travelling to participate in various music-dance festivals as audience is also part of cultural tourism.

(10) Work of Thomas Cook :

Ans. (1) Thomas Cook started group tours on commercial basis in the latter half of the 19th century.

(2) He took 600 people from Leicester to Loughborough by railway.

(3) Later, he successfully organised a round trip of Europe.

(4) He opened a travel agency and sold tourists tickets. He organised affordable tours and easy travel.

Thus, his ventures opened the doors for the development of modern tourism.

(11) Sports Tourism :

Ans. (1) Sports tourism developed in the 20th century. It involves travelling either to participate in a sporting event or to watch the event.

(2) Various sports events are organised at local and state level for different interschool competitions. National level Sports Competitions are also held. International cricket, hockey and football tournaments are held at regular intervals.

(3) Wimbledon, French Open, Australian Open and US Open lawn tennis tournaments are held. Every four years, Olympics and Asian Games are held in the country which is the host. Events like the Himalayan car rally at the national level and Maharashtra Kesari at the state level are held.

(4) Travelling to participate in these events as players, coaches, umpires, referees, organisers or to attend them as spectators come under sports tourism.

Q. 5 Explain the following statements with reasons : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) The number of people travelling back and forth from India has increased considerably.** *(March '19)*

Ans. (1) It has become easier to travel because of the easy availability of a number of options like railway, marine and air services.

(2) Marine has linked the coastal regions. Aviation has brought the entire world closer.

(3) The economic liberalisation policy of the Indian government has made the travel more easy.

(4) People travel for studies, relaxation, sightseeing and professional assignments (meetings, etc.), also for shooting films.

Therefore, there has been a considerable increase in the number of people travelling back and forth from India.

***(2) It is important to take a few primary precautions in order to preserve the historical heritage sites.**

Ans. India has rich natural and cultural heritage. In order to preserve the historical sites following precautionary measures should be taken.

(1) Avoid vandalising or defacing the heritage monuments and sites.

(2) To refrain from activities like writing on the wall or carving on the trees.

(3) Ancient monuments should not be painted in garish colours.

(4) Lack of good amenities in the precints of the heritage sites causes filthiness. Proper amenities should be provided.

Heritage monuments like forts and other monuments are testimonies of our glorious past and they serve as guide for future generations. Therefore, they should be preserved.

(3) Maza Pravas is an important source of history.

Ans. (1) Vishnubhat Godse in his travelogue wrote about his journey to Ayodhya and back to Maharashtra.

(2) He published a book, called 'Maza Pravas' in which he gave an eye witness account of the events which unfolded during the Indian War of Independence in 1857.

(3) He gave full detailed descriptions about various incident during that period, especially on the life of the Queen of Jhansi Lakshmibai.

(4) His writings give us an idea about the nature of the Marathi language in the 18th century.

Therefore, it is considered as an important source of history.

Q. 6 Answer the following question in 25–30 words :

Note : *As per the latest paper pattern, this question has been excluded. However, these questions can be asked under other question types.*

***(1) What are the several crucial issues involved in the development of tourism ?**

Ans. In modern times, tourism is not limited to being a job-oriented profession but it also contributes to the nation's development.

(1) Safety of the tourists and secure transport facilities should be given utmost preference.

(2) Availability of good accommodation and amenities of reasonably good standard should be made available. Good washroom facilities on the travel routes and at tourists sites should be provided.

(3) Pamphlets, guides, maps, translators should be made available to the tourists, preferably in their own language.

(4) Attention should be given towards the needs of specially challenged people.

In this way, by taking of all these crucial issues tourism can be developed.

***(2) In what way Tourism becomes a major source of livelihood ?**

Ans. In the following ways development takes place at local level because of tourism :

(1) Local markets are developed in the vicinity of a tourist site.

(2) There is considerable increase in purchase and sales of goods liked by tourists. Production and sale of ethnic handicraft goods increase eventually leading to the development of these industries and economic well-being of the skilled craftsmen.

(3) Increase in demand of locally processed food, hotel services, accommodation and shops leads to development of these services.

(4) Local transport, travel agents, guides, translators are in demand. Hence more and more employment opportunities are generated.

***(3) What would you do to develop the surroundings of your village/town to help the growth of tourism?**

Ans. It is important to have an understanding of our surroundings. For that some ground work is essential.

(1) Historical monuments and temples should be conserved and preserved. Boards having information on them should be put up around the city. We need to pay attention towards cleanliness.

(2) Beaches should be clean as clean beaches always attract tourists.

(3) Tourists are interested to see projects like earthworm composts, zero waste and working of solar power projects. If such projects are installed they become centre of major tourist attraction.

(4) Similarly, tourists are interested to see local art, culture, cottage and handicraft industry. They are enthusiastic to buy locally made handicrafts as souvenirs. I feel if there is economical, geographical, cultural and educational development in our surroundings it will definitely boost tourism.

6414132

Q. 7 Read the following passage and answer the following questions : *(4 marks)*

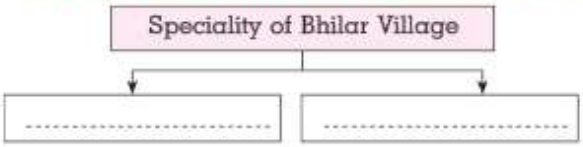
Note : *A picture based question can be asked on the Logo of the 'Village of Books' : Answer to the questions based on passage will be helpful to write this answer. Remember the tagline given along with the logo.*

Textbook page 57

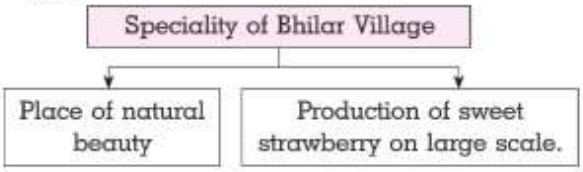
An unusual village of Books

Bhilar is a ... ... as well.

(1) Complete the graphical presentation : (1)



Ans.



(2) What types of books are there in the Village of Books? (1)

Ans. In the Village of Books, we find books of old and new authors and saints, ranging from biographies, autobiographies, fiction, poetry, literature by women, literature on sports and literature for kids.

(3) Why is Bhilar village known as Village of Books? (2)

Ans. (1) Each household in this village maintains a library of its own.

(2) Tourists enjoy reading these books.

(3) Maharashtra Government has kept these books in every household so that it becomes easy for the tourists to take and read.

(4) It is done with a view to accelerate the 'Reading Culture' movement to enjoy Marathi literature.

Hence, the village is known as 'Village of Books'.

Q. 8 Give elaborate answers to the following : *(3 marks each)*

64141132

***(1) What are the professional fields associated with tourism?**

OR

Tourism can generate career and employment opportunities. Give your opinion. ***(March '19)***

Ans. The following fields are related to tourism :

(1) Hotels, lodging and boarding services.

(2) Shops selling food items and catering services, etc.

(3) A revival or boost to Handicraft and Cottage industry, resulting in economic well-being of the skilled craftsmen.

(4) Demand for industries affiliated to hotel industry like Dairy industry, Agro industry which supplies vegetables, fruits, fish and meat increases.

(5) Transport services which are required by tourists such as bus, autorickshaw and taxi, increase in numbers.

(6) Travel agents, photographers, guides, etc. and other professions related to tourism get a boost.

***(2) Describe any three types of tourism.**

Ans. Tourism has been classified into many types, three important types of them are :

(1) Historical Tourism :

(1) Tourism and history are inseparable.

(2) The number of people visiting historical places are increasing day by day.

(3) Tours are arranged to see forts, battlefields which narrate stories of valour of our ancestors and monuments made by them.

(4) Tourists visit memorials of freedom fighters, forts built by Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj, palaces built by kings, important places related to the Indian war of independence in 1857, and ashrams of Mahatma Gandhi and Vinoba Bhave.

Thus, this type of historical tourism is popular all around the world.

(2) Geographic Tourism : Sea beaches, mountain ranges, valleys, snow-capped peaks, pristine jungles, sanctuaries, lakes formed because of meteor impact, waterfalls, form wealth of a nation. People enjoy nature and feel a natural attraction towards it. People around the world visit such places out of curiosity or for leisure.

(3) International Tourism :

(1) International tourism is on the rise in modern times because of availability of transport facility.

(2) International tourism is on the rise because people travel for various reasons like international literary conferences, world summits, meetings, business deals, site seeing and visit to religious places.

(3) International seminars and conferences are held. Film festivals are arranged. Such events promote international tourism.

(3) Explain the benefits of increasing tourism.

Ans. Tourism not only benefits an individual but also a country.

(1) Tourism is an industry which has potential to generate maximum employment.

(2) New markets are created leading to the development of tourist sites.

(3) Urbanisation takes place giving rise to new colonies.

(4) The country earns foreign exchange.

(5) Handicraft and cottage industry gets a boost.

(6) Visiting different sites, meeting people, speaking different languages and knowing different cultures increases tolerance and peace.

(7) We get information when we visit places of historical importance and natural beauty. It widens our perspective.

(8) When we visit historical places we come to know about the glorious past which gives us inspiration to build a bright future.

(9) It emphasises the need that we have to take care of our heritage.

(10) Tourism gives us a feeling of personal and collective fulfilment.

***(Note :** Write any six points.)*

(4) Write information on the tourists places in Maharashtra.

Ans.

Caves	Ajanta and Ellora caves, Verul, Bhaje, Kanheri caves
Temples	Pandharpur, Shirdi, Jejuri, Shegaon, Tuljapur, Kolhapur, Nashik, Paithan, Dehu, Alandi, Haji Malang, Mount Mary's Church.
Hill stations	Mahabaleshwar, Panchgani, Chikhaldara, Matheran, Lonavala, Khandala.
Dams	Koynanagar, Jayakwadi, Bhatghar, Chandoli, Panshet, Bhandara, Khadakwasla.
Sanctuaries	Dajipur Tadoba, Kamala.
Historical places	Raigad, Simhagad, Sindhudurg, Vijaydurg, Palace of Kolhapur, Janjeera, Memorials.

(5) Explain the purpose of tourism.

Ans. Tourism has several purposes and inspiration behind it. They are as follows :

(1) To see historical monuments, forts and cities discovered during excavations. To visit centres promoting ancient art and craft, museums.

(2) To visit different pilgrim centres, sea beaches, mountain ranges, valleys, snow-capped peaks, pristine jungles.

(3) To visit special plateaus like Kas plateau, museums, lakes formed because of meteoric impact and valleys of flowers, places of natural beauty gives us enjoyment and experiences which connects us to nature. To visit different industrial sites.

(4) To see medicinal plants and avail of ayurvedic therapies.

(5) To visit places to see agricultural projects, visit to see agricultural research centres and making of compost pits.

(6) To travel to watch sports events which comes under sports tourism. To be part of dance-music festival or watch as audience, which is cultural tourism.

(7) People also visit places to attend film festivals, witness the making of movies, science seminars, international conferences, book exhibitions and literary events.

In short, the purpose of tourism differs from person to person. It is explored as per individual interest.

***(Note :** Write any six points.)*

(6) What measures should be taken to conserve historical monuments?

Ans. Historical monuments and ancient historical sources constitute our cultural heritage. The following measures should be taken to conserve them :

(1) Seepage of water in forts and in rock-cut caves should be stopped. Creepers which grow on forts should be uprooted.

(2) Damages due to humidity and heat should be stopped with proper measures.

(3) To take precautions to avoid deterioration of monuments near the sea because of salt.

(4) Hygiene should be maintained at tourist sites.

(5) One should be fined for writing names, carving or defacing the monument in ary manner.

(6) Government should take measures to avoid the monuments getting vandalised.

(7) Awareness should be created among the people about the need to preserve monuments.

(8) Along with government, people and private sectors should contribute to raise funds for the preservation of projects.

***(Note :** Write any six points.)*

6414132

(7) What is religious tourism? Explain its benefits. *(July '19)*

Ans. (A) Meaning : (1) When people travel individually or in groups on a pilgrimage, it is known as Religious Tourism. Religious seminars, pilgrimages, religious festivals and travel on occasions to bathe in holy rivers come under religious tourism.

(2) Gautam Buddha and Buddhist monks travelled to preach Buddhism and give discourses on Dhama. In the same way, Shankarachaya had travelled to spread Hinduism. St. Francis Xavier along with his followers travelled all over India to preach Christianity.

(3) People in Maharashtra walk on foot to reach Pandharpur, Shirdi and many holy places to pay their obeisance.

(4) Guru Nanak, Saint Namdev, Samarth Ramdas, as well as Yuan Shwang who came from China in 630 C.E. to study Buddhism in India, travelled extensively in India.

6414132

(B) Benefits : The following are the benefits of religious tourism :

(1) People staying in different parts of the world come together.

(2) They develop ties as they share the same faith and also feeling of unity develops.

(3) Religious places get importance and many social welfare projects are undertaken.

(4) As these places develop, the local business develops leading to improvement in the standard of living of the local people.

(8) Distinguish between Local Interstate tourism and International tourism.

Ans.

Local/Interstate Tourism	International Tourism
1. Travelling within our country is local tourism.	1. Crossing border and going overseas means international tourism.
2. There is no need to seek government's permission or paper work.	2. Visa is required to travel to a foreign country. Visa is not granted unless we complete all paper work. It is essential to keep documents with us. Permission of government mandatory.
3. Local tourism is hassle free as the land is known to us.	3. Having no acquaintances with the people or land can create challenges.
4. No need for currency exchange.	4. Currency exchange is required.
5. We can make changes in the itinerary to suit our convenience.	5. Fixed itinerary has to be followed. We cannot make any changes in it.
6. Language, mostly, is not an obstacle. We can communicate in our mother tongue or in the national language.	6. Language can be an obstacle. One should know the language of that country if one wants to interact with locals or at least be well versed in English.
7. We can extend our stay if we desire to do so.	7. Our stay in a foreign country cannot be extended. It has fixed time duration as long as permission is granted.

(Note : Write any six points.)

Do You Know ? (Textbook page 55)

(1) What facilities should be made available to the tourists?

Ans. The following facilities should be provided to tourists :

Facilities for tourists :

(1) Safe and secured transport facilities, translators and guides.

(2) Ensure safety of the tourists.

(3) Good and clean hotels and eateries. Clean drinking water at various places of visit.

(4) Good washrooms on the travel routes and at tourists sites.

(5) Care should be taken that tourists do not endure physical or mental distress.

(6) Tourists should not be cheated when they make purchases.

(2) How would you behave with the tourists if you are the local person at a tourist site?

Ans. Tourists visit any tourist site having faith in the local people :

(1) I will behave well with the tourists. I will extend my cooperation.

(2) I will inform them about the tourist places known to me, which things they can buy and where.

(3) I will be careful that they face no problems.

6414132

Can You Tell? (Textbook page 57)

(1) What kind of new occupations were introduced in the surroundings of your village / town because of growing tourism?

Ans. The following job opportunities were created in the surroundings of my town because of growing tourism :

(1) The number of tourist guides, porters increased.

(2) More services of autorickshaw, taxi, horse-ride, horse carts, etc. were provided.

(3) New hotels and shops selling food items came up in vicinity. (4) Juice and cold drink centres were started.

(5) Milk, vegetables and tea stalls were set up.

(6) New shops selling handicraft and local things opened.

(2) What difference can be observed in the lifestyle of people in the surroundings of your village-town because of growing tourism?

Ans. Tourism improves standard of living of the people :

(1) Small towns transform into urban cities.

(2) Standard of living improves to great extent.

(3) Modern housing colonies come up in place of small houses.

(4) Different types of business as prosper.

(5) Artists get promoted which helps in sale of their artefacts.

(6) Number of two-wheelers and four-wheelers increase.

I have observed these changes in the surroundings of my town.

Project

(1) Explain the need to preserve the heritage sites. What measures are required to achieve it? Discuss.

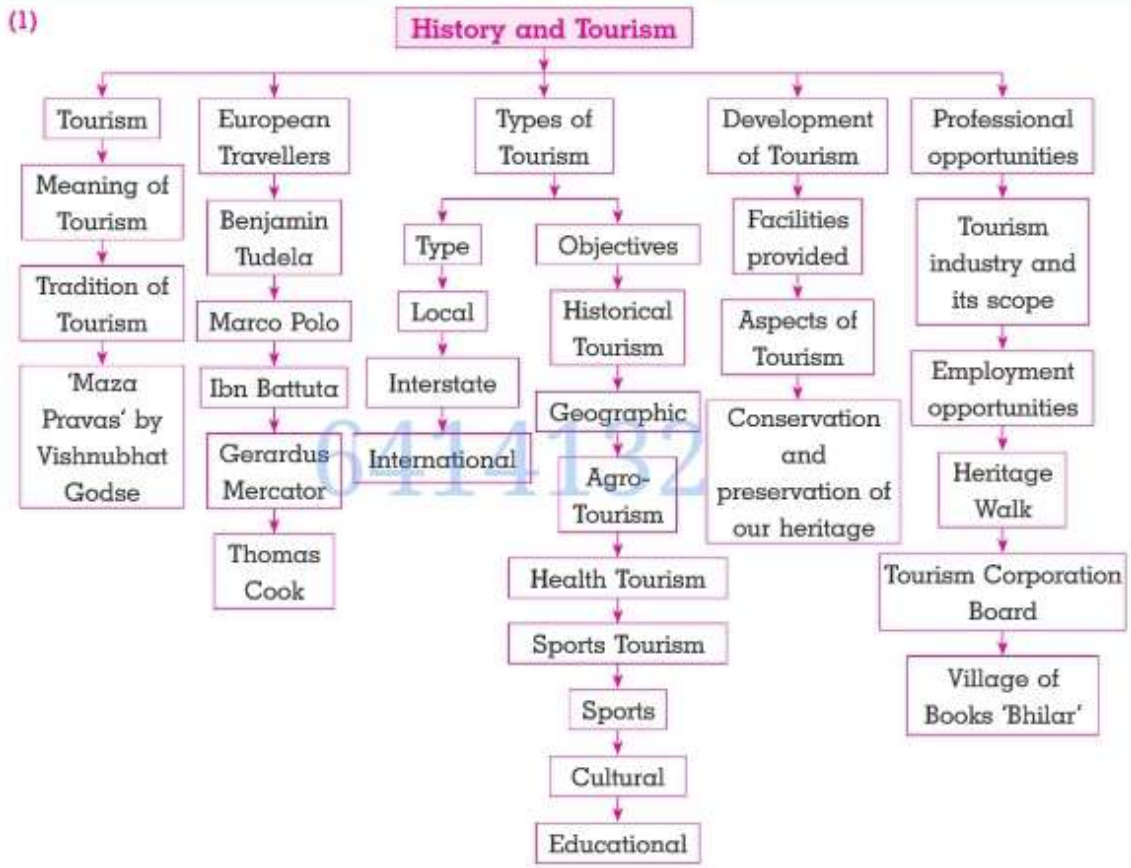
(2) Find information about science, cultural and group tourism with help of the teachers and internet. **(Let us find out – Textbook page 54)**

(3) Gather more information about the Swachh Bharat drive. **(Do this! – Textbook page 55)**

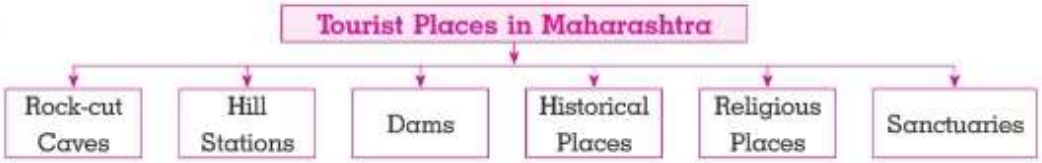
(4) Collect pictures and photos of the cultural, natural and mixed heritage sites in India with the help of internet. **(Try this – Textbook page 55)**

Memory Map

(1)



(2)



Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

9 HERITAGE MANAGEMENT

IMPORTANT POINTS

9.0 Introduction :

(1) Institutions like libraries, museums and archives conserve and preserve heritage.

(2) The museums and archives store documents and artefacts which are not exhibited but are historically important. They are kept in an archive.

(3) Documents are used by researchers from time to time.

9.1 Sources of History, their conservation and preservation :

(1) Procedure followed for conservation and preservation of sources of History :

(1) Collection of sources of history.

(2) Creation of their records and Indexes.

(3) Preservation of old texts and manuscripts.

(4) Exhibition of artefacts, manuscripts and books after completing necessary treatment.

(5) Taking required training for completion of all the above.

(2) Tasks/steps taken and required training for preservation of sources of History :

Sources of History	Steps/Procedure	Necessary Training
1. Oral sources	(1) To collect and compile folk tales and folk songs (2) Classification and analysis of compiled sources (3) Interpretation of these compiled sources (4) Publishing the results of related research.	(1) Sociology and Anthropology (2) Social Psychology (3) Mythology and Linguistics (4) Library Science and Information Technology (5) History and Historical Research Method (6) Research, reports and articles
2. Written sources	(1) To collect coins, copper plates with inscriptions on them, official records, personal correspondence, diaries, old books, pictures, manuscripts and compile them. (2) For the purpose of preservation and conservation, necessary chemical processes and cleaning of the sources to be done. (3) Historical value of the collected documents to be ascertained. (4) Publish results of research reports and edited documents.	(1) Knowledge of scripts like Brahmi, Modi, Persian. (2) Knowledge of various styles of painting and sculpture, properties of stones, metals, etc. (3) Information on types of paper, ink and colours. (4) Information on properties of stones and metals used for inscriptions. (5) Knowledge of equipment and chemicals used in various processes of cleaning, conservation and preservation. (6) Knowledge about approaches of managing exhibitions in museums, galleries and information technology. (7) Basic knowledge of social organisation, traditions, literature and cultural dynasties, administrative systems, etc. of past societies. (8) Writing research reports and articles.

6414139

Sources of History	Steps/Procedure	Necessary Training
3. Material sources	(1) To classify collected artefacts according to their historical date and type and prepare indexes. (2) To complete necessary mechanical and chemical processes of cleaning for conservation and preservation of documents. (3) To arrange exhibitions of selected artefacts or their replicas. (4) To publish research articles about collected artefacts. (5) To classify fossils of plants and animals to be classified and to prepare indexes. (6) To exhibit selected fossils and replicas.	(1) Basic knowledge of archaeological methods and theories, and to be acquainted with the history of ancient civilisation. (2) Ability to identify regional material sources like stones, minerals, metals and clay used to make artefacts and their chemical properties. (3) Knowledge about the equipment, and chemicals required to clean artefacts. (4) Knowledge and skills of making replicas of artefacts and fossils. (5) Information about the approaches of arranging exhibitions and administration. (6) Writing of research reports.

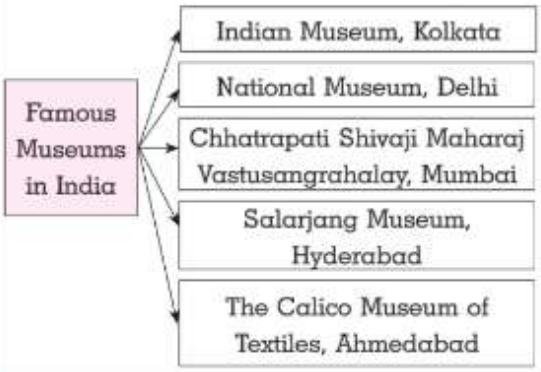
9.2 (1) Some famous Museums in the West :

	Name of the Museum	Country (City)	Established	Information
1.	Louvre Museum	France (Paris)	18th century C.E.	(1) First it only had antiquities collected by the royal family of France. (2) Antiquities brought by Napoleon from his conquests increased its collection. (3) The famous painting of Mona Lisa by Leonardo-da-Vinci is kept in this museum. (4) Presently, it houses more than 3 lakh and 80 thousand artefacts.
2.	British Museum	England (London)	18th century C.E.	(1) Sir Hans Sloan, a natural scientist, handed over 71 thousand objects in his collection to the King of England, George II. (2) It included many books, pictures, specimens of preserved plants (herbarium), etc. (3) Collection of the museum increased with additions of art objects and ancient artefacts from British colonies were added. (4) It has about 80 lakh objects at present.
3.	National Museum of Natural History	USA (Washington D.C.)	1846 C.E.	(1) This museum is managed by Smithsonian Institute. (2) It stores specimens of fossils and remains of plants, animals, minerals, rocks, human fossils and artefacts. (3) It stores more than 12 crore specimens.

6414132

Let Us Know (Textbook page 61)

- **Famous Museums in India :**



(2) Museums in India :

(1) The Asiatic Society of Bengal in Kolkata established 'Indian Museum', the first museum in India in 1814.

(2) The 'Government Museum' established in Chennai in 1851 C.E. was the second museum in India.

(3) The 'National Museum' was established in Delhi in 1949.

6414132

(3) Institutes and Universities offering degree and diploma courses in Museology :

National Museum	– Delhi
Maharaj Sayajirao University	– Vadodara
Kolkata University	– Kolkata
Banaras Hindu University	– Varanasi
Aligarh Muslim University	– Aligarh
Jivaji University	– Gwalior.

(4) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay :

(1) To commemorate the visit of the Prince of Wales to India some influential residents decided to establish a museum in Mumbai.

(2) The foundation of the building was laid on 2nd November 1905 and the construction of the building was completed in 1922.

(3) The museum was named as 'Prince of Wales of Western India'. In 1998 C.E., it was renamed 'Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay'.

(4) The museum building is constructed in Indo-Gothic style and has been awarded the status of Grade I Heritage Building.

(5) The collection of 50 thousand antiquities of this museum has been classified into three categories, Arts, Archaeology and Natural History.

9.3 Libraries and Archives :

(1) Functions of Libraries :

(1) Libraries are storehouses of knowledge and information.

(2) Library Science is closely related to Management Science, Information Technology and the education field.

(3) Artefacts are kept in museums, books in libraries and manuscripts which are not exhibited are preserved in Archives.

(4) Books are collected, compiled, classified, systematically preserved and conserved.

(5) Dissemination of information sources are done with the help of computers.

(6) Making books available to the readers whenever they require is the most important aspect of library.

(2) Earliest Library :

(1) The library at Takshashila (5th century B.C.E. – 5th century C.E.) is the earliest known library.

(2) The Royal Library of Ashurbanipal, the Assyrian Emperor in Mesopotamia. (7th century B.C.E.)

(3) Library in Alexandria, Egypt. (4th century B.C.E.)

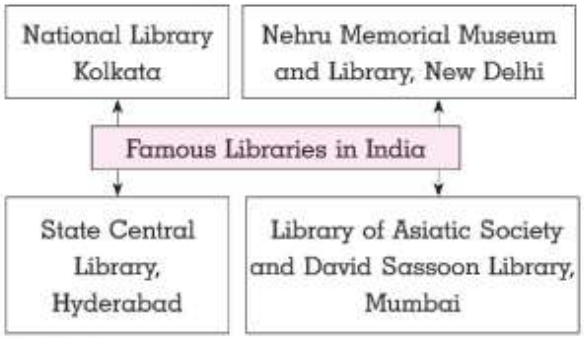
(3) Saraswati Mahal Granthalay :

(1) The Saraswati Mahal Granthalay was built in between 16-17th century at Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu during the times of Nayak dynasty.

(2) Vyankojiraje Bhosale and his successors expanded and enriched it adding to its collection.

(3) Sarfojiraje Bhosale had a major share in the expansion of this library. The library was renamed as the Thanjavur Maharaja Sarfoji Saraswati Mandal Library in 1918.

(4) Libraries in India :



(5) Archives :

(1) Preserve documents with important contents in their original condition.

(2) Make indexes of the documents.

(3) Make an accurate system of retrieval.

(4) All the information and operations are computerised.

(5) No changes are made in the documents kept in archives and hence they are reliable.

(6) First Archive in India :

(1) The first official archive of India was established in Kolkata in 1891 C.E. as the Imperial Record Department.

(2) Shifted to Delhi in 1911 C.E.

(3) In 1998 C.E., it was made accessible for public by the then President of India, K. R. Narayanan.

(4) Archives come under the Cultural Ministry of India.

(5) These archives have papers in all the languages from 1748.

(6) Papers kept in archives are classified as Public Records, Oriental Studies, Manuscripts and Private Records.

9.4 Encyclopaedia :

(1) Meaning :

(1) Encyclopaedia means compilation of information or knowledge of various topics.

(2) Information in encyclopaedia is organised and systematically compiled.

(3) The main objective of encyclopaedia is to manage and disseminate information.

(2) Benefit of Enyclopaedia :

(1) Knowledge should be accessible to readers.

(2) It fulfils and satisfies the curiosity of the readers.

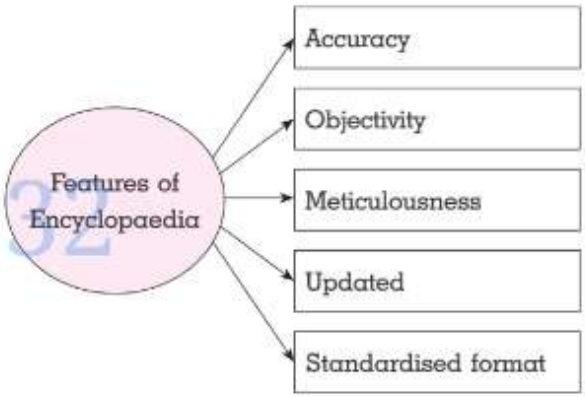
(3) It solves the confusion of readers.

(4) Encyclopaedias inspire to carry out more research. They enrich the existing knowledge.

(5) Encyclopaedias are indicators of state and cultural maturity of the society.

(6) Encyclopaedias are created as per the intellectual and cultural needs of society.

(3) Features of Encyclopaedia :



(4) Format of Encyclopaedia :

(1) Encyclopaedias are arranged according to alphabetical order or as per the order of topics.

(2) Encyclopaedias are made according to selected subjects.

(3) Encyclopaedia provides information on important events, concepts and personalities.

(4) For the convenience of the readers an index is provided at the end of the encyclopaedia.

(5) Encyclopaedias can be created and written by a single editor or a committee of editors and experts in each subject.

6414132

(5) Types of Encyclopaedia :

Sr. No.	Types of Encyclopaedia	Information
1.	Dictionaries	(1) Meanings of words in a particular order are given. (2) Synonyms and antonyms are given. (3) It gives etymology. (4) Dictionaries are classified in different types such as comprehensive dictionaries, dictionaries of terminology, etymological dictionaries, thesaurus, dictionaries of idioms and proverbs.
2.	Comprehensive Encyclopaedia (Vishwakosh)	(1) Comprehensive Encyclopaedia are of two types like one encompassing information on all subjects. It gives essence of the subjects. e.g. Encyclopaedia Britannica, etc. (2) Another type of comprehensive encyclopaedia gives information on any one chosen subject. e.g. Bharatiya Samskruti Kosh, etc.
3.	Encyclopaedic Literature (Koshsadrush)	(1) Information on all possible aspects of the subject. (2) Experts are called to write on different topics. e.g. Maharashtra Jeevan, Year book, Manorama, etc.
4.	Indexes	(1) Indexes means list. It is mostly given at the end of the book. (2) List of names, personalities mentioned in the book, subjects, places, reference books, key words are given in alphabetical order. (3) Indexes are useful and helpful in finding the required information. (4) An index of Marathi periodicals was prepared by S.G. Date.

6414132

(6) Encyclopaedia and History :

(1) Encyclopaedia and history adhere to objectivity, authenticity and updated information.

(2) Encyclopaedia is helpful in history; and knowledge of history is useful to make encyclopaedia.

(7) Encyclopaedia : Achievement of Society

(1) National policies, ethical values and ideals influence the structure of an encyclopaedia.

(2) The nation's philosophy and traditions too influence encyclopaedia.

(3) Encyclopaedias can strengthen our national identity and make us feel proud.

(4) Individuals or groups create encyclopaedias to gain and spread knowledge.

(5) The collective intellect and creativity of a society manifests itself into an encyclopaedia.

(8) Subjects related to Encyclopaedia :

Sr. No.	Types of Encyclopaedia	Information
1.	Encyclopaedia on History-related Subjects	Students of history and research scholars find the meanings of words which were used in the past but have disappeared from the present language. In such enclycopaedias, events and names of people, who made a good name for themselves are given along with names of their women, sons, land, capital, etc. It also provides index on manuscripts, documents in alphabetical manner. Y.N. Kelkar's historic encyclopaedia is important.

Sr. No.	Types of Encyclopaedia	Information
2.	Charitrakosh	(1) There are a number of great people who have contributed to our society. The dictionaries which contain information on such people and their work is known as Charitrakosh. (2) India has legacy of great people who lived in the past and in the present. Raghunath Bhaskar Godbole wrote Bharatvarshiya Prachin Aitihasik Kosh, Siddeshwar Shastri Chitrav wrote Bharatvarshiya Prachin Charitrakosh (1932), Bharatvarshiya Madhyayugin Charitrakosh (1937) and Bharatvarshiya Arvachin Charitrakosh (1946) in three volumes.
3.	Dnyankosh	Shreedhar Vyankatesh Ketkar edited 23 volumes of Maharashtriya Dnyankosh. His role behind the creation of this kosh is (1) To expand the intellectual sphere of Marathi speaking people. (2) To facilitate wider access to knowledge. (3) To widen scope of their ideas. (4) To help them attain maturity like people of developed countries.
4.	Sthalakosh	History shapes itself within geographical limit. In this context, sthalakosh are very important as they provide information on the place with details and background of the events. Sthanapothi composed by Muni Vyas of Mahanubhav sect describes all the places visited by Chakradhar Swami. Prachin Bharatiya Sthalakosh by Siddehwarshastri Chitrav is an important Sthalakosh. Sthalakosh are helpful while writing history.
5.	Vishwakosh	(1) The first Chief Minister of Maharashtra, Yashwantrao Chavan, initiated the work of Marathi Vishwakosh. (2) The work of making this Vishwakosh started under the guidance of Tarkteerth Lakshmanshastri Joshi. (3) This work was initiated by Maharashtra Rajya Sahitya Samskruti Mandal. (4) Till date, 20 volumes are published of this Vishwakosh. The essence of universal knowledge gets united in Vishwakosh.
6.	Bharatiya Samskruti Kosh	Information on cultural concepts, practices, institutions, religions, rituals, is given in Samskruti Kosh. Mahadevshastri Joshi edited and published 10 volumes. It gives information on religion, sects, religious centres, festivities, rituals, methods of worship in ancient India.
7.	Samdnya Kosh	It explains various concepts in history like Globalisation, Liberalisation, Imperialism, Colonialism, Communism, which is useful to history teachers.
8.	Some Special Encyclopaedias	(1) Sangeetshastrakar va Kalavant Yancha Itihas by Lakshman Dattatray Joshi. (2) Krantikarakancha Charitrakosh by S.R. Date. (3) Svatantryasainik Charitrakosh by N.R. Phatak.

8414132

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing the correct option : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) Louvre Museum has in its collection the much acclaimed painting of ..... by Leonardo-da-Vinci.
(a) Napoleon *(b) Mona Lisa*
(c) Hans Sloan *(d) George II*

*(2) ..... at Kolkata is the first museum in India.
(a) Government Museum
(b) National Museum
(c) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay
(d) Indian Museum

(3) Documents and artefacts which are not exhibited are kept in ..... .
(a) Museum *(b) Library*
(c) Archives *(d) Government office*

(4) ..... was the 16th century artist who worked under the patronage of French King Francis I.
(a) Leonardo-da-Vinci *(b) Michaelangelo*
(c) Raphael *(d) Dante*

(5) The collection in ..... increased to a great extent because of the antiquities brought by Napoleon Bonaparte.
(a) National Museum of Natural History
(b) British Museum
(c) Louvre Museum
(d) The Calico Museum

Ans. (1) Mona Lisa (2) Indian Museum (3) Archives (4) Leonardo-da-Vinci (5) Louvre Museum.

[2]

(1) ....., a natural scientist handed over about 71 thousand objects in his collection to the British Museum.
(a) Sir Hans Sloan *(b) King George II*
(c) Napoleon Bonaparte *(d) King Francis I*

(2) The Museum of Natural History which houses more than 12 crore specimens of fossils is in ..... .
(a) England *(b) France*
(c) Switzerland *(d) USA.*

(3) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay was built to commemorate the visit of ..... .
(a) King George I *(b) Queen Elizabeth*
(c) Prince Charles *(d) Prince of Wales*

(4) The building of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay is built in ..... style.
(a) Mughal *(b) Indo-Greek*
(c) Indo-Gothic *(d) Indo-Persian*

(5) ..... is given status of Grade I heritage building in Mumbai.
(a) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Railway Terminus
(b) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay
(c) Reserve Bank of India
(d) Jehangir Art Gallery

Ans. (1) Sir Hans Sloan (2) USA (3) Prince of Wales (4) Indo-Gothic (5) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay.

[3]

(1) The Royal Library of Ashurbanipal, the ..... Emperor in Mesopotamia is one of the earliest libraries in the world.
(a) Hispanic *(b) Assyrian*
(c) Mongol *(d) Akkadian*

(2) The ..... in Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu was built in 16th-17th century during the times of Nayak dynasty.
(a) Vyankojiraje Bhosale
(b) Sarfojiraje Bhosale
(c) Saraswati Mahal Granthalay
(d) Vidya Niketan

(3) The first official archives of India, the ..... was established in 1891 C.E. in Kolkata.
(a) National Archive
(b) Federal Record of Nation
(c) Archive National
(d) Imperial Record Department

6414132

(4) There are about five crore Modi documents related to Maratha history in the Pune branch which are referred as ..... .
(a) Peshwa Daftar
(b) Bhosale Daftar
(c) British Daftar
(d) Maratha Daftar

(5) ..... prepared during the reign of Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj is considered as an important encyclopaedia.
(a) Bharatiya Vyavahar Kosh
(b) Rajavyavaharkosh
(c) Vyavaharik Kosh
(d) Bharatiya Prachin Charitrakosh

Ans. (1) Assyrian (2) Saraswati Mahal Granthalay (3) Imperial Record Department (4) Peshwa Daftar (5) Rajavyavaharkosh.

Q. 2 Identify the wrong pair in the following and write it : ***(1 mark each)***

Note : *According to latest paper pattern, students are expected to only identify the incorrect pair. They are not expected to correct it.*

6414132

*[1]

(1) Maharaj Sayajirao University	Delhi
(2) Banaras Hindu University	Varanasi
(3) Aligarh Muslim University	Aligarh
(4) Jivaji University	Gwalior

Ans. Wrong Pair : Maharaj Sayajirao University – Delhi.

[2]

(1) Sangeetshastrakar va Kalavant Yancha Itihas	– Lakshman Dattatray Joshi
(2) Krantikarakancha Charitrakosh	– S. R. Date
(3) Svantantryasainik Charitrakosh	– N. R. Phatak
(4) Bharatvarshiya Prachin Aitihasik Kosh	– Shridhar Vyankatesh Ketkar

Ans. Wrong Pair : Bharatvarshiya Prachin Aitihasik Kosh – Shridhar Vyankatesh Ketkar

[3]

(1) Bharatvarshiya Charitrakosh	– Siddeshwar Shastri Chitrav
(2) Marathi Vishwakosh	– Raghunath Bhaskar Godbole
(3) Bharatiya Samskruti Kosh	– Pandit Mahadevshastri Joshi
(4) Maharashtriya Dnyankosh	– Shridhar Vyankatesh Ketkar

Ans. Wrong Pair : Marathi Vishwakosh – Raghunath Bhaskar Godbole

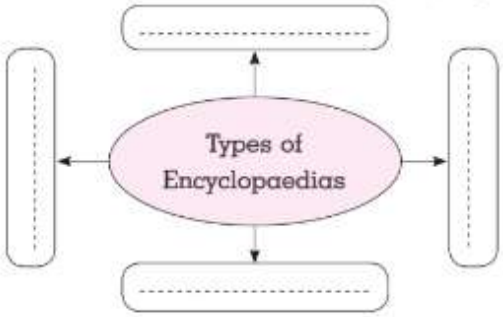
[4]

(1) Sthanapothi	– Muni Vyas
(2) Index of Marathi Periodicals	– S. G. Date
(3) First Encyclopaedia of Natural History	– Denis Diderot
(4) Asiatic Society of Bengal	– First museum in India

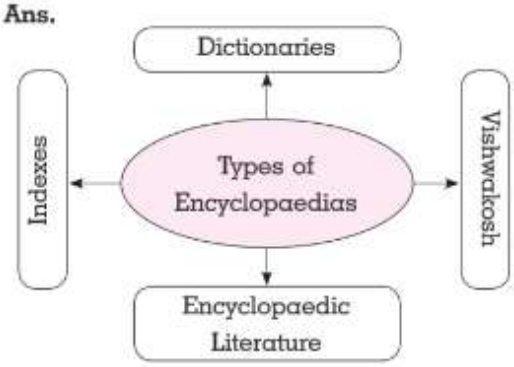
Ans. Wrong Pair : First Encyclopaedia of Natural History – Denis Diderot

Q. 3 Complete the following concept chart : ***(2 marks each)***

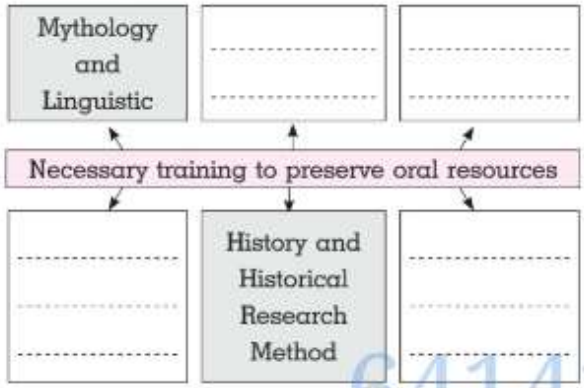
*(1) ***(July '19)***



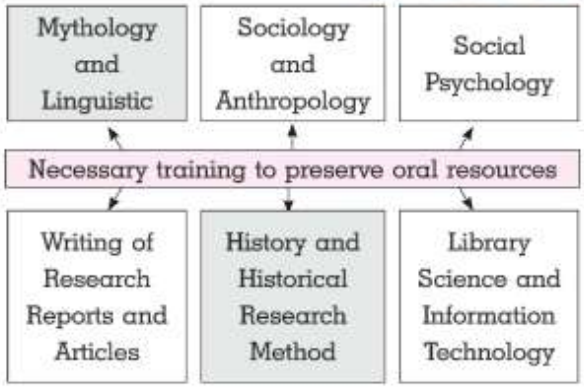
Ans.



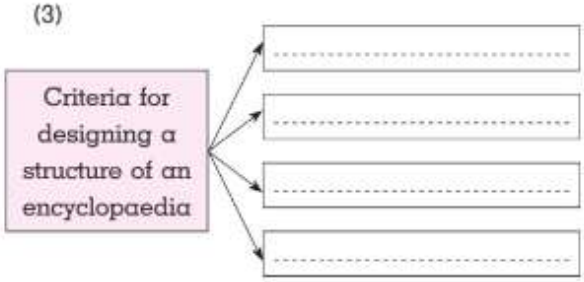
(2)



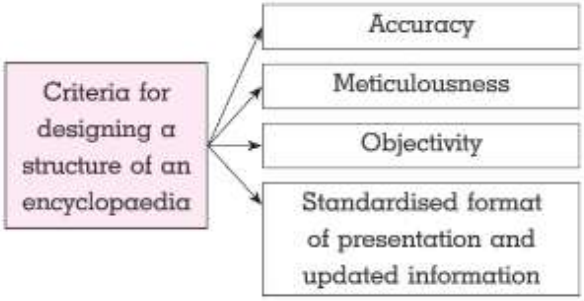
Ans.



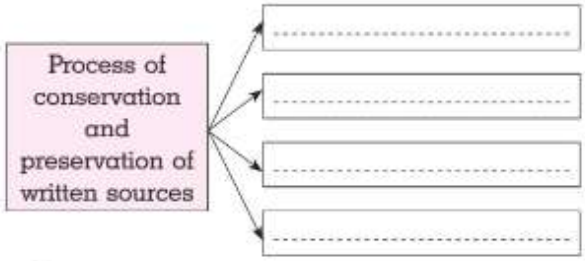
(3)



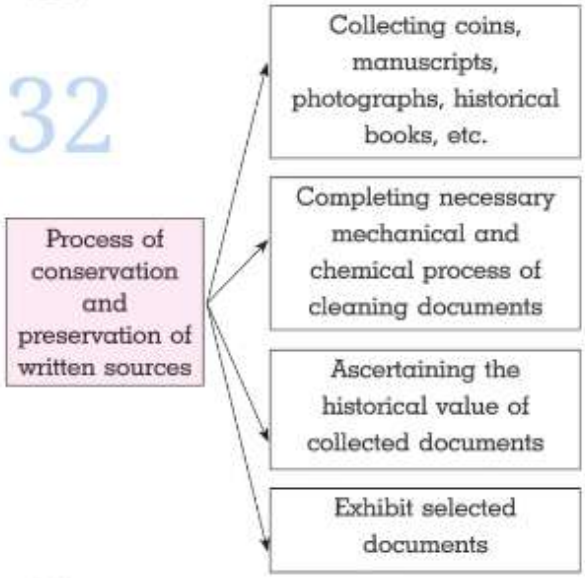
Ans.



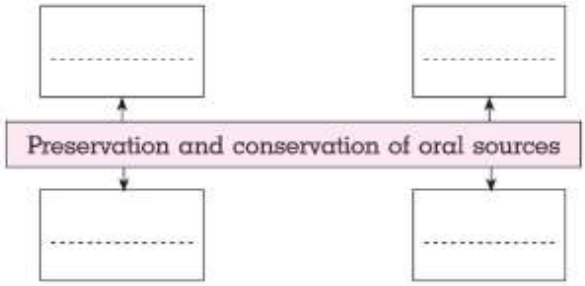
(4)



Ans.

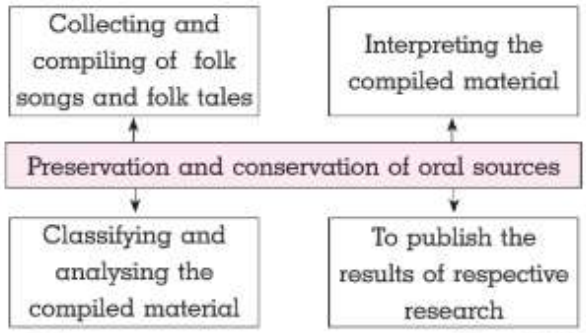


(5)

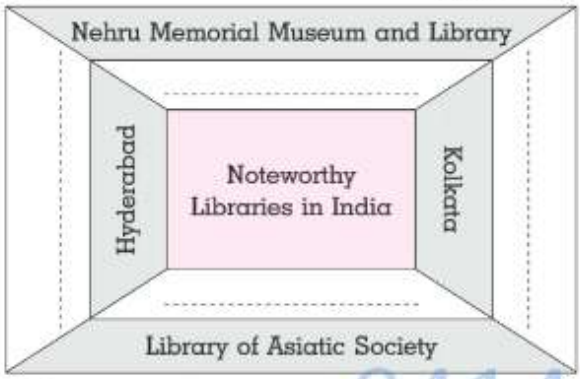


6414132

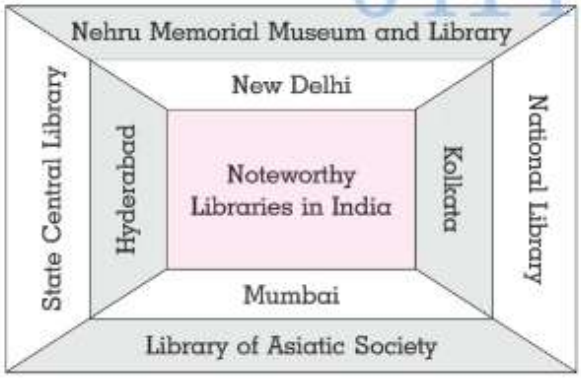
Ans.



(6) *(March '19)*



Ans.



64141322

Q. 4 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Sthalakosh :**

Ans. (1) History does not shape itself in oblivion. It takes place at some place.

(2) Geographic information is essential to study history.

(3) Chakradhar Swami, of Mahanubav sect, visited many villages and details of those villages were noted by Muni Vyas.

(4) Siddheshlarshastri Chitrav wrote Prachin Bharatiya Sthalakosh. It gives us information on various places mentioned in Vedic literature, Kautiliya's Arthashastra, Panini's Grammar, Ramayana, Mahabharata and also in Buddhist, Jain, Greek, Chinese and Persian literature.

(5) Sthalakosh gives us information on ancient cities and history of those cities. It serves as an important written source of history.

***(2) Vishwakosh :**

Ans. (1) The first Chief Minister of Maharashtra, Shri Yashwantrao Chavan, established the 'Maharashtra Rajya Sahitya Samskruti Mandal'.

(2) The objective of making Vishwakosh was to develop and enhance Marathi language and literature.

(3) Tarkteerth Lakshmanshastri Joshi was appointed as the chief editor. 20 volumes of Vishwakosh are published till date.

(4) Marathi Vishwakosh contains knowledge about all possible subjects which exist in the world. It has important entries about history.

***(3) Samdnya Kosh :**

Ans. (1) While studying any subject we come across many new words. If their exact meaning is not understood, it can create a lot of confusion.

(2) Terms in history like colonialism, imperialism, liberalisation, globalisation, socialism, communism need explanation and clarity. In order to avoid such confusions, this kosh is prepared.

(3) In Samdnya Kosh, all subject-related concepts are collected and explained. Information on what led to the development of concepts is provided.

(4) Samdnya Kosh is very helpful for research students, teachers of history as well as common people.

***(4) Saraswati Mahal Granthalay :**

Ans. (1) The Saraswati Mahal Granthalay was built in 16-17th century in Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu during the reign of Nayak Dynasty.

(2) In 1675, Maharaj Vyankojiraje Bhosale conquered Thanjavur and established his independent rule. He and his successors contributed to the expansion of this library.

(3) Sarfojiraje Bhosale contributed the most in expanding and enriching the library. Because of his contribution, to honour him, the library was renamed as 'The Thanjavur Maharaj Sarfoji's Saraswati Mahal Library'.

(5) Louvre Museum :

Ans. (1) The Louvre Museum in Paris was established in the 18th century.

(2) It has antiquities collected by the royal family of France.

(3) The world famous painting of Mona Lisa by Leonardo-da-Vinci is kept in this museum.

(4) The antiquities brought back by Napoleon Bonaparte on his return from conquests are exhibited in this museum.

(5) Presently, the museum has more than 3 lakh and 80 thousand artefacts.

(6) British Museum :

Ans. (1) The British Museum was established in the 18th century in London.

(2) It has a collection of 71 thousand objects given by natural scientist Sir Hans Sloan to King George II.

(3) Several books, pictures, specimens of preserved plants are included in it.

(4) The ancient objects and artefacts which the Britishers have collected from their colonies are exhibited in this museum.

(5) At present, it has about 80 lakh objects in its collection.

(7) National Museum of Natural History :

Ans. (1) The National Museum of Natural History was established in Washington DC in 1846.

(2) The Smithsonian Institute managed the museum from its inception. This is a museum of natural history.

(3) Remains of animals, plants, organisms and thousands of specimens of fossils are kept in it.

(4) It also has human fossils, minerals, rocks, shells, artefacts. All together it has a collection of more than 12 crore (120 million).

(8) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay :

Ans. (1) Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay was built to commemorate the visit of Prince of Wales to India. Some influential residents in Mumbai decided to establish a museum in 1904.

(2) The foundation of the building was laid on 2nd November 1905 and the construction was completed in 1922. The museum was named as 'Prince of Wales of Western India'. In 1998 C.E. it was renamed as 'Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay.'

(3) The museum building is constructed in Indo-Gothic style and has been awarded the status of Grade I heritage building.

(4) The museum has about 50 thousand antiquities which are divided into three categories, viz., Arts, Archaeology and Natural History.

(9) Bharatvarshiya Prachin Aitihasik Kosh :

Ans. (1) Raghunath Bhaskar Godbole wrote Bharatvarshiya Prachin Aitihasik Kosh.

(2) It is the first dictionary of Biography in Indian regional language.

(3) We get information on Manu and many ancient personalities from Mahabharat.

(4) We come to know about legendary people who lived in Bharatvarsha and were renowned. Information about their women, their sons, religions, lands, capitals, mountains and rivers which flowed in their land..... their entire history is given in this encyclopaedia.

(10) Encyclopaedia : ***(July '19)***

Ans. (1) Encyclopaedia can be defined as a systematic compilation of words with meaning, information or knowledge on various topics.

(2) A specific method is adopted to compile the information or to organise the available knowledge.

(3) Accuracy, meticulousness, objectivity, standardised format of presentation and updated information are the special features of good encyclopaedia.

(4) The objective of making an encyclopaedia is to make the available knowledge easily accessible to the readers.

(11) Dictionaries :

Ans. (1) A type of encyclopaedia giving word meaning arranged in alphabetical order is a Dictionary.

6414132

(2) Dictionaries help the readers to know meaning of the words and enrich their vocabulary.

(3) Dictionaries have word meanings, synonyms and etymology.

(4) Dictionaries are of various type like comprehensive dictionaries, dictionaries of terminology, etymology, thesaurus and dictionaries of idioms and proverbs.

(12) Comprehensive Encyclopaedia (Vishwakosh) :

Ans. (1) Comprehensive Encyclopaedia (Vishwakosh) means a book which has information on all subjects known, i.e. all subjects under the sun.

(2) Vishwakosh is an important medium of documenting and disseminating information.

(3) The information is included in encyclopaedia after thorough research and study.

(4) (a) There are two types of encyclopaedia – one that includes all subjects like 'Encyclopaedia Britannica', Maharashtriya Dnyankosh, Marathi Vishvakosh. (b) The other type of encyclopaedia includes comprehensive information on one chosen subject, e.g. Bharatiya Samskruti Kosh', 'Vyayam Dnyankosh'.

6414132

(13) Index :

Ans. (1) Index means a list.

(2) Index is at the end of a book which includes alphabetical lists of individuals, subjects, key words, reference books, etc.

(3) As the list is in alphabetical order, the reader finds it easy to access required information.

(4) The index of Marathi periodicals prepared by S. G. Date and index of 'Marathyancha Itihasachi Sadhane' is well-known.

(14) Charitrakosh (Encyclopaedia of Biographies) :

Ans. (1) Charitrakosh contained biographies of individuals who lived in a particular period and their work which inspired and motivated all the people in the society.

(2) Charitrakosh enables the researcher and scholars to know about the historic period, with regard to social structure and social life.

(3) Bharatvarshiya Prachin Aitihasik Kosh written by Raghunath Bhaskar Godbole is the earliest encyclopaedia of this kind.

(15) Bharatiya Samskruti Kosh : *(March '19)*

Ans. (1) It contains the description of Indian history, geography, religions, sects, culture, traditions, beliefs, ethnic and lingual groups residing in our country.

(2) Bharatiya Samskruti Kosh throws light on people living in a particular region, festivals and their culture.

(3) Mahadevshastri Joshi edited and published 10 volumes of this Kosh.

Q. 5 Explain the following statements with reasons : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Archives and libraries publish research journals, informative pamphlets, leaflets, posters etc. *(July '19; March '20)

Ans. (1) Libraries preserve and conserve old books and artefacts discovered during excavation.

(2) If these documents and artefacts are not exhibited then they are kept in archives.

(3) All the historical sources are our assets and they should reach the people.

(4) Libraries not only preserve these documents but also carry out research, to know the authenticity.

In order to make the historical events, personalities, and historical research known to the people, archives and libraries publish research journals, informative pamphlets and leaflets.

(2) Only trained persons who are duly qualified can take up the tasks involved in the work of conservation and preservation. *(Nov. '20)

Ans. (1) Conservation and preservation involves several steps like collecting the sources of history, creating their records and indexes.

(2) After completing necessary treatment the manuscripts, old books and artefacts are exhibited.

(3) Person who handles them needs specific skill in handling the artefacts and their management.

Therefore, only trained persons who are duly qualified can take up these tasks.

(3) Encyclopaedias should be created in as many languages as possible. *(July '19)*

Ans. Encyclopaedias symbolise the richness and vast gamut of words a language has.

(1) It fulfils the curiosity of readers and solves the confusion of a layman.

(2) Encyclopaedias inspire to carry out more research as one gets information, knowledge and references.

(3) Encyclopaedias provide complete information and knowledge to researchers and students which enriches their previous knowledge.

(4) Encyclopaedias represent intellectual and cultural development of a society.

Many languages in India and the world are rich and resourceful and hence encyclopaedias should be created in as many languages as possible to raise intellectual level of society.

(4) Encyclopaedia and history are related.

Ans. (1) Encyclopaedias contain information about personalities, events and ancient cultures.

(2) In order to gather information it is essential to take the help of history,

(3) The common factors between an encyclopaedia and history are objectivity and authenticity.

(4) Research scholars of history need to refer to encyclopaedias to find information on events, personalities, concept, places, etc. as encyclopaedias are created with the help of history.

Hence encyclopaedia and history are related.

(5) Improved versions of Encyclopaedia or supplements to original editions need to be published.

Ans. (1) Encyclopaedia is a systematic compilation of information or knowledge on various topics ranging from people, places and events to concepts, word meanings, etc.

(2) With the passage of time the spectrum of knowledge has widened.

(3) With the advent of new technology new words are added. Latest or updated information, knowledge, concepts enrich the language.

(4) The references of the past events change in context of the new research. If all these changes are not incorporated in the encyclopaedias, they will become outdated.

Therefore, encyclopaedia or supplements to original editions need to be published.

Q. 6 Read the following passage and answer the following questions : *(4 marks)*

Textbook page 64

Encyclopaedia and ... ... of a society.

(1) Which factors influence Encyclopaedia? (1)

Ans. The influence of national policies, ethical values and ideals, philosophy and traditions is seen in an encyclopaedia.

(2) What is the common factor between history and encyclopaedia? (1)

Ans. History and encyclopaedia both are objective.

(3) Explain the statement : Encyclopaedias are looked upon as outstanding achievements of a society. (2)

Ans. (1) The knowledge in all the spheres of society is made accessible to everyone is the major reason behind making an encyclopaedia.

(2) What inspires people to create encyclopaedia is the instinct to gain knowledge and spread it.

(3) Encyclopaedias reflect the collective intellect and creativity of society.

(4) One develops a sense of pride after knowing about nation's progress through it.

Hence encyclopaedias are looked upon as outstanding achievements of a society.

Q. 7 Give elaborate answers to the following : *(3 marks each)*

***(1) Why is library management important?** *(March '19)*

Ans. Library is not just about a collection of books but managing it is equally important.

(1) Readers can easily get the books they want if the library is properly organised.

(2) The location of the book should be easily traced. It saves the time and efforts of readers as well as the librarian.

(3) Preservation and conservation of books is done effectively with proper management. It prolongs life of books and causes less damage.

(4) If the management is well acquainted, they will have good collection that will make available good quality books to reader.

(5) Instead of collecting books on one subject there should be variety in the collection so as to cater of different readers who are very selective in their choices.

(6) Facilities like proper catalogues, indexes, computerised systems and modern facilities are provided by effective management of library.

(7) If the management is creative it will organise exhibitions, advertise, have seasonal offers for vacations, conduct competitions to increase membership.

(Note : *The information provided in the textbook is insufficient.) (Write any six points.)*

(2) Which tasks are important in archives' management?** ***(Nov. '20)

6414132

Ans. The following tasks are important in archives' management :

(1) Important documents to be preserved and care should be taken that document with important contents are preserved in their original condition. Confidentiality of important papers should be maintained.

(2) To classify the documents by preparing indexes and to create accurate systems of retrieval of documents.

(3) Documents from the archives are supposed to be very reliable. Therefore, it is important to safeguard the papers from humidity, fungus and other environmental factors.

(4) It is important to remain updated with latest technology in archive management.

(5) Computerise/Digitalise all systems. To make use of information technology in managing libraries and archives.

(6) To establish regional and local archives.

(7) To preserve national, cultural and historical heritage.

(8) To create a hasslefree system.

(Note : *The information provided in the chapter is not sufficient.) (Write any six points.)*

(3) What kind of training is required to study written sources? ***(March '20)***

Ans. While studying and handling written sources the following training is required :

(1) The students should have knowledge of scripts like Brahmi, Modi, Persian and their development.

(2) They should know ways to obtain information about the social organisations and traditions.

(3) They should know about the literature and writing style in past societies.

(4) They should have basic knowledge about administrative systems, dynasties and cultures of the past.

(5) They should study prevalent schools of painting and sculpture.

(6) They should be able to collect information on types of paper, know about ink and colour of ancient document and ways to handle.

(7) They should be well acquainted with properties of stones and metals used for inscriptions.

(8) Articles published earlier on case study should be read.

(9) They should know the chemicals and equipment used in various processes of cleaning and preserving the documents.

(10) Modern know-how of approaches of managing exhibitions in museums, galleries and information technology.

***(Note :** Write any six points.)*

(4) What kind of training is required to study material sources?

Ans. Student should have following knowledge to study material resource :

(1) They should have basic knowledge of archaeological method and theory.

(2) They should be acquainted with the history of ancient civilisations.

(3) They should have knowledge of various techniques of excavation.

(4) Stones, minerals and clay used to make artefacts and their characteristics to be studied.

(5) They should be well-acquainted with the sources of the material used and their chemical properties.

(6) They should also know about various styles of making artefacts and development in their making process.

(7) They should have the knowledge and skills of making replicas of artefacts and fossils.

(8) They should read research papers previously published on his case study.

(9) They should acquire information about the approaches of arranging exhibitions and administrations.

(10) They should know about the equipment and chemicals necessary for the cleaning of artefacts.

(11) They should be able to write research reports and articles.

(Note : Write any six points.)

(5) Write information about museums in India.

Ans. (1) 'Indian Museum' established by the Asiatic Society of Bengal in Kolkata was the first museum in India in 1814.

6414132

(2) The 'Government Museum' established in Chennai in 1851 C.E. was the second museum in India. The National Museum was established in Delhi in 1949.

(3) The foundation of the Prince of Wales Museum was laid in Mumbai in 1905. Its construction was completed in 1922. It was renamed as Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vastusangrahalay in 1998 C.E.

(4) At present, there are many museums in various states of India.

(5) Many museums are connected to libraries and archives. Some are connected to Universities.

(6) Such museums offer courses in Museology also.

(6) Give information on National Archives of India.

Ans. (1) The first official archive of India was established in Kolkata in 1891 C.E. as the 'Imperial Record Department'.

(2) It was moved to Delhi in 1911 C.E.

(3) In 1998 C.E. it was made accessible to the public by the then President of India K.R. Narayanan.

(4) It was renamed as 'National Archive' (National Archive of India). Archives come under the Ministry of Culture of the Indian Government.

(5) This archive has papers, maps, books and micro films preserved in chronological order since 1748.

(6) Records in English, Arabic, Hindi, Persian, Sanskrit, Devanagari and Modi languages are preserved.

(7) Papers kept in archives are classified into public, oriental, manuscripts and private papers.

(8) The National Archives of India is the largest in Asia and technologically advanced.

(Note : Write any six points.)

(7) Explain the statement : A nation should have museums and libraries.

Ans. Museums and libraries mirror the history of the country and that is the reason they are very valuable for a nation.

(1) Museums and libraries make it easy for the research scholar to write history.

(2) Historical events and life stories of important people reach the masses.

(3) People get an idea about past social, political and cultural conditions.

(4) A visit to museums increases one's interest.

(5) A change in prejudiced view about history is seen.

(6) Information on animals, microorganisms, birds and elements of nature.

(7) Museums contribute to the process of gaining and dissemination of knowledge.

(8) Ancient historical sources are preserved.

(9) Tourism is promoted.

(10) It creates opportunities for employment.

Hence it can be said that it is important for a nation to have museums and libraries as they both are symbols of nation's progress and glory.

(Note : Write any six points.)

(8) What methods should be followed while studying material source? ***(July '19)***

Ans. The following methods should be followed by research scholars while studying material source :

(1) To collect the artefacts and classify them according to their historical date and type and prepare indexes.

(2) To arrange exhibitions of selected artefacts or their replicas.

(3) To write and publish research articles about artefacts.

(4) To complete required mechanical and chemical processes of cleaning for conservation and preservation of the collected documents.

(9) Give information on early encyclopaedias made in the west.

Ans. (1) The process of making encyclopaedia started in before 1st century C.E. in the west. Pliny wrote the first encyclopaedia on natural history between 23 C.E.–79 C.E.

(2) In the 8th and 9th century, encyclopaedias were written in England, France and in Arab countries.

(3) French Philosopher Denis Diderot wrote Encyclopaedia in the 18th century C.E.

(4) The important milestone in this process was 'Encyclopaedia Britannica' published in 1767 C.E.

(5) Wikipedia is considered equivalent to encyclopaedia. The information given in this encyclopaedia is highly reliable and updated.

(10) Write about ancient Indian encyclopaedias.

Ans. (1) In the 7th century C.E., Nighantu, a dictionary (information on ancient medicine) in Sanskrit language was written. Dictionaries like Dhatupath were written.

(2) In the medieval times, encyclopaedic text was composed by Mahanubhav sect.

(3) Amarsimha wrote a thesaurus in Sanskrit 'Amarkosha'.

(4) Raghunath Pandit prepared Rajavyavaharkosh as directed by Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj.

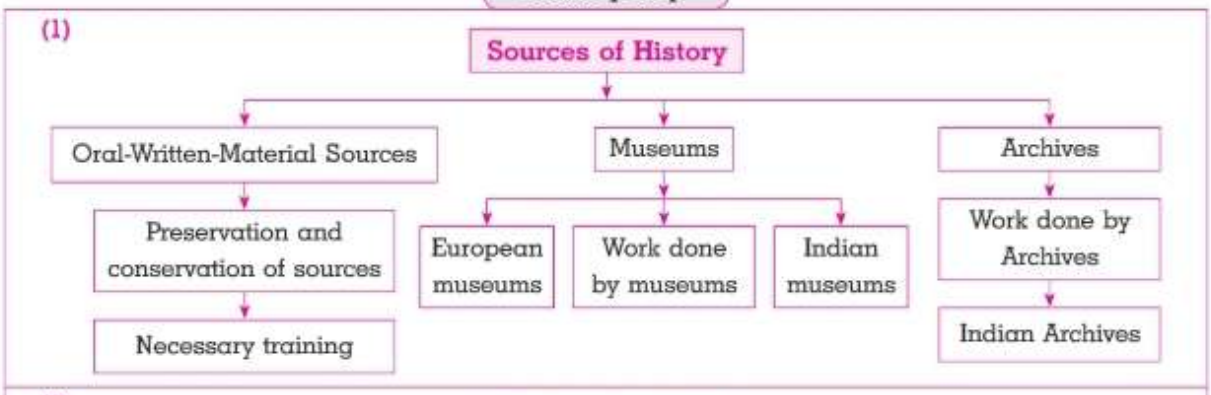
6414132

Project

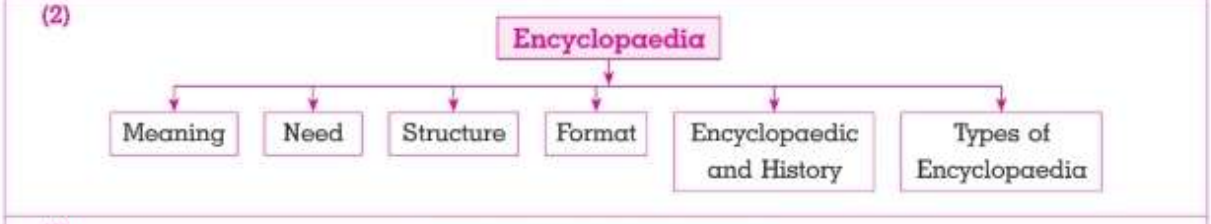
- Obtain information about important libraries In Maharashtra. Visit a library in your vicinity and learn about its functions.

Memory Map

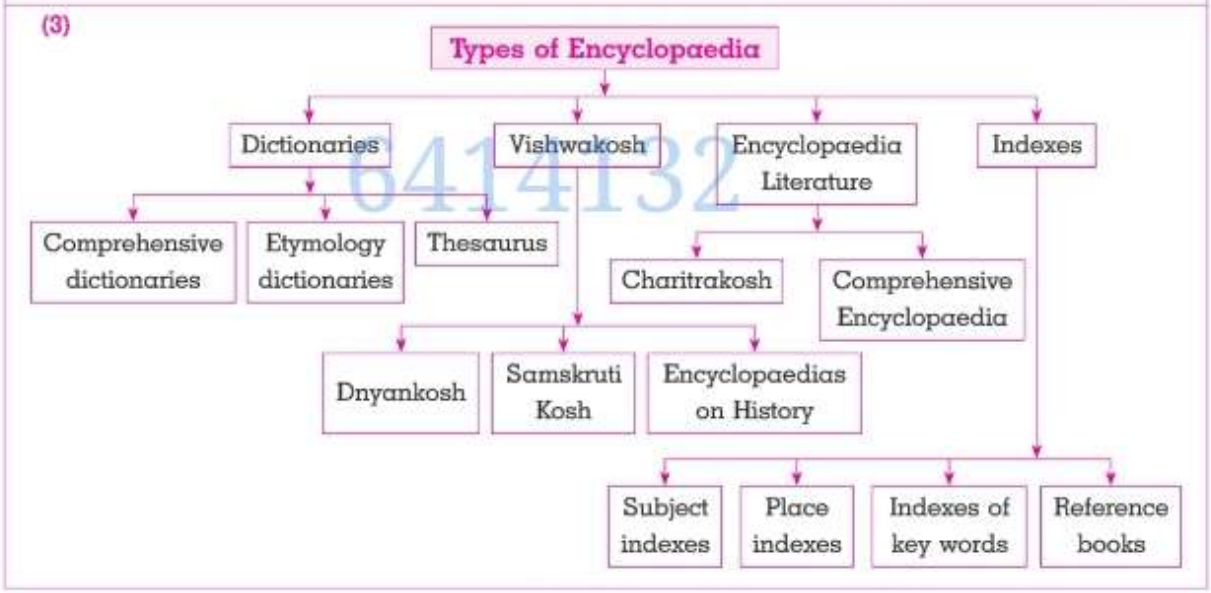
(1)



(2)



(3)



6414132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

POLITICAL SCIENCE

1 WORKING OF THE CONSTITUTION

IMPORTANT POINTS

1.1 Indian Constitution :

(1) Indian Constitution came into force on 26th January, 1950.

(2) The objectives of the Indian Constitution is to establish a socialist secular democratic Republic state.

(3) Important provisions are made in the Constitution so that people can easily secure justice and their freedom is safeguarded.

(4) The Constitution is a key element in forming a progressive society based on social justice and equality.

1.2 Democracy :

(1) Political Maturity :

(1) Democracy becomes an integral part of social life if it is practised. Keeping in mind these objectives, we have introduced the representative structure. With this, democracy becomes an integral part of the political life of the society.

(2) People have direct representation in the Parliament, State Legislature and local government.

(3) Free and fair elections are conducted at regular intervals in India. It is an important indicator of India's successful democracy.

(4) Citizens cast their votes weighing the public issues and policies related to it. The increasing participation of people in the political arena shows success of Indian democracy.

(2) Right to Vote :

(1) The democratic system in India is based on the principle of adult suffrage.

(2) The voting right is given equally to men and women, both.

(3) Earlier the age to vote was 21 years. Later it was reduced to 18 years.

(4) As the age limit was reduced from 21 to 18, it provided the unrepresented youth of the country an opportunity to become part of political process.

(5) It increased the scope of democracy by including the youth of the country, thus making India the largest democracy in the world.

(6) The change which came in with largest number of voters is quantitative as well as qualitative.

(7) The political parties emerge with active support of new young voters representing different expectations of the people and also leading to competition in the political sphere.

(3) Decentralisation of Democracy :

(1) Indian Constitution divided the power between the centre, state and local self-governing bodies. It is called decentralisation of power.

(2) The provision for decentralisation is embedded in the Directive Principles of State Policy.

(3) It helps in curbing misuse of power and allows common people's participation.

(4) The guidelines about empowering the local self-governing bodies are given in the Directive Principles of State Policy.

(5) 73rd and 74th amendments to the Constitution have given constitutional status to the local self-governing bodies and increased their powers.

(4) Right to Information (R. T. I. 2005) :

(1) It is important to empower citizens in democracy.

(2) Citizens should get more opportunities to interact with government.

6414132

(3) Right to information helps in promoting harmony between the government and people.

(4) It helped to reduce secrecy which surrounded the functioning of the government. Thus, its working has become more transparent.

(5) After the year 2000, the citizens of India have got Right to Information, Right to Education and Right to Food Security.

Do You Know? (Textbook Page 70)

- **Rights Based Approach :**

(1) Many changes were brought about after independence to improvise democracy.

(2) Till the year 2000, the perspective of the government towards the people was that of 'Beneficiary'.

(3) However, this attitude was changed and the new approach was adopted which considered development as the right of the citizen.

(4) Rights based approach made democracy stronger.

6414132

1.3 Social Justice and Equality :

(1) Objectives of Constitution :

(1) A new progressive society based on values of **social justice** and **equality** was the objective set by the Constitution.

(2) The Government as well as people should strive to fulfill these objectives.

(2) To establish social justice means :

(1) To remove conditions responsible for injustice.

(2) To insists on equality of dignity for all individuals.

(3) No discrimination on the basis of caste, religion, language, place of birth, gender, race, property, etc.

(4) Equal opportunity should be given to all the individuals to achieve development.

(3) All-inclusive Democracy :

(1) Efforts are made at all levels of society to establish justice and equality.

(2) It is important to include all sections of the society into the mainstream for democracy to be all inclusive.

(4) Efforts to reduce inequality :

(A) Policy of Reservation of Seats :

(1) Reservation of seats is for those sections of society who have been denied opportunities of education and employment over a long periods of time.

(2) Some seats are reserved for the Schedule Castes and Schedule Tribes in educational institutions and public sector undertakings.

(3) Seats are reserved for Other Backward Classes as well.

(B) The Scheduled Castes and Tribes Act (Prevention of Atrocities Act) :

(1) Prevention of Atrocities Act was passed to establish a society based on social justice and equality.

(2) This Act prevents any injustice done to Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.

(3) Anyone found guilty of committing any Act is liable for punishment.

(C) Provisions for Minorities :

(1) The government adopted various policies for the minorities in education and employment.

(2) The Constitution has prohibited any form of discrimination on the basis of caste, race, religion, language and region.

(3) For the protection of the rights of minorities, the Constitution has adopted various measures like equality, freedom, right against exploitation, cultural as well as educational rights.

(D) Laws for women :

(1) Several policies have been adopted in the post-independence period for empowering women.

(2) Provisions were made in the Constitution to provide opportunities for progress.

(3) Many laws were passed to empower them. They are :

(a) Right to equal share in the property of father and husband.

(b) Dowry Prohibition Act.

(c) Act against sexual harassment.

(d) Domestic Violence Prohibition Act.

(E) Representation of Women :

(1) The 73rd and 74th constitutional amendment reserved 33% seats for women in local self-governing bodies.

(2) This reservation has been increased to 50% in Maharashtra and many other states.

(3) For mitigating injustice meted out to women, National Commission for Women has been established. Similarly commissions were set up at the state level also.

(4) The Domestic Violence Prohibition Act underlined the need to protect the prestige and self-esteem of women.

(5) It rejected any form of dominance and authoritarianism.

(6) Inhuman practices were banned by law and traditional dominance was refuted which gave momentum to the women liberation movement.

• Some Amendments to the Constitution of India :

(1) Twenty-sixth amendment (1971) : Abolished titles and special privileges given to the royal families. All allowances paid to the royal families were stopped by the Central government.

(2) Thirty-sixth amendment (1975) : Sikkim included as an Indian state.

(3) Sixty-first Amendment (1989) : reduced voting age from 21 to 18 years.

(4) Seventy-third Amendment (1993) : Constitutional Status was provided to Panchayati Raj.

64141132

1.4 Role of Judiciary :

(1) The basic framework of the Constitution :

(1) Power has been entrusted to Parliament to make changes in the Constitution as per the changing conditions.

(2) Changes were made with several amendments as per the need. This has made the Constitution dynamic and a living document instead of being a rigid one.

(2) Role :

(1) The judiciary has played an important role in strengthening democracy and achieve objectives of social justice and equality in India.

(2) Judiciary is given the power to interpret the Constitution.

(3) The Judiciary has specified the limitations of the Parliament while amending the Constitution.

(4) Parliament has no power to alter the basic structure of the Constitution which proclaims India to be a sovereign democratic secular republic.

Please understand : (Textbook page No. 73)

• The basic structure of Constitution :

(1) Republican and democratic form of government.

(2) Federal structure of the Constitution.

(3) Promotion of unity and integrity of the nation.

(4) Secularism and supremacy of the Constitution.

(3) Significant decisions of the Judiciary :

(1) Safeguarding rights of children

(2) Protection of human rights

(3) Protection of the honour and dignity of women

(4) Individual freedom

(5) Tribal empowerment

These verdicts have helped Indian democracy and political process to become mature.

This is important to understand! (Textbook Page 73)

• Features of Good Governance :

(1) Responsible government, i.e. accountability.

(2) Efficient and effective government.

(3) Responsive to people's demand.

(4) Transparent administration.

(5) Just and all-inclusive development.

(6) People's participation in governing and decision-making process.

Q. 1 Complete the sentences by choosing the correct option : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) In Maharashtra, ... seats are reserved for women in local self-governing institutions. ***(July '19)***

(a) 25% (b) 30% (c) 40% (d) 50%

*(2) Which of the following laws created a favourable environment for women to secure freedom and self-development?

(a) Right to Information Act
(b) Dowry Prohibition Act
(c) Food Security Act
(d) None of the above

*(3) The essence of democracy is ..... ***(March '19-'20)***

(a) Universal adult franchise
(b) Decentralization of power
(c) Policy of reservation of seats
(d) Judicial decisions

(4) Right to Information came into force from .....

(a) 2002 (b) 2004 (c) 2005 (d) 2006

(5) The Indian government has been working in accordance with principle of the .....

(a) Parliament (b) President
(c) Constitution (d) Party

Ans. (1) 50% (2) Dowry Prohibition Act (3) Decentralization of power (4) 2005 (5) Constitution.

[2]

(1) Men and women above ..... years of age can vote in India.

(a) 15 (b) 18 (c) 21 (d) 25

(2) ..... can make amendments to the Constitution. ***(Nov. '20)***

(a) President (b) Prime Minister
(c) Council of Ministers (d) Parliament

(3) ..... got recognition because of 73rd and 74th Amendments to the Constitution.

(a) Parliament
(b) Local self-governing institutions
(c) Legislative council
(d) Cooperative societies

(4) ..... has made the government more transparent.

(a) Equality (b) Freedom
(c) Right to Information (d) Social Justice

(5) ..... and ..... are two features of good governance.

(a) Popular, populist
(b) Efficient, democratic
(c) Transparent, responsible
(d) Equality, decentralization

(6) The ..... has given the guidelines to establish a new society based on social justice and equality.

(a) local government bodies
(b) court
(c) Constitution
(d) social organisation

Ans. (1) 18 (2) Parliament (3) Local self-governing institutions (4) Right to Information (5) Transparent, responsible (6) Constitution.

6414132

Q. 2 State whether the following statements are True or False. Give reasons for your answer : *(2 marks each)*

(1) Indian democracy is considered the largest democracy in the world. *(March '20)

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) Indian Constitution cancelled all the conditions which were put for voting before independence thereby increasing the number of voters.

(2) The Constitution adopted adult suffrage which has facilitated all adult men and women to cast their vote.

(3) The age limit to vote was reduced to 18 years from 21 years which gave opportunity of political participation to the young generation. No other democratic country in the world has voters in such large numbers.

Hence, Indian democracy is the largest democracy in the world.

(2) Secrecy in the working of Government had increased due to Right to Information.** ***(July '19)

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

(1) To strengthen democracy and increase mutual trust between the government and the people, it is very important that the people should know about the functioning of the government.

(2) Transparency and accountability are the hallmarks of good governance.

(3) With Right to Information given to the citizens, Government became more transparent. Thus, the Right to Information has reduced element of secrecy in administration.

(3) The Constitution is a living document.** ***(March '19; July '19; Nov. '20)

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) Parliament has the powers to make changes in the Constitution according to the changing circumstances and conditions.

(2) However, it should be done without tampering or changing the basic structure of the Constitution.

(3) As it has kept itself abreast with the changes, the Constitution became a live and dynamic document instead of a rigid one.

(4) Indian democracy is evidently unsuccessful.

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

(1) India has the largest number of voters as compared to any other democratic nation in the world.

(2) Free and fair elections which are held regularly is the key for successful democracy.

(3) Recurring elections have helped in understanding the political process. As the voting age was reduced from 21 to 18 years, the political participation has increased.

(4) Increasing participation of the people in the political process and political contest shows that Indian democracy is successful.

(5) There is less friction in all inclusive democracy.

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) To establish social justice and equality is the aim of democracy.

(2) If all the sections of society are given equal opportunities without any discrimination then all components come into the main stream.

(3) In fact, democracy is the process of accommodating different sections of society which ultimately reduces the social conflict.

Q. 3 Explain the following concepts : ***(2 marks each)***

***(1) Rights Based Approach :**

Ans. (1) India adopted democracy after independence. Each government which came to power took efforts to make the democratisation process more profound.

(2) In the initial stages, these governments considered citizens as 'beneficiaries'.

(3) After the year 2000, the approach towards citizens changed. Democratic reforms were considered as 'rights' of citizens.

(4) Hence, the Right to Information, Education and Food Security was granted not as beneficiaries but as rights of the citizens.

This approach is known as Rights Based Approach.

(2) Right To Information :** ***(March '19–'20)

Ans. (1) In order to bring transparency in the administration and make it accountable, Indian citizens are given Right to Information.

(2) Right to Information helped in promoting harmony between government and people and empowered the citizens.

(3) It brought transparency in administration, made the government realise that they are answerable to people.

(4) It has helped to reduce the element of secrecy which surrounded the functioning of the government. It made the government open and transparent.

(3) Decentralisation :

Ans. (1) Division of power within a country is known as Decentralisation.

(2) Under dictatorship and military rule, the power is centred around one person or a group of individuals.

(3) But in democracy the power is divided among Centre, States and Local Self-governing institutions. Decentralisation is the core of democracy.

6414182

(4) Decentralisation can stop the misuse of power and facilitate common people to participate in democracy.

(4) Prevention of Atrocities Act :

Ans. (1) The traditional caste system in Indian society has done a lot of injustice to the people belonging to Schedule Castes and Schedule Tribes.

(2) The Indian Constitution has declared in its objective to establish a society based on social justice and equality. So it is important to bring the people belonging to Schedule Castes and Schedule Tribes in the mainstream.

(3) Prevention of Atrocities Act is passed to prevent any form of injustice against the people belonging to the Schedule Castes and Schedule Tribes.

(4) If anyone commits any act of atrocity against them he is liable for punishment.

Q. 4 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

64141132

Note : *'Write Short Notes' will be asked under the question 'Explain the Concept'. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

***(1) Provisions regarding Minorities :**

Ans. (1) Constitution has adopted several measures for the protection of the rights of minorities.

(2) Several policies have been adopted by the government to provide them the opportunities in education and employment.

(3) The Constitution has prohibited any form of discrimination on the basis of caste, creed, religion, language and region.

(4) The Constitution provided rights to the minorities to protect and conserve their language, culture and establish educational institutions.

***(2) Policy of Reservation of Seats :**

Ans. (1) Some sections of Indian society were denied social justice.

(2) They were deprived of educational and employment opportunities. It was essential to bring them in the main stream of society.

(3) The policy was adopted to give reservation to Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes in educational institutions and public employment.

(4) Seats were also reserved for Other Backward Classes. Reservation policy gave the deprived classes justice and opportunities for development.

***(3) Women representation in Lok Sabha :**

Ans. (1) The Constitution of India empowers women by granting them equal status with men and equal political rights.

(2) 22 women were elected in the Lok Sabha elections held in 1951-52. Their number increased to 66 in 2014 elections.

(3) Reservation has been increased to 50% in local self-governing institutions in Maharashtra and in many other states.

(4) If the number of women representatives increased in Lok Sabha, it will help in reducing incidents of violence against women and increase their involvement in the decision-making process.

Q. 5 Complete the concept map : *(2 marks each)*

- **Complete the Concept Map :** *(March '19)*

(1)

Laws related to the protection of freedom of women and securing their development
- ----------
- ----------
- ----------
- ----------

Ans.

Laws related to the protection of freedom of women and securing their development
- Right to equal share in the Property of the Father and Husband.
- Prevention of Dowry Act
- Prevention of Domestic Violence Act
- Act against Sexual Harassment

(2) **Important to Understand :**

(Textbook page 73)

Participation of people in the governing and decision-making process | ..... | .....

Characteristics of good governance

..... | ..... | Accountable/ Responsible government

Ans.

Participation of people in the governing and decision-making process | Transparency in the working of the government | Responsive government

Characteristics of good governance

Just and All-inclusive development | Effective and efficient government | Accountable/ Responsible government

6414132

(3) **Please Understand : (Textbook page 73)**

Basic Principles enshrined in the Constitution
- .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

Ans.

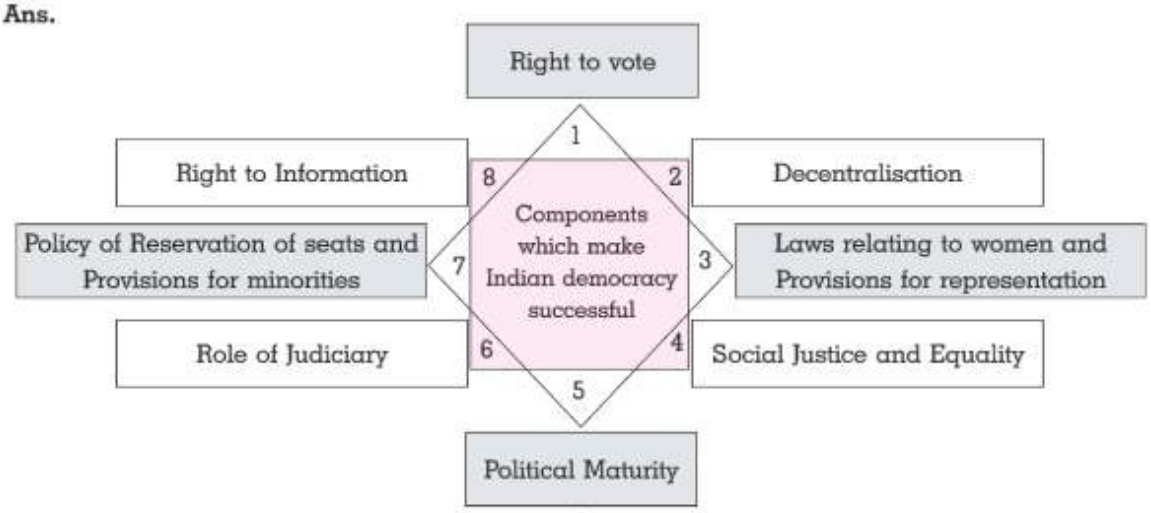
Basic Principles enshrined in the Constitution
- Republican and democratic form of the government
- Federal structure of the government
- Sovereignty of the nation
- Secularism and supremacy of the Constitution

(4)

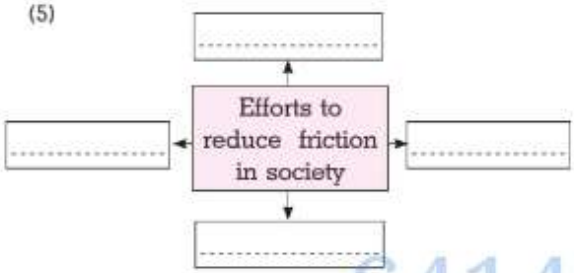
Components which make Indian democracy successful

1. Right to vote
2. .....
3. Laws relating to women and Provisions for representation
4. .....
5. Political Maturity
6. .....
7. Policy of Reservation of seats and Provisions for minorities
8. .....

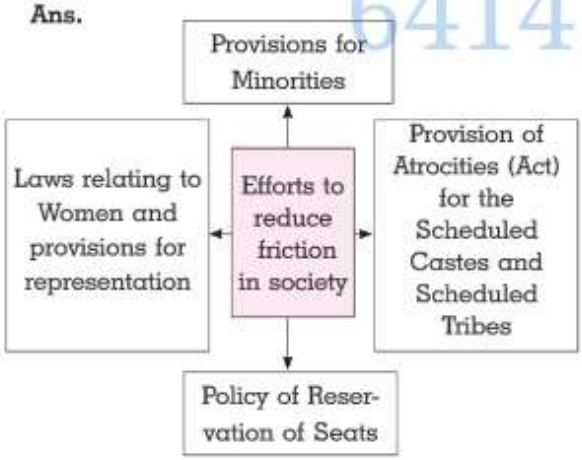
Ans.



(5)



Ans.



Q. 6 Answer the following questions in brief : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) What are the effects of reducing the voting age limit from 21 years to 18 years?**

Ans. (1) Earlier the Indian Constitution had fixed the voting age of 21 years.

(2) The voting age was lowered to 18 years.

(3) The young voters secured the right to vote and the increased number of voters was unparalleled.

(4) They got the right to decide how their representative should be.

(5) Moreover, it provided to the unrepresented youth an opportunity to become part of political process being literate and politically conscious.

(6) It increased the scope of democracy by including the youth of the country thus making it the largest democracy in the world.

***(2) What is meant by establishment of social justice?**

Ans. Establishing social justice means :

(1) To eliminate the practices and beliefs which are responsible for injustice towards a person or a community and which hampers collective progress of society should be eliminated.

(2) Government policies should be all inclusive which means it should aim at accommodating different sections of society.

(3) There should not be any discrimination based on caste, creed, religion, gender, language, property, region or place of birth.

(4) All should get equal opportunities for development.

***(3) Which decision of Court has resulted in the protection of honour and prestige of women?**

Ans. (1) The apex court has given several judgements which have helped in protection of honour and prestige of women.

(2) Court gave judgement on Right to alimony as well as Right to equal remuneration.

(3) Women have an equal share in the property of husband and father. This gave them financial

security. Dowry prohibition Act was a measure for women empowerment.

(4) The Act against sexual harrassment, Domestic Violence Prohibition Act are also very important in the direction of women empowerment.

(5) All these Acts emphasised the need to protect women and protect their self-esteem and dignity rejecting the traditional forms of domination and authoritarianism.

(Note : *No details are given in the textbook.*)

(4) What are the provisions made in the Directive Principles regarding decentralization?

Ans. The Directive Principles of the Indian Constitution has made provisions for decentralization of power. It means :

(1) Indian Constitution has divided the power between the centre, state and local self-governing institutions.

(2) The guidelines about empowering the local Self-governing bodies are given in the Constitution.

(3) After independence, 73rd and 74th Amendments to the Constitution in 1992 have given constitutional status to the local self-governing bodies.

(4) Due to this, there is increase in the participation by the people at grass root level. Democracy was put into practice which eventually got strengthened. Decentralisation curbed the misuse of power.

(5) What were the measures taken to increase the number of women in politics?

Ans. (1) The 73rd and 74th Constitutional Amendments provided reservation of 33% seats for women in local self-governing institutions.

(2) This reservation has been increased to 50% in Maharashtra and many other states.

(3) One-third seats and the offices (posts) of Sarpanch, Mayor, etc. are reserved for women. Several policies have been adopted to remove illiteracy among women and to make available opportunities for their development.

(4) A bill is tabled in the house to reserve 50% seats in Legislative Assembly and Parliament.

(6) The Judiciary in India has played an important role in strengthening democracy. Explain.

Ans. (1) The Judiciary has always taken into consideration the fundamental objectives of the Constitution and also the intention of its framers.

(2) While interpreting the Constitution, it has taken care that its basic structure is not altered as Constitution is foundation of our democracy.

(3) The important role played by judiciary is in strengthening and helping democracy to achieve the objectives of social justice and equality.

(7) Which particular Laws/Acts created a favourable environment for the protection of freedom of women and secure their development? ***(March '19)***

Ans. (1) Several policies have been adopted in the post-independence period for empowering women.

(2) Provisions were made in the Constitution to provide opportunities for progress.

(3) Many laws were passed to empower them. They are :

(a) Right to have equal share in the property of father and husband.

(b) Dowry Prohibition Act.

(c) Act against Sexual Harassment.

(d) Domestic Violence Prohibition Act.

Q. 7 Give Your Opinion : ***(2 marks each)***

Note : *'Give Your Opinion', the answer to this question should be written in accordance with chapter. As this is an open ended question, the answers given here are 'model' answers. This type of question can be asked in 'Answer in Brief.' No separate question will be asked.*

(1) What measures should be adopted to increase the number of women representatives in democracy?

Ans. Several restrictions were imposed in the name of traditions and practices, making the workspace of women limited to home.

(1) To curb injustice the representation of women should increase in all institutions. The

73rd and 74th Amendments reserved 33% of seats for women in local self-governing institutions.

(2) Access to more and more social and political fields should be made available for women. They should be involved in the decision-making process and work for their betterment.

(3) This would ultimately lead to eliminating injustice done to them and will enhance their self-respect and status.

(2) Do you agree that Indian democracy has become profound?

Ans. I entirely agree that Indian democracy has become profound.

(1) The Indian Constitution has laid down representative structure of democracy.

(2) The actual practice of the principles of democracy is the essence of representative system.

(3) People have direct representation in Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha and Local Self-Government Institutions.

(4) Free and fair elections are held at regular intervals to elect representatives.

(5) Citizens cast their votes weighing the public issues and policies related to it.

All the above factors show that Indian democracy has become profound.

(3) Do you think that citizens in India should have the right to employment?

(Discuss – Textbook page 70)

Ans. I agree that all Indian citizens should get employment.

(1) If they are deprived of employment opportunities their families would face hunger and starvation.

(2) Incident of crime will increase in society.

(3) Democracy will collapse leading to chaos.

(4) More and more employment opportunities should be generated for their progress.

(4) According to you, if everyone gets the right to shelter, how will it affect democracy in India? (Discuss – Textbook page 70)

Ans. (1) Food, clothing and shelter are the basic necessities of a man.

(2) Shelter is not only his necessity but also his right.

(3) A permanent need is to get settled in life. If a man gets a home, a large part of his struggle in life will come to an end.

(4) The financial burden will be low and he will work with honesty and will contribute in nation's progress.

(5) Home for all creates a healthy society. It has an all-round social, economical and psychological effect to strengthen democracy and make it profound.

(5) What steps should be taken to stop injustice done to the Backward Classes? *OR*

What efforts should be made to prevent atrocities? (Do this – Textbook page 71)

Ans. The backward classes have suffered for thousands of years. I feel the following measures will remove injustice done to the backward classes :

(1) Atrocities laws should be made stringent.

(2) Fast courts should be set up to handle such cases.

(3) Stringent punishment should be given if found guilty.

(4) Efforts should be made to improve economic status of the backward classes.

(5) The Government should make efforts to establish social justice and equality.

(6) What efforts should be made to bring in all the features of good governance in democracy?

Ans. For the successful functioning of democracy, good governance is very essential.

(1) People should elect good and professional candidates.

(2) People should keep watch on the work done by them.

(3) Corrupt candidates should not be elected or re-elected.

(4) People should respond to various policies which are beneficial for society.

6414132

(5) People should pressurise the government to start various developmental policies for country's progress.

Q. 8 Can you tell the reasons for the following changes? (Textbook Page 70)

(2 marks each)

Note : *'The statements given in the boxes in the Textbook can be asked in 'State whether the statement is True or False'.*

(1) Some seats were reserved for women to increase their participation in political process.

Ans. (1) Women empowerment movement started after independence.

(2) All the countries in the world started increasing number of women representatives.

(3) The 73rd and 74th Constitutional Amendments reserved 33% seats for women in local self-governing institutions.

(2) Some seats are kept reserved for weaker sections of the society so that they can get a share in political power.

64141132

Ans. (1) The weaker sections suffered injustice for thousand of years.

(2) The opportunities of education and employment had been denied to them.

(3) In order to establish social justice and equality, reservations are now given to the weaker sections.

(3) The State Election Commissions were set up.

Ans. (1) Elections for the Parliament and States Assemblies are conducted by the National Election Commission.

(2) It was impossible to put upon the local self-government bodies the responsibility of conducting elections. Hence the State Election Commissions were formed.

(4) 11th and 12th Schedules were added to the Constitution.

Ans. (1) The 11th schedule of Indian Constitution was added in 1992 by the 73rd Constitution Amendment Act. This Schedule contains 29 subjects related to the Panchayats.

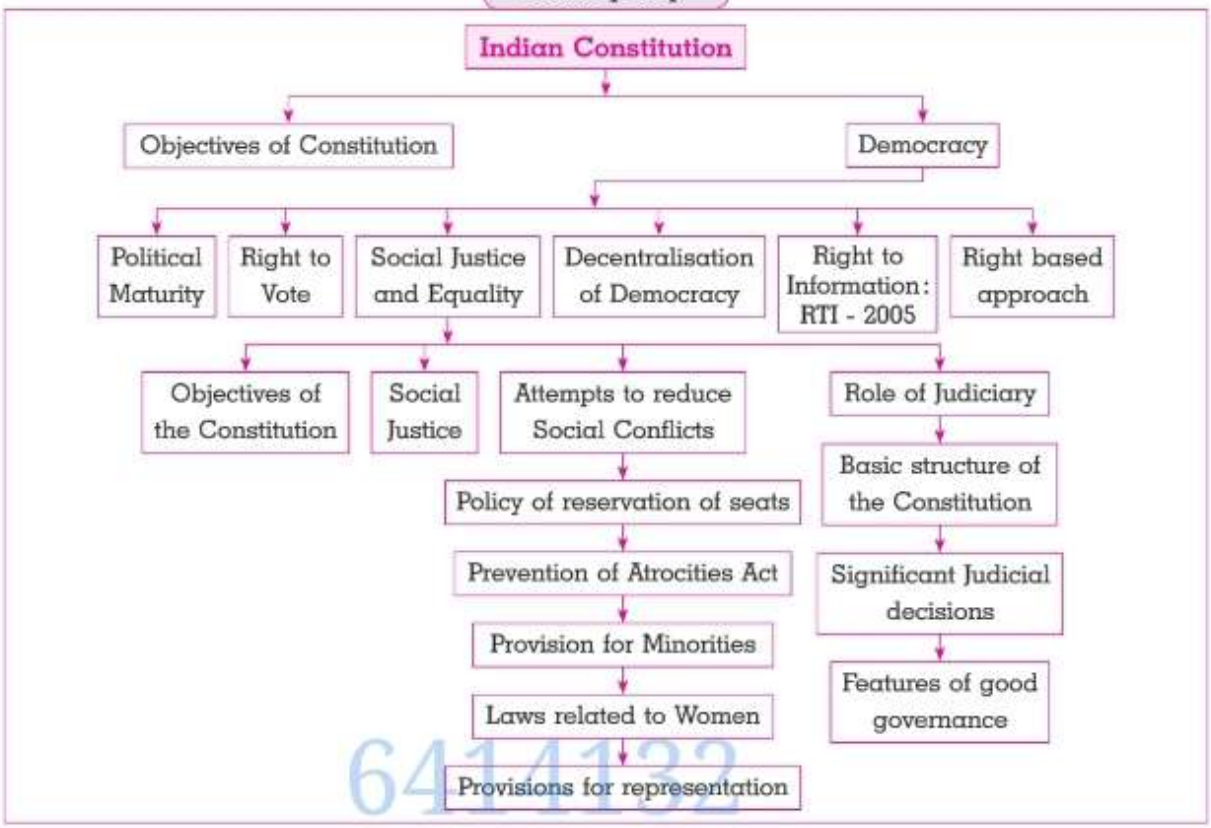
(2) The 74th Amendment to the Constitution added 12th Schedule and covered 18 subjects related to the Municipalities.

(3) It gave constitutional status to Municipalities and Panchayats and aimed to strengthen rural and urban governments so that they can function efficiently.

Project

(1) Which information can be secured with the help of Right to Information? Find out with the help of your teachers.
(2) Make a list of concessions given by the Government to the students of minority community.
(3) Visit the official website of National Election Commission and collect more information about it.
(4) Take an interview of women representatives from local self-governing institutions from your area.

Memory Map



6414132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

2 THE ELECTORAL PROCESS

IMPORTANT POINTS

2.1 Elections :

- **Importance of Elections :**
  (1) Election is a medium to elect representatives.
  (2) Election brings change in power through peaceful means.
  (3) Different political parties get a chance to rule.
  (4) Due to elections, changes are seen in government policies.
  (5) Society undergoes many types of changes. Democracy is sustained.

Do You Know? (Textbook Page 75)

(1) How should an elected representative be?
(1) Responsible (2) Give preference to the welfare of people. (3) Efficient

(2) Representative Democracy :
(1) It is impossible for all the people to participate in everyday administration and decision-making process.
(2) And so, the people elect their representatives. Some people get elected on behalf of entire population as representatives.
(3) The representatives who form the government are responsible to the people and give preference to the welfare of the people.
This is known as Representative Democracy.

6414132

2.2 Election Commission :

(1) The Election Commission :
(1) The Election Commission of India and the State Level Election Commission conduct all important elections in the country.
(2) Under the Article 324 of the Constitution, Election Commission is an independent, autonomous body. The Election Commission was established in 1950.
(3) The responsibility of conducting, managing and supervising the election procedure lies with the Election Commission.
(4) The National Election Commission conducts elections for the offices of President, Vice-President, and administrates elections to Parliament and State legislatures.
(5) A state election commission is also formed for conducting elections to local self-government institutions.

(2) Election Commissioner :
(1) The Election Commission consists of one Chief Election Commissioner and two additional commissioners.
(2) All the commissioners are appointed by the President of India.
(3) A commissioner cannot be removed easily from his office for any political or trivial reasons.
(4) The Constitution has preserved the independence of the Election Commission.
(5) A separate provision is made for the expenses of Election Commission.
(6) As the Election Commission does not have a separate staff, government officers, teachers and government employees help them to execute the process of election.
(7) Mr. Sukumar Sen was the first Chief Election Commissioner after independence.

2.3 Functions of Election Commission :

Functions	Work
(1) To prepare the voters' list	(1) To prepare list of eligible voters (2) To include names of new voters (3) Delete the names of voters who died or the ones who migrated (4) To publish updated voters' list (5) To give photo identity cards to the voters

(2) Decide timetable and programme of elections	(1) To prepare and publish election schedule. (2) To decide the entire process, i.e. when and in how many stages election should be conducted.
(3) Scrutiny of the application of candidates	(1) To accept the application of candidates. (2) To scrutinize the applications. (3) To give permission to contest elections for eligible candidates and reject applications of disqualified candidates.
(4) To give recognition to the political parties	(1) As India has multi-party system, Election Commission gives recognition to the new political parties. (2) To allot election symbols to political parties.
(5) To solve disputes relating to elections	(1) The Election Commission resolves all the disputes which arise during elections. (2) To disqualify the candidates if he resorts to illegal means of contesting. (3) To conduct re-election in a particular constituency.
(6) Restructuring the constituencies	(1) Constituencies are framed in proportion to the population. (2) There are total 543 constituencies of Lok Sabha. (3) Delimitation Commission restructures the constituencies.

Remember this : (Textbook Page 77)

(1) Sham Sharan Negi was the first voter of India. He was from Himachal Pradesh.
(2) He cast his vote on 25th October 1951 when the General Elections were held for the first time.

8444132

2.4 Process of election :

Establishment of constituencies → Finalising voters' list → Nomination of candidates and scrutiny of their nomination forms → Election campaign → Actual voting → Counting of votes → Result of elections → Resolving disputes regarding elections.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 78)

(1) It was a challenge to prepare voters' list at the time of the first election. Illiteracy rate was very high in our country. Therefore, the procedure to vote and making the voter list was a challenge.
(2) 20 lakh steel boxes were made and election symbols were stuck on it.
(3) Blank ballot papers were given to the voters and they were supposed to drop in the box having the election symbols of the party they decide to vote for.
(4) Even the illiterate people could vote because of this system.

2.5 Code of Conduct :

(1) The code of conduct means the rules that are to be followed by the government, political parties and voters before and during election.
(2) It is the responsibility of the Election Commission to conduct free and fair elections in a conducive environment.
(3) To curb the malpractices during elections, a Model Code of Conduct is issued.
(4) Its strict implementation gives a sense of relief to the common man.
(5) Code of Conduct is applied for Government, political parties, candidates and voters before and during elections.
(6) Even the Government cannot break these rules.

2.6 Challenges to conduct free and fair elections :

(1) Large geographical landscape and larger population, i.e. number of voters is a huge challenge while conducting election.
(2) Misuse of money.

(3) Prohibiting candidates with criminal background from contesting.
(4) Violence which erupts during election.
(5) The practice of family monopoly poses a great challenge.

2.7 Electoral reforms :

(1) To maintain the future and credibility of democracy, it is necessary to bring about new improvements.
(2) It is necessary to rectify the shortcomings and faults in the election process.

Which improvements are required?

(1) To increase the participation of women in politics, 50% seats should be given to women candidates by every political party.
(2) Election ticket should not be given to the candidates with criminal background.
(3) To stop misuse of money, the government should take care of election expenses.
(4) Laws and regulations should be followed strictly by the parties before giving candidature.
(5) To amend the Representation of the Peoples Act.

64141132

Do You Know? (Textbook page 79)

- **EVM machine :**

(1) Ballot boxes were used for the purpose of voting. This practice started with first election held in 1951-52 and lasted till 1999.
(2) Battery operated Electronic Voting Machine (EVM) machines were first used in the elections held in Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Delhi in 1998.
(3) It was used everywhere in 2004.
(4) Now there is availability of NOTA option in this machine. NOTA – None Of The Above option can be used by a voter if he does not want to vote for any candidate.

- **Advantages of EVM machine :**

(1) It saved tonnes of paper used to make Ballot paper, thus it helped in conserving the environment.
(2) It makes counting of votes much faster which enables the election officer to declare result in short time.
(3) It is helpful for specially-challenged people (Divyanga) to cast votes.

2.8. Types of Elections :

(1) General elections, i.e. for Lok Sabha are held every five years.
(2) If the government loses majority in Parliament before completing its tenure or the parties in coalition with the government withdraw their support and no alternative is available, then mid-term elections are held.
(3) If an elected member in the Lok Sabha or Vidhan Sabha resigns or dies, then by-elections are held.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Choose the correct option from the given options and complete the sentences : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) The Election Commissioner is appointed by ..... .
(a) President *(b) Prime Minister*
(c) Speaker of Lok Sabha *(d) Vice-President*

*(2) ..... was appointed as the first Election Commissioner of India.
(a) Dr. Rajendra Prasad
(b) T. N. Sheshan
(c) Sukumar Sen
(d) Neela Satyanarayan

*(3) Constituencies are created by ..... committee of Election Commission. ***(July '19)***
(a) Selection *(b) Delimitation*
(c) Voting *(d) Timetable*

(4) Article ..... of Indian Constitution created the independent body of Election Commission.
(a) 351 *(b) 370* *(c) 324* *(d) 301*

(5) ..... system exists in India.
(a) Single-party *(b) Two-party*
(c) Multi-party *(d) No-party*

Ans. (1) President (2) Sukumar Sen (3) Delimitation (4) 324 (5) Multi-party.

[2]

(1) The right to give recognition or de-recognize a political party lies with ..... .

(a) President (b) Election Commission
(c) Parliament (d) Vice-President

(2) There are ..... constituencies of Lok Sabha at present.

(a) 288 (b) 350 (c) 500 (d) 543

(3) ..... from the present state of Himachal Pradesh was the first voter.

(a) Sukumar Sen
(b) Sham Sharan Negi
(c) Prem Kumar Ghumal
(d) P. N. Chadda

(4) Due to EVM, ... people can also vote easily.

(a) elder (b) salaried
(c) Divyanga (d) Transgender

(5) The first elections in India were held in ..... .

(a) 1948-49 (b) 1949-50
(c) 1950-51 (d) 1951-52

Ans. (1) Election Commission (2) 543 (3) Sham Sharan Negi (9) Divyanga (10) 1951-52.

Q. 2 State whether following statements are True or False. Give reasons for your answer : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) The Election Commission lays down the code of conduct during elections.**

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

Reasons : (1) It ensures free and fair elections.

(2) Malpractices during the election come under control.

(3) Due to the strict observance of the code of conduct in the last few elections, the common voters have become confident.

***(2) Under special circumstances, Election Commission holds elections in a particular constituency for a second time.**

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

Reasons : (1) Sometimes, the representative of Lok Sabha, Vidhan Sabha or the local self-government resigns from his/her constituency.

(2) In some cases, death of the representative occurs.

(3) In such special situations, the Election Commission has to conduct an election for a second time. It is called By-elections.

(3) The state government decides as to when and in how many stages the elections would be held in a particular State. *(March '19)

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

Reasons : (1) The entire process of conducting elections is entrusted upon and managed by the Election Commission.

(2) If this responsibility is given to the state government, it may adopt a biased approach.

(3) Hence, the Constitution has formed the Election Commission an independent body to carry out the responsibility.

Therefore, it is decided by the Election Commission as to when and in how many stages it will conduct elections.

(4) There should be secrecy in Election process.

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

Reasons : (1) Election should be conducted in a free and fair environment.

(2) If the elections are not held in free environment, then there are chances of malpractices and corruption.

(3) Then, it will be impossible to elect the honest and efficient candidates.

(5) The Election Commission has started awareness campaign for registration of voters.

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

Reasons : (1) The responsibility of preparing and updating electoral roll lies with the Election Commission.

(2) The Election Commission starts an awareness campaign to create awareness among new eligible voters so that they register themselves in the voters' list.

(3) The Indian voter is not much aware about the election process.

(4) Special voters' awareness campaign is run for voters' registration.

(5) For their awareness National Voters' Day is celebrated every year.

(6) Every candidate who fills the nomination form can contest election.

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

Reasons : (1) Every candidate of a party or independent candidate has to be personally present to fill the nomination form.

(2) It is necessary for him or her to give complete information in the nomination form as decided by the Election Commission.

(3) The nomination forms are then scrutinized. If there are irregularities in a nomination paper and if the information is found to be false the nomination forms are rejected.

Therefore, it is not possible for every candidate who fills the nomination form to contest election.

(7) Sometimes, the Election Commission has to conduct mid-term elections. ***OR***

Explain the concept : Mid-Term Elections.

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

Reasons : (1) If the elected government in power loses its majority before completing its term.

(2) If no party gets complete majority, then two or more parties come together and form a coalition government.

(3) Such coalition government collapses if any party withdraws the given support.

(4) In such situations, the government is left with no option other than resigning.

(5) If there is no alternative available to form government, then the Parliament or Vidhan Sabha is dissolved before completing its term.

In such a scenario, the Election Commission has to conduct mid-term elections.

Q. 3 Write Short Notes : ***(2 marks each)***

Note : *'Write Short Notes' will be asked under the question 'Explain the Concept'. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

***(1) Reorganising the constituencies :**

Ans. (1) The Election Commission of India formed constituencies for Lok Sabha and Legislative Assembly.

(2) The Election Commission had decided upon the constituencies before the first election. As the years passed, there was a lot of migration of the people for business and other activities from the villages to cities.

(3) This changed the demography to large extent. Number of voters in some constituencies reduced while in some it increased to a very great extent. This disturbed the ratio of seats allotted as compared to population in those constituencies.

(4) Hence, the need to readjust the constituencies arose. The Delimitation Commission of the election commission does the work of reorganising or restructuring of constituencies.

***(2) Journey from Ballot box to EVM machine :**

Ans. (1) From the first election in 1951-52 till 1999, elections were held using ballot box. Twenty lakh ballot boxes were used in the first election. Voters used to cast his or her vote by stamping in front of the candidate's name and put them in the metal boxes.

(2) Electronic Voting Machines (EVMs) were first used for 5 seats in Rajasthan, 5 seats in Madhya Pradesh and 6 seats in New Delhi in 1998 Legislative Assembly.

(3) EVM machines were used at all polling booths in the general elections held in 2004. It proved to be a very useful device.

(4) It has been improvised since its first use. Due to the use of EVMs the results are declared early and at a very fast rate.

(3) Recognition to Political Parties :

Ans. (1) India has a multi-party system with recognition accorded to national, state and regional level parties by the Election Commission.

(2) Their recognition depends on the voting percentage received by them in the assembly elections and number of elected representatives of their party.

(3) If any party does not fulfill these criteria, its recognition is cancelled.

(4) The Election Commission allots appropriate symbols to parties and independent candidates.

All political parties should have recognition of the Election Commission.

(4) Representation :

(Do You Know? Textbook Page 75)

Ans. (1) Direct and Indirect or representative democracy are two types of democracy.

(2) In modern nation-states, the population has increased to a great extent.

(3) So it is impossible to involve all the people in decision-making process.

(4) Thus, the practice of electing some people on behalf of entire population as representatives started.

(5) The elected representatives form government and work for the welfare of the people.

(5) Election Commission : *(Nov. '20)*

Ans. (1) One of the most important features of a democratic nation is elections at regular intervals. Holding free and fair elections at regular intervals is essential for a democratic system.

(2) Under the Article 324 of the Constitution, Election Commission was formed in 1950. The President appoints one Chief Election Commissioner and two additional commissioners. It is an autonomous body.

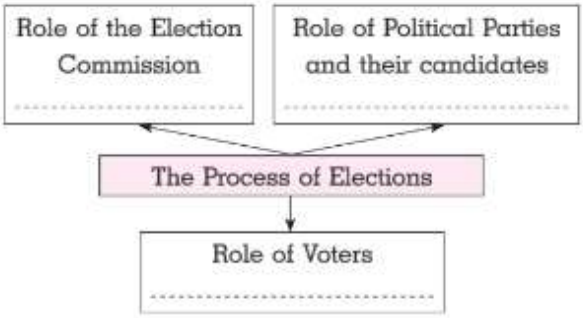
(3) The rank and powers of all the three commissioners are the same. The declaration of dates of the elections to the announcement of the results the entire procedure is monitored by the Election Commission.

(4) The Election Commission does not have its own staff to carry out this procedure. So they carry out the work with help of government employees and teachers. Special provisions are made for all finances incurred by the Election Commission.

Q. 4 Complete the concept map : ***(2 marks each)***

[1]

*(1)



Ans.

The Process of Elections

Role of Election Commission :
(1) Prepare electoral rolls
(2) Demarcate constituencies
(3) Announce election date
(4) Accept nomination form of the candidates
(5) Make arrangements for polling/polling booths
(6) Count votes
(7) Announce the result

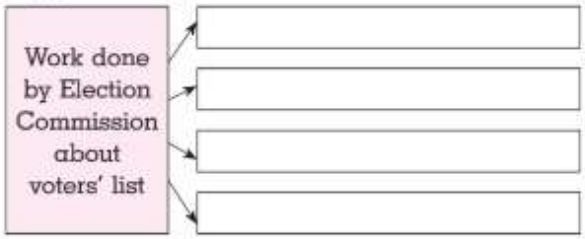
Role of Political Parties and their candidates :
(1) Decide the candidates and give them election tickets.
(2) Submit nomination forms to the Election Commission within the stipulated time.
(3) Inform the commission about election expenditure.
(4) Follow Code of Conduct.
(5) Conduct election campaign.

Role of Voters :
(1) Follow Code of Conduct.
(2) Attend party rally and decide for whom to vote.
(3) Cast vote.

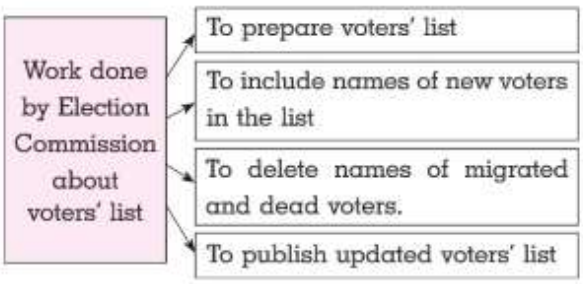
6414132

***(Note :** Separate Concept Map question can be asked on the Role of each Component of the Process of Elections.)*

(2)



Ans.



(3)

Attributes in a representative

Ans.

Efficient | Honest

Attributes in a representative

Trustworthy | Respect public opinion

(4) *(July '19)*

First General Election in India 1951 – 52

First Election Commissioner | First Voter

Ans.

First General Election in India 1951 – 52

First Election Commissioner → Sukumar Sen

First Voter → Sham Sharan Negi

6414132

[2] Prepare a flow chart on the process of election. *(March '19)*

Establishment of constituencies

Counting of votes

Results of elections

Resolution of disputes regarding elections

Ans.

Establishment of constituencies

Finalising voters' list

Nomination of candidates and scrutiny of their nomination forms

Election campaign

Actual counting

Counting of votes

Results of elections

Resolution of disputes regarding elections

[3] Which two conditions among the following is the violation of code of conduct?

(1) The candidate distributes items of household use.

(2) Promises made to resolve the water problem if elected.

(3) To go from door to door to meet voters and request them to vote.

(4) To appeal on the basis of caste and religion to get support.

Ans. (1) The candidate distributes items of household use.

(2) To appeal on the basis of caste and religion to get support.

Q. 5 Answer in brief : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Explain the functions of the Election Commission.**

Ans. The functions of the Election Commission are :

(1) Prepare the voters' list.

(2) Decide election timetable and decide the entire process of holding elections.

(3) Scrutinize the applications of the candidates.

(4) Conduct free and fair elections and do all the work related to it.

(5) Give recognition and also de-recognize political parties.

(6) Resolve all the disputes and complaints regarding elections.

***(2) Write some additional information about post of Election Commissioner.**

Ans. (1) The Election Commission in India has one Chief Election Commissioner and two other Chief Commissioners.

(2) All the commissioners are appointed by the President.

(3) The Chief Election Commissioner of India is usually a member of the Indian Civil Service or Indian Administrative Service.

(4) The responsibility of conducting free and fair elections to the Parliament and State Legislatures lies with the Election Commissioner.

(5) In order to safeguard the independence of the Election Commissioner, he cannot be easily removed from the post for any political reasons.

***(3) Explain the meaning of Code of Conduct.**

(July '19; March '20; Nov. '20)

Ans. (1) After the announcement of elections till the declaration of results, the Election Commission enforces the Code of Conduct.

(2) It explains the rules to be followed by the government, political parties candidates and voters before and during elections.

(3) Code of conduct is adopted to control malpractices during elections. It ensure free and fair ecections.

(4) Why is it important to conduct elections?

Ans. It is important to conduct elections because of the following reasons :

(1) The existence and working of democracy depends on elections.

(2) All political parties get a chance to rule.

(3) Elections help to bring a change in power through peaceful means.

(4) It not only changes government policies but also society.

(5) What are the conditions for voting ?

Ans. The following are the conditions for voting :

(1) The person should be a citizen of India.

(2) He should have completed 18 years of age.

(3) His name should appear in voters' list.

(4) The person should have photo identity card issued by the Election Commission of India.

(6) What action is taken by the Election Commission if disputes arise regarding elections?

Ans. (1) If any disputes arise regarding the elections, the Election Commission is empowered to take final decisions.

(2) The Election Commission conducts a thorough inquiry about the said dispute.

(3) If there is evidence of any malpractices during elections, in any constituency, it declares the elections invalid and announces re-polls.

(4) If any candidate breaks the code of conduct and contests elections, he/she is barred by the Election Commission from contesting elections.

(7) What challenges are faced by the Election Commission to conduct free and fair elections?

Ans. The following challenges are faced by the Election Commission to conduct free and fair elections :

(1) Managing the large geographical landscape and huge electoral population.

(2) To stop misuse of money and muscle power during elections.

(3) Barring candidates with criminal background from contesting elections.

(4) Conducting elections successfully in politically criminalised environment.

(5) Conducting elections in spite of increasing instances of violence and making them a success.

(8) What are the advantages of EVM machines?

Ans. The battery operated Electronic Voting Machine (EVM) has more advantages than the ballot box. They are as follows :

(1) It saves tonnes of paper used to make ballot paper.

(2) So, it conserves the environment as it stops the reckless cutting of trees required to make paper.

(3) If the voter does not wish to cast his vote in favour of any candidate contesting, he can make use of NOTA (None Of The Above).

(4) It makes counting of the votes much faster which enables the election officer to declare result in a short time.

6414132

(5) It is helpful for disabled (Divyanga) people to cast vote.

(9) Explain the features of procedures of voting during the first Lok Sabha Election.

(March '19)

Ans. (1) It was a challenge to prepare voters' list at the time of the first election. Illiteracy rate was very high in our country. Therefore, the procedure to vote and making the voter list was a challenge.

(2) 20 lakh steel boxes were made and election symbols of political parties were stuck on it.

(3) Blank ballot papers were given to the voters and they were supposed to drop in the box having the election symbols of the party they decide to vote for.

(4) Even the illiterate people could vote because of this system.

Q. 6 Give Your Opinion : ***(2 marks each)***

Note : *'Give Your Opinion', the answer to this question should be written in accordance with chapter. As this is an open ended question, the answer given here are 'model' answers. This type of question can be asked in 'Answer in Brief'. No separate question will be asked.*

64141 32

Why is it required?

(1) When candidates have only the condition of age, why should they give other information to Election Commission? (Textbook page 76)

Ans. (1) While filling the form candidates should reveal information about his property, assets and if there are any criminal charges against him.

(2) Such candidates if elected can misuse power and amass wealth with corrupt practices.

(3) With criminal background they can even threaten voters to vote for him.

(4) His nomination could get cancelled based on the information.

(2) Why is it so? (Textbook Page 76)

*(**Note :** Why is it so? This type of question can be asked in 'Explain the Statement with Reasons' type of question.)*

(A) Some constituencies are reserved for scheduled castes and scheduled tribes.

Ans. (1) It is difficult for the people of scheduled castes and scheduled tribes to get representation as they are scattered in different parts.

(2) Without a representative it is difficult to discuss their problems in Parliament.

(3) Lack of representative will hinder their progress.

Hence some constituencies are reserved for scheduled castes and scheduled tribes.

(B) Why every political party has an election symbol?

Ans. (1) After independence, the literacy rate was quite low in India.

(2) It was not possible for the voters to read the name of the candidate and vote.

(3) Therefore, the Election Commission gave symbols to political parties and independent candidates which helped the voters to identify and decide whom to vote for.

(C) At the time of voting and counting of votes, the official representatives of political parties remain present.

Ans. (1) There are incidences of duplicate voters who register in multiple constituencies.

(2) There are cases of rigging of EVM or booth capturing.

(3) Such incidences are brought to light by representatives who are present at polling centres.

(4) During the counting process, if the EVM machine looks tampered, the representative can raise an objection.

(D) All recognised parties should get an equal opportunity to express their opinion on media such as television and radio.

Ans. (1) All political parties should get a fair chance to express their agenda.

(2) Their ideas and philosophy should reach the people.

(3) Television and radio are owned by the government.

(4) Political parties have equal right on both.

(5) Hence, all the recognised parties can express their opinion on Doordarshan and Radio.

(3) Think ! (Textbook Page 79)

(A) How political parties suffer due to family monopoly in the party? OR

What are the disadvantages of dynasty rule?

Ans. (1) If only one family has domination on the political party because of dynasty rule then others are not given leadership opportunity.

(2) It is impossible to have all the members of the family efficient. An inefficient heir can cause damage to the party.

(3) The growth and expansion of party comes to a halt because of such heir. His faults seep into the party making it weak in the long term.

(4) The nature of such a party become dictatorial. Opposing views are suppressed and the internal democracy in the party vanishes.

(5) If the heir does not have progressive thoughts then the party becomes regressive and of obsolete ideology.

6414132

(B) What do you understand by the system 'One Vote One Value'?

Ans. (1) There is great importance in political and social equality in democracy.

(2) According to this ideology, 'One Vote One Value' is very important.

(3) In a democracy, each vote has the same value. The value of the vote of a Prime Minister and a common man is same.

(4) Under military rule or dictatorship or during monarchy the value of a vote for privileged classes was more. There was no importance given to the vote of the common man.

(5) 'One Man One Vote' indicates all the people in the country have same status. This is the gift of democracy.

(4) Voting is our duty as well as responsibility to vote. (What will you do? Textbook Page 77)

Ans. (1) It is enshrined in the fundamental principles of our Constitution to vote.

(2) It is not only our duty but also responsibility.

(3) Democracy exists because of elections. People should elect honest and efficient representatives through election.

(4) If voters show no interest in voting then the government will ignore people's welfare.

(5) Hence I feel it is not only the duty of every citizen to vote but also his responsibility.

(5) What measures should be taken to increase the credibility of elections?

Ans. To increase the credibility of elections, the following measures should be taken :

(1) 50% seats should be reserved for women candidates by every party.

(2) Candidates with a criminal background should be permanently barred from contesting any elections.

(3) The misuse of money should be stopped during elections. The government should incur the expenditure.

(4) Candidates who resort to malpractices should be immediately booked. A strict inquiry and action should be taken against them by the court.

(5) Laws and regulations should be followed strictly by the political parties before giving election tickets.

(6) If the political parties do not co-operate with the above terms, the Election Commission should cancel their recognition.

(6) Which rules would you include in Code of Conduct for voters ? (Textbook page 77)

Ans. The following rules should be included in Code of Conduct for voters :

(1) The voters who abstain from voting should be fined and government should suspend all the facilities given to them.

(2) If it is proved that the voter has accepted money or any kind of gifts, he should be punished.

(3) The action of voters should not instigate common people.

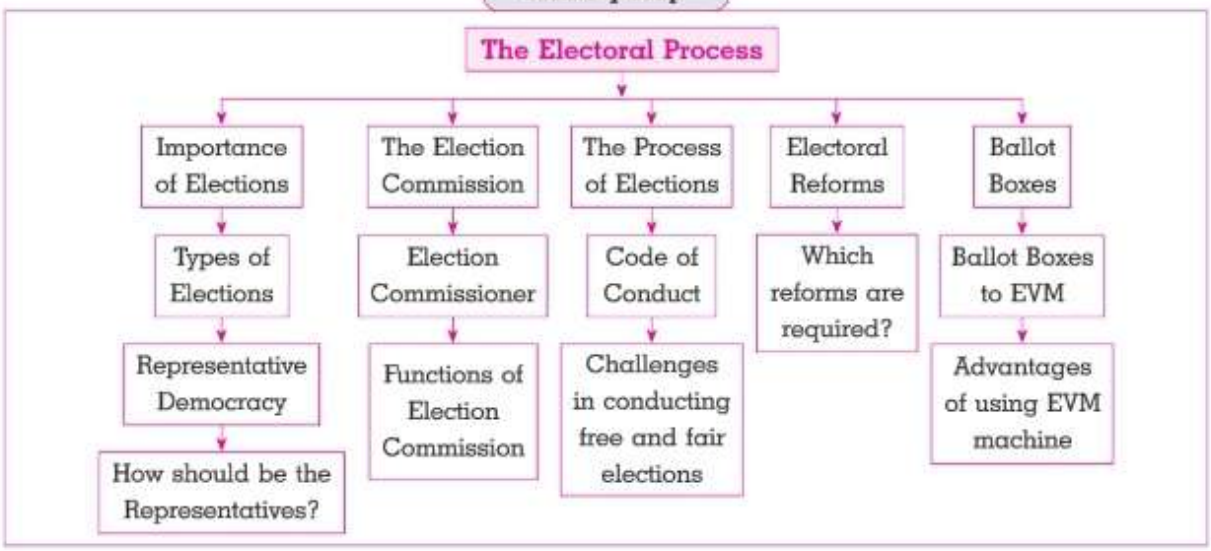
(4) They should not involve in bogus voting.

(5) They should not resort to illegal means for voting.

Project

- Organise a mock poll in the school to understand the process of voting.

Memory Map



6414132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

3 POLITICAL PARTIES

IMPORTANT POINTS

3.1 Political Party :

(1) What is a Political Party?

(1) People holding similar views on the public issues come together and form a political party.

(2) Political parties are intermediary institutions which connect common people, democracy, representatives and elections.

(3) Political parties exists in all democratic systems in the world. In fact, only in a democratic set up parties compete with each other. Political parties give shape to democracy.

(4) Political parties are like social organisations which work for resolving social problems.

(5) Political parties too aim at public welfare but their goals and styles of working are different.

(6) Political parties are organisations with objectives of achieving political power through the electoral process.

(2) Features of Political Parties :

(1) The aim of a political party is to secure and retain power. They contest elections to achieve it by fair means.

(2) Every political party has its own ideology. Every party tries to gain support of the people, called **'mass base'**.

(3) Political parties prepare agenda on the basis of its ideology.

(4) The party that secures the majority seats in the election becomes Ruling Party whereas the party that fails to secure the majority acts as the Opposition Party.

(5) Political parties are a link between the government and the people. They convey the demands and complaints of the people to the government and also policies of the government to the people.

(3) Partyless Democracy :

(1) Mahatma Gandhi, Vinobha Bhave and Jay Prakash Narayan put forth the idea of a party-less democracy.

(2) To remove the faults in the party system, malpractices and competition these leaders opposed the party system.

Concept

- **Partyless Democracy :**

Manavendranath Roy, a humanist, has put forth this concept in his book. Jayprakash Narayan and Vinoba Bhave had seen the ill effects of party system and expressed their opinion on cancelling recognition of all political parties. Political parties fight to capture power, resort to malpractices and corruption. The result of all this is that 'the real strength of People's Power is never known'. Hence, the party system should be cancelled. It is believed that in No Party democracy, people's opinion has great scope and people's welfare is taken care of. In order to bring No Party democracy, the society should be politically aware, literate and of good moral character. No party rule is an ideal philosophy. It is necessary to improve the party system as in a democracy, party system is unavoidable in practical reality.

Do You Know? (Textbook page 83)

- **Party System :**

(1) If power remains with one party for a longer period and if other political parties have no influence, it is **one party system.**

(2) When two political parties are influential and they enjoy power alternatively, it is called **two party system.**

(3) When many political parties compete for political power and more or less have equal influence is called **multi-party system.**

6414132

3.2 Changing form of political parties in India :

(1) Congress was dominant at national and state level for many years after independence.

(2) It means 'One Party System' was dominant in those days. In the year 1977, many non-Congress parties came together and challenged 'Single party dominant system'.

(3) After 1989, no single party got majority in Parliament, different parties came together and formed coalition government.

(4) Both Bharatiya Janata Party and the Congress tried to establish coalition government.

(5) In the initial years, the coalition government found it difficult to hold ground but after 1999 it got stabilized.

3.3 National Parties in India :

(Reference : *Election Commission of India, Notification No. 56/201/PPS-111, dated 13 December 2016.)*

Sr. No.	Name of the party	Established in the year	Elec. Symbol	Information/Policies/Ideology
1.	Indian National Congress	1885		1. Dominant party during freedom movement. 2. Equal rights for the weak and minorities. 3. Secularism, all-round development and equal rights, social welfare of minorities and weaker section of the societies. 4. Believes in democratic socialism, international peace and social equality.
2.	Communist Party of India	1925		1. Based on Marxist philosophy. 2. Opposed capitalism. 3. Worked for the welfare of labourers and the worker community. 4. As there was no consensus on whose leadership to accept China or Soviet Union the party got split in 1964.
3.	Communist Party of India (Marxist)	1964		1. A breakaway group from Communist Party of India. 2. Believes in secularism, socialism and democracy. 3. Worked for the welfare of landless labourers, workers and farmers. 4. Opposed imperialism.
4.	Bharatiya Janata Party	1980		1. Bharatiya Jan Sangh which was formed in 1951 merged with Janata Party in 1977. 2. In 1980, Janata Party further split to form Bhartiya Janata Party. 3. Policy to preserve Indian culture and traditions of India. 4. Importance to economic reforms.

64141192

*[**Note :** The Communist Party of India (Marxist) emerged from a split in the Communist Party of India in 1964. The year 1962 given in the textbook is incorrect.]*

Sr. No.	Name of the party	Established in the year	Elec. Symbol	Information/Policies/Ideology
5.	Bahujan Samaj Party	1984		1. Professed socialist philosophy. 2. Worked for the welfare of majority community comprising of Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, religious minorities and Other Backward Classes. 3. The party aims to bring the 'majority' Bahujan community to power.
6.	All India Trinamool Congress	1998		1. It got recognition as National Party in 2016. 2. It supports values of secularism and democracy. 3. The party has the policy of giving protection to the weaker sections.
7.	Nationalist Congress Party	1999		1. A breakaway group from the Congress Party. 2. Believed in values like equality, democracy and secularism. 3. It was in power in Maharashtra from 1999 to 2014 and at Centre from 2004 to 2014 in the coalition government led by the Congress Party.

6414132

3.4

(1) Regionalism :

(1) There is diversity in religion, culture, language, traditions and geographic area in India.

(2) The feeling of affinity develops towards these factors.

(3) Affinity towards the region gradually turns into the identity consciousness and gives rise to pride.

(4) The excessive pride turns morbid taking the form of Regionalism.

(2) Formation of Regional Political Parties :

(1) Political parties are formed with an objective to develop region and language.

(2) They claim that people belonging to the region have rightful claim over resources and employment opportunities.

3.5 Regional Parties :

(1) (1) A regional party is a group which takes great pride in the different identity of their region and enters the race for capturing power.

(2) The influence of such parties is limited to their region.

(3) Though they play a significant role at regional level they influence the national politics sometimes.

Also Understand (Textbook Page 84)

- **Regional Party : Recognition criteria**

(1) The political party should secure 6% of the valid votes in the previous Lok Sabha or State Assembly elections.

(2) At least 2 members should be elected in the Vidhan Sabha (State Assembly); **OR**

(3) Minimum 3% of seats out of total seats of Vidhan Sabha (State Assembly) or minimum 3 seats should be secured by a political party.

(2) Role of Regional Parties :

(1) They give importance to regional problems.

(2) Development of one's own region is the prime objective of these parties.

(3) Sometimes they demand for independent state or autonomy.

(4) They give preference to the resolution of regional problems and cooperate with the federal government.

(3) Demands of the Regional Party :

(1) Regional issues should be handled at the regional level.

(2) The power rests in the hands of people from the region.

(3) People living in that region should get opportunity in government jobs, administration and facilities to do business.

(4) Changing nature of Political Party system in India :

(1) After independence there were attempts in the states of Tamil Nadu, Punjab, Jammu and Kashmir to break away from the federation and form new countries.

(2) Later, they gave up their demand for independence and asked for more autonomy.

(3) After 1990, regional parties like Shiv Sena and Telugu Desam started demanding power at the state and national level.

(4) Regional parties in the north eastern region gave up their demand for a separate state and started demanding more autonomy.

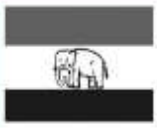
(5) The journey of the regional parties began with a demand for a separate state then demanding autonomy and now entering mainstream national politics.

(6) The politics of coalition has increased its influence in national politics.

3.6 Main Regional Parties in India :

Sr. No.	Regional Party	Established in the year	Influential in state	Symbol	Objective/Policy/Information
1.	Shiv Sena	1966	Maharashtra		1. To safeguard rights of Marathi speaking people. 2. To promote Marathi language. 3. Resistance to people from other regions. 4. Coalition government with BJP in Maharashtra in 1995 and 2014.
2.	Shiromani Akali Dal	1920	Punjab		1. To nurture religious and regional pride. 2. Remained in power for many years in Punjab.
3.	National Conference	1932	Jammu and Kashmir		1. Works for the interests of Kashmiris. 2. Promotes full autonomy for the state.
4.	Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK)	1949	Tamil Nadu		1. Justice party emerged in 1920 from the non-Brahmin movement. 2. In 1949, a breakaway party DMK was formed from it. 3. In 1972, it further split to form AIADMK. 4. Made efforts for protection of Tamil identity. 5. Shared power at the centre. 6. Remained in power for a long period and implemented many policies.

6414132

5.	Assam Gana Parishad	1985	Assam		1. It came into force with Assam Accord in 1985. 2. To solve the problems of displaced people. 3. To safeguard the social, cultural and linguistic uniqueness of Assam. 4. In power for many years in Assam. 5. Works for economic development of Assam.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Choose the correct option from the given options and complete the sentences : ***(1 mark each)***

[1]

*(1) When people come together and participate in electoral process to acquire political power, such organisations are called ..... .

(a) Government *(b) Society*
(c) Political parties *(d) Social organisations*

*(2) National Conference is a party in ..... state.

(a) Odisha *(b) Assam*
(c) Bihar *(d) Jammu and Kashmir*

*(3) Justice Party – a non-Brahmin movement was transformed into ..... a Political Party. ***(March '19)***

(a) Assam Gana Parishad
(b) Shiv Sena
(c) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam
(d) National Conference

(4) The party which fails to secure majority is known as ..... party.

(a) Ruling *(b) Opposition*
(c) Independent *(d) Coalition*

(5) 'Bharatiya Janata Party' which was formed in 1980 after a split with ..... a component of Janata Party.

(a) Jan Sangh *(b) Lok Dal*
(c) Independent party *(d) Janata Dal*

Ans. (1) Political parties (2) Jammu and Kashmir (3) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (4) Opposition (5) Jan Sangh.

[2]

(1) Social support received by a political party is called ..... .

(a) Democracy
(b) People's rule
(c) Mass base
(d) Public relation

(2) Promotion of the Marathi language is the objective of the ..... .

(a) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam
(b) Shiromani Akali Dal
(c) Shiv Sena
(d) Assam Gana Parishad

(3) There are ..... recognised parties in India.

(a) five (b) seven (c) nine (d) six

(4) The main objective of the political party is to capture ..... and retain it.

(a) publicity *(b) victory*
(c) power *(d) information*

(5) The ideology of the Communist Party of India is based on ..... Philosophy.

(a) Capitalist *(b) Marxist*
(c) Democracy *(d) Imperialist*

(6) Shiromani Akali Dal is a prominent regional party in ..... state. ***(July '19)***

(a) Odisha *(b) Assam*
(c) Punjab *(d) Jammu and Kashmir*

Ans. (1) Mass base (2) Shiv Sena (3) seven (4) power (5) Marxist (6) Punjab.

6414132

Q. 2 State whether the following statements are True or False. Give reasons for your answer : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Political parties act as a link between government and the people.** *(March '20)*

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) The political parties convey the demands and complaints of the people to the government.

(2) Information about various government policies and schemes are conveyed to the people by the political parties.

(3) People's reaction to the policies and their expectations are conveyed to the government too by the parties.

In this way, political parties act as a link between government and the people.

***(2) Political parties are social organisations.**

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) People who have similar views come together voluntarily and form a party, so it can be said that political parties are an integral part of our society.

(2) The political parties try to solve problems of the people.

(3) Some political parties represent the role of a particular community in society, its ideology and work to achieve it.

Hence it can be said that political parties are social organizations.

***(3) Coalition politics leads to instability.**

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

(1) As no single party got majority after the elections held in 1989, coalition government came to power at the centre and many states.

(2) Parties had to set aside their policies and programmes and concentrate on a common agenda to run the government.

(3) Both Congress Party and the Bharatiya Janata Party made an experiment of establishing coalition government. The National Democratic Alliance formed by BJP and its partners and the Democratic Front government formed by Congress and its partners ruled at the Centre and state level effectively.

Therefore, the belief that coalition government brings instability was proved wrong.

***(4) Shiromani Akali Dal is a national party.** *(July '19; Nov. '20)*

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

The Election Commission of India recognises a political party as National or Regional party on the basis of specific criteria namely :

(1) The number of seats secured in Parliament and Legislative Assembly or percentage of votes secured.

(2) Shiromani Akali Dal does not meet the criteria listed above.

(3) As its influence is limited to the state of Punjab and not in any other state.

The Election Commission has given recognition to it as regional party.

(Note : *The answer will remain the same if the question about any political party is asked. The name of the party will change in the answer accordingly.)*

(5) Political parties do not need support of the people.

Ans. The above statement is **False.**

(1) To secure power is the main aim of political parties.

(2) Political parties have to implement various policies and programmes for the welfare of people and to gain the support of the people.

(3) The party which solves the issues related to the welfare of the people get support.

(4) Without the support of the people they can never get a mandate.

Hence, all political parties require the support of the people.

(6) The Communist Party of India was split.

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) The Communist Party of India was established in 1925. The Communist Parties follow Marxist ideology.

(2) In 1962, due to differences in the leadership a rift was created in the party.

(3) The main reason for the split was about which political line to follow.

(7) Sometimes the sentiments of regionalism gets strengthened in the country.

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) A country like India has diversity of language, region and culture. This diversity creates affinity towards a region.

6414132

(2) This affinity gives rise to excessive regional pride and initiating movements to save it. The significance of such movements is claimed to be for preserving culture.

(3) Asserting to be rightful claimant of material resources, job opportunities and development of the region these movements strengthen the regional pride.

(4) Thus, this excessive regional pride turns morbid taking the form of regionalism.

(8) Regional parties have no influence on National Politics.

Ans. The above statement is **False**.

(1) No single party got majority in the elections to Lok Sabha held in 1989.

(2) The national parties formed coalition government at the Centre taking help of regional parties.

(3) As regional parties share power at the Centre they have influence on national politics.

Q. 3 Explain the Concept : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Write Short Notes' will be asked under the question 'Explain the Concept'. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

6414132

(1) Regionalism :** ***(March '19 – '20)

Ans. (1) India is a vast country with great physical diversity. People belonging to different regions have their own language, culture and traditions.

(2) Along with the physical diversity, we find diversity in literature, education, history and movements.

(3) Each one feels an affinity for his language, traditions and history of social reforms. This gives rise to linguistic identity.

(4) This affinity towards all the above mentioned aspects develops into identity consciousness and gives rise to excessive regional pride. People start giving preference only to the development of their language and region.

This is known as Regionalism.

***(2) National Party :**

Ans. A party which functions at the national level is known as National Party.

(1) The Election Commission has laid certain criteria for a party to get recognised as a Political party. The political party should secure at least 6% valid votes in four or more states in the earlier Lok Sabha or State Assembly elections and minimum four members should be elected in the Lok Sabha from any state or states in the earlier elections. OR

(2) The candidates of a party should be elected from minimum three states or should be elected from minimum 2% constituencies of the total Lok Sabha constituencies. OR

(3) It is important to get recognition as a state party in at least four states.

Q. 4 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Write Short Notes' will be asked under the question 'Explain the Concept'. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

(1) Regional Parties :

Ans. (1) The groups having a proud feeling about the different identity of their region and who compete to capture power to bring about regional development are 'Regional Parties'.

(2) The influence of such parties are limited to their region. They give importance to regional problems. Development of one's own region is the prime objective of these parties.

(3) Sometimes they demand for independent state or autonomy. They influence the national politics because of their dominance in the region.

(4) They have passed through various phases, from separatism to autonomy and have then merged with mainstream national politics.

(2) Political Party :

Ans. (1) A Political Party is a kind of social organisation of like-minded people. The main aim of any political party is to contest election and secure power.

(2) The stand taken by various political parties on issues becomes their political ideology.

(3) In democracy, political parties are at the Centre of all political activities. They are a link that connects common people, democracy, representation and elections.

(4) The party that secures a majority becomes the ruling party and the rest are known as the opposition.

(3) Party System :

(1) If one party remains in power in a country for a long period and no other party has any kind of influence the party system it is called 'One-Party System'.

(2) When there are two equally strong parties which alternatively come to power. It is called 'Two-Party System'.

(3) In a country where many political parties exist and compete with each other to capture power and have more or less influence in different states is called 'Multi-Party System'.

(4) Democracy develops in Multi-Party System.

(4) Indian National Congress :

Ans. (1) The Indian National Congress was established in 1885.

(2) The party represented the hopes and aspirations of Indians and led the freedom struggle.

(3) Groups having diverse ideologies became part of the Congress to fight for freedom.

(4) It believes in democratic socialism, social equality and international peace.

(5) After independence, the Congress Party was a dominant party for almost four decades and ruled at the centre and in the states.

(5) Communist Party of India :

Ans. (1) The Communist Party of India was established in 1925. The Communist Party follows the Marxist ideology.

(2) The party aims at working to protect the interests of workers and labourers.

(3) The main objective of this party is to oppose capitalism and protect the interests of workers.

(4) The party split due to ideological differences in 1964. Those who walked out of the party formed Communist Party (Marxist).

(6) Nationalist Congress Party :

Ans. (1) Nationalist Congress Party (NCP) is the splinter or breakaway party from the Congress Party.

(2) It considers the values like democracy, equality and secularism important.

(3) It became part of United Progressive Alliance (UPA) and came to power in Maharashtra.

(4) It was in power in Maharashtra from 1999 to 2014 and at the centre from 2004 to 2014.

(7) Trinamool Congress :

Ans. (1) All India Trinamool Congress was established in 1998.

(2) The Election Commission of India gave it recognition in 2016.

(3) Democracy, Secularism and protection of the weaker sections of the society are some of the policies of the party.

(4) Presently (April 2019), this party is in power in the state of West Bengal.

(8) Shiv Sena :

Ans. (1) The Shiv Sena was founded in 1966.

(2) The main objective of the party was to fight for the cause of Marathi-speaking people and preservation of Marathi language.

(3) They resisted the people from other regions.

(4) In 1995, it became the ruling party with BJP in Maharashtra and its strategic tie-up with BJP helped it to enter national politics.

(5) It was in power at the centre with BJP from 1998 to 2004. Again it has shared power with the BJP at the centre and state since 2014.

(9) Shiromani Akali Dal :

Ans. (1) Shiromani Akali Dal was formed in 1920.

(2) It is a dominating party in Punjab.

(3) It gives preference to nurture religious and for the regional pride.

(4) The party has retained power in Punjab for many years. In September 2020, this party moved out of NDA and from Central Government.

(10) Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam :

Ans. (1) Justice party, a non-Brahmin movement, started in 1920. In 1944, it transformed into a political party called Dravida Kazhagam.

(2) In 1949, a group within the party got split and formed Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (DMK).

(3) The party works for the protection of Tamil identity.

(4) This party implemented many policies for the welfare of the people and therefore has support from all the sections of society.

8414132

(5) Another group separated from it in 1972 and formed All India Anna Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam.

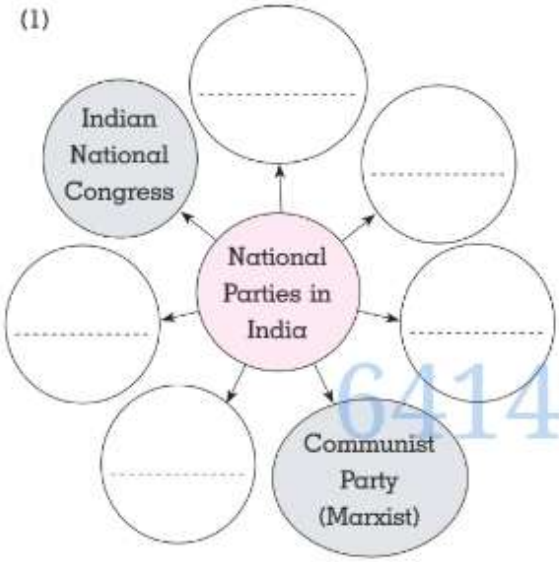
(6) It remained in power for a long time in Tamil Nadu and for sometime at the Centre.

*(**Note :** Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam was formed in 1949 not 1944.)*

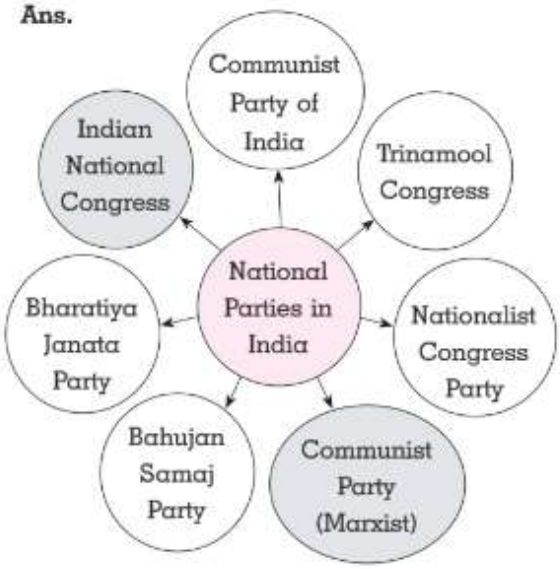
Q. 5 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

(A) Complete the concept map :

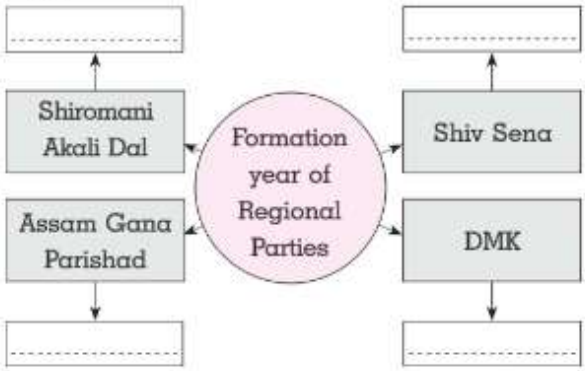
(1)



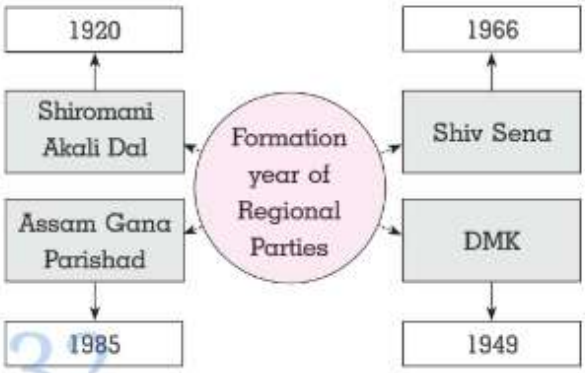
Ans.



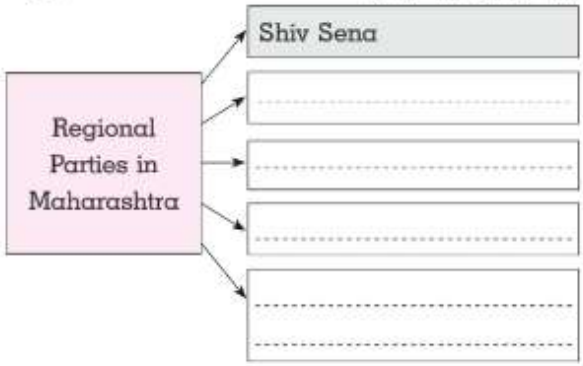
(2)



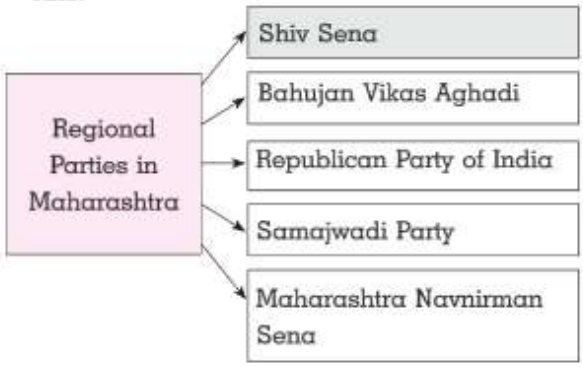
Ans.



(3) ***(July '19; Nov. '20)***



Ans.



6414132

(B) Complete the Time-line writing the name of the party or the year of establishment : *(March '19)*

1885	.....	1964	1980	1984	.....	1999
Indian National Congress	Communist Party of India	Communist Party of India (Marxist)	.....	.....	All India Trinamool Congress	Nationalist Congress Party

Ans.

1885	1925	1964	1980	1984	1998	1999
Indian National Congress	Communist Party of India	Communist Party of India (Marxist)	Bharatiya Janata Party	Bahujan Samaj Party	All India Trinamool Congress	Nationalist Congress Party

Q. 6 Answer the following questions in brief : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) What are the major characteristics of political parties?**

Ans. The main features of political parties are as follows :

(1) Political parties aim at securing power by contesting elections.

(2) Every political party has some ideology.

(3) Every party has an agenda. It is based on the party's ideology.

(4) The party that gets majority seats in election forms the government and the one that does not secure the majority act as opposition parties.

(5) Political parties are a link between the people and the government and work to gain the support of the people.

***(2) What changes have taken place in the nature of political parties in India?** *(July '19)*

Ans. The following changes were seen in the party system in India :

(1) Indian National Congress was the only dominant party in states and at the Centre after independence.

(2) All other parties came together and formed coalition in 1977 and defeated the Congress. For the first time in the history the two-party system got importance over one-party system.

(3) One-party system came to an end after the 1989 elections.

(4) Regional parties got importance and coalition government was formed at the centre and in the states.

(3) What is called "mass base"?

Ans. (1) Every political party is formed with some ideology.

(2) Political parties take a certain stand towards public issues.

(3) Their ideology and their stand towards public issues are conveyed to the people through various programmes.

(4) If the people agree with their role and ideology, they get the support of the people.

(5) Such social support received by a political party is called 'mass base'.

(4) Write about the policies of Indian National Congress.

Ans. The policies of the Indian National Congress are as follows :

(1) Equal rights for the minorities and weaker sections of society.

6414132

(2) Secularism, all-round development and social welfare are its objectives.

(3) Introduction of socialist democracy.

(4) Belief in values like international peace and social equality.

(5) Explain the role of Bharatiya Janata Party.

Ans. Bharatiya Janata Party was formed in 1980 with the following objectives :

(1) To preserve Indian culture and traditions.

(2) To create a strong and rich India.

(3) To give importance to economic reforms for development of India.

(6) Write about the policies of Communist Party of India (Marxist).

Ans. Communist Party of India (Marxist) was formed in 1964 with the following objectives :

(1) The party advocates socialism, secularism and democracy.

(2) The main policy of the party is to work for the welfare of farmers, landless labourers and workers.

(3) The party opposes imperialism.

6414132

(7) Why was Bahujan Samaj Party formed?

Ans. The Bahujan Samaj Party was formed in 1984 to achieve the following objectives :

(1) To bring socialist ideology into practice.

(2) To secure power for 'majority' comprising of scheduled castes, scheduled tribes and other backward classes.

(3) To give power in the hands of 'majority'.

(8) What do the regional parties give preference for?

Ans. The regional parties give preference to the following issues :

(1) Importance should be given to regional issues and bring about development.

(2) Regional issues should be handled at regional level.

(3) The power rests in the hands of regional people.

(4) People living in that region should get preference in administration and jobs.

(9) What changes are seen in the nature and role of regional parties?

Ans. The role of regional parties changed over period of time. The changes are as follows :

(1) After independence, regional identity gave rise to separatists movements and demands were put up by regional parties for separate state.

(2) They wanted to break away from the Indian union and form a separate state.

(3) The demands of the regional parties changed gradually and these parties started asking for autonomy.

(4) In the later period, for the development of their region and people the parties demanded representation of their people in the state and central government.

(5) Regional parties in the north eastern region also started demanding more autonomy after split up.

(6) The journey of the regional parties began with a split up and then a demand for autonomy going on to share power in federation and then entry into mainstream national politics.

(10) What are the objectives of Assam Gana Parishad?

Ans. Assam Gana Parishad was formed in 1985 with the following objectives :

(1) To preserve the uniqueness of Assam's culture, language and social identity.

(2) To make efforts for economical development of Assam.

(3) To resolve problems of displaced people.

(11) What are the criteria for a regional party to get recognition?

Ans. (1) In the last general elections to the State Assembly, the party should not secure less than 6% of the total number of valid votes polled.

(2) At least 2 members to be elected to the Legislative Assembly (Vidhan Sabha).

(3) 3% seats of the total seats of Legislative Assembly or at least 3 seats in Legislative Assembly.

(12) What work is done by political parties?

Ans. The following work is done by political parties :

(1) To propagate policies and programmes of the party and contest elections.

(2) They implement various policies when they come to power.

(3) If they fail to secure power, they act as opposition party and try to gain support of the people.

(4) They communicate the demands and complaints of the people to the government and the policies and programmes of the government to the people.

(13) State the between ideology and agenda.

Ans. (1) Every political party has some policies and world views.

(2) Each party has its own stand on social and public issues as well as on religious and economic matters.

(3) Political party prepares its agenda on the basis of party ideology.

(4) If the party comes to power it implements the agenda. If it does not get the power, it tries to get support of the people on the basis of this agenda.

6414132

Q. 7 Give Your Opinion : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Give Your Opinion', the answer to this question should be written in accordance with chapter. As this is an open ended question, the answers given here are 'model' answers. This type of question can be asked in 'Answer in Brief'. No separate question will be asked.*

(1) (Textbook page 83)

Imagine you are opposition party leader and you have observed that the ruling party has not done good work in the field of health. What will you do as a leader of opposition?

Ans. As opposition leader, I will do the following to make the government realise its negligence in the health field :

(1) I will question the government in Parliament and point out their shortcomings and ask about the prolonged projects.

(2) I will create awareness among the people by writing articles in newspapers.

(3) I will give interviews on radio and television and criticize the government.

(4) I will organise rallies and meetings to sensitize among the people.

(2) Think and write (Textbook page 83)

What has to be done to bring partyless democracy in modern times?

Ans. (1) The recognition of all the parties should be cancelled.

(2) People should be given the right to make decisions.

(3) In order to improve the decision-making power, people should be educated on political issues.

(4) To improve the moral character of the people who want to take the leadership.

(5) To initiate direct democracy and prepare the people for the same.

(6) Stress should be given for decentralization.

(3) (Textbook page 83)

What do you understand by the following news in newspapers? Explain in brief.

(A) Opposition parties held a meeting in Mumbai to resist the Ruling party. Will take up the issue of farmers?

Ans. (1) The ruling party did not undertake any work for the welfare of farmers. Therefore all the opposition parties decided to trap the government on this issue.

(2) The opposition parties have kept aside their differences and come together for this cause.

(3) It is the duty of the opposition party to question the negligence of the government.

(4) This news makes us aware of the line of action taken by the opposition.

(B) Ruling party has organised 'Samvad Yatra' in rural areas.

Ans. (1) Political parties adopt different ways to popularise their party and influence the people.

(2) As the means of communication are limited in rural areas they organise the Yatra.

(3) It shows the efforts of the government to understand problems of people in rural areas. It is essential to have dialogue with people to know their problems and opinions. As the initiative is taken by the government, people will develop faith in government.

(4) The news conveys to us that the ruling party is carrying out its duties properly. The faith in government becomes profound when people feel that government is sensitive towards them.

Project

(1) In the map of Maharashtra, point out the Lok Sabha constituency that includes the names of your parents.

(2) In the map of India, point out the places where national political parties have their influence.

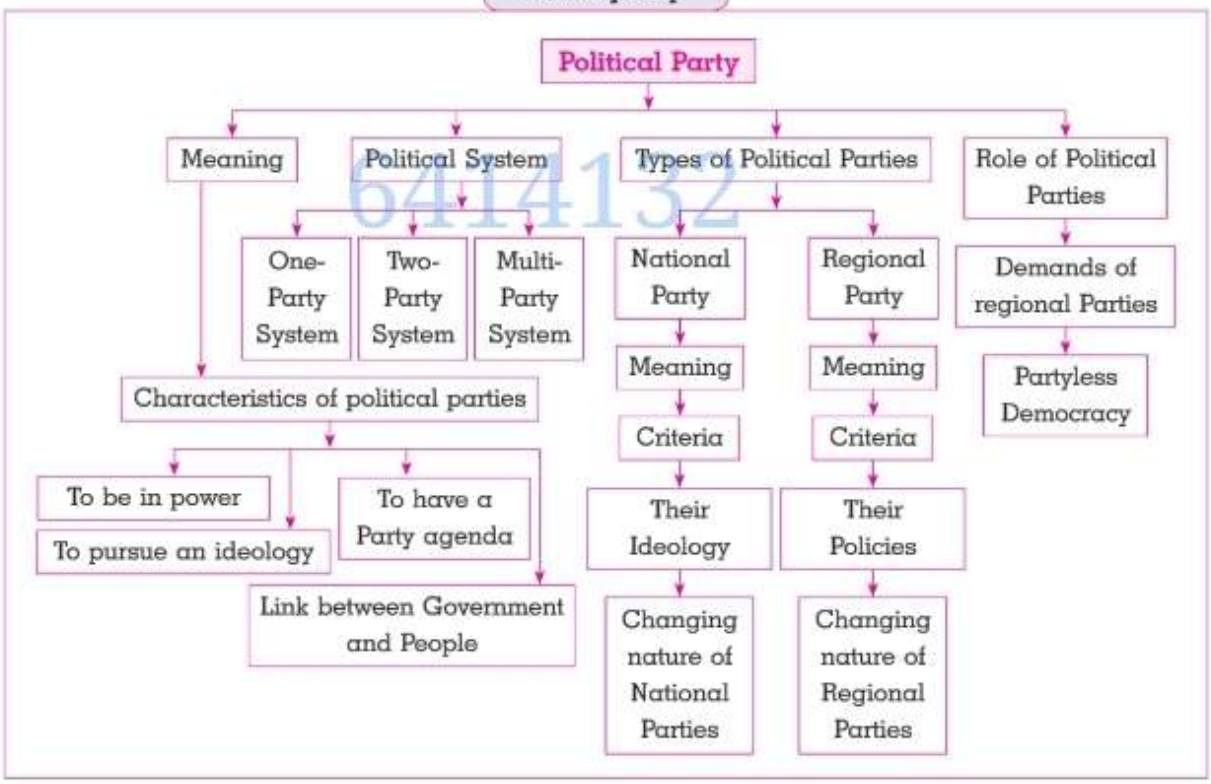
(3) **Do this : (Textbook page 83)**

Find out the member parties of the following leading coalitions :

(i) National Democratic Alliance (NDA)

(ii) United Progressive Alliance (UPA)

Memory Map



6414132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

4 SOCIAL AND POLITICAL MOVEMENTS

IMPORTANT POINTS

4.1 Movement :

(1) Why a movement?

(1) Some people focus on a particular issue, follow it constantly and build public opinion.

(2) A movement is a type of collective action with specific purpose.

(3) A movement is launched to solve any particular issue or pressurize the government.

(4) A movement requires people's involvement and sustained efforts to be successful.

(2) Advantages of a movement :

(1) Many social problems are discussed because of a movement.

(2) The leaders and the activists of the movement provide all the required information to the government on various issues which is then used to frame future policies.

(3) People are empowered to protest (Right to Protest) against policies of the government.

(4) Movements have great significance in democracy.

(5) However, this right must be used patiently and in a responsible manner.

(3) Features of Movement :

(1) As movement is a collective action, participation of people is expected.

(2) The movement is a mass organisation of people formed for a specific cause.

(3) The movement should have a steadfast leadership. The objectives, programme of action and strategy is decided by the leaders. Without a good leadership, the movement will not be effective.

(4) There are some organizations which pursue problems through various movements till they find a solution to it.

(5) People render support to a movement if they feel connected.

(6) With people's support the scope of the movement widens.

4.2 Important Movements in India :

(1) Tribal Movement :

(1) The British prohibited the tribals from making use of forest wealth as means to earn their livelihood.

(2) Kolam, Gonds, Kolis, Bhilla, Ramoshi, Santhals and Munda revolted in different parts of India against the British.

(3) Even after independence the right of tribals on forest is denied.

(4) Their main demands were :

(i) Accept their right over forest.

(ii) Permission to gather forest products.

(iii) Right to cultivate forest land.

(2) Farmers' Movement :

(1) Due to the anti-agricultural policies of the British colonial government, the farmers started organizing themselves.

(2) Farmers' Movement was witnessed in Champaranya and Bardoli before independence.

(3) They got inspiration and leadership of Mahatma Phule, Justice Ranade and Mahatma Gandhi.

(4) Maharashtra Tenancy Act slowed down the movement but after Green Revolution, the movement gained momentum.

(5) Green Revolution aimed at increasing agricultural production and self-sufficiency in food grains. As its benefits did not reach the poor farmers, the movement had started.

(6) Demands of the farmer movement :

(i) Appropriate price for agricultural products.

(ii) Agriculture should be treated as an industry.

6414132

(iii) To implement suggestions and recommendations of the Swaminathan Commission.

(iv) Quick decision on debt relief and debt cancellation.

(v) National policy for agriculture.

Let us know

- **Swaminathan Commission :**

The National Commission on Farmers (NCF) was constituted on November 18, 2004 to solve various problems related to agriculture and farmers. The Chairman of the commission was the architect of Green Revolution Shri M. S. Swaminathan. Hence this commission is also known as Swaminathan Commission. The final report was submitted by the commission on 4th October 2004.

The following are the recommendations made by the commission :

(1) Except the production cost farmers should get 50% insurance on crops.

(2) Minimum support price should be fixed.

(3) An Agricultural Risk Fund should be established to provide relief to farmers in case of successive crop failure.

(4) Heavy import duty should be levied on imported agricultural products.

(5) Permanent supply of electricity and irrigation facilities should be provided.

(6) The rate of interest on loans for crops should be less.

(7) Farmers should be provided with seeds and machinery at reasonable prices.

(3) Trade Union Movement :

(1) In the latter half of the 19th century, textile industry, railways and other industries started in India. After industrialisation the Trade Union Movement emerged in India.

(2) In 1899, railway workers went on strike.

(3) In 1920, All India Trade Union Congress was established.

(4) After globalization, this movement was adversely affected and slowly disintegrated.

(5) Problems of workers in India :

(i) Unstable employment and no legal protection.

(ii) Contract basis pattern and financial insecurity.

(iii) Unlimited working hours and health hazards.

(iv) Insecurity at workplace.

(4) Women's Movement :

(1) In order to stop the injustice and exploitation of women and let them have a dignified life, many men and women social reformers had taken initiatives.

(2) Raja Rammohan Roy, Mahatma Jotirao Phule, Ishwarchandra Vidyasagar, Maharshi Dhondo Keshav Karve, Pandita Ramabai and Ramabai Ranade were prominent among them.

(3) The inititative taken by them had brought an end to the practises like sati and child marriage. Due to their efforts, reforms such as widow remarriage, women's education were possible.

(4) After independence, women got right to vote and they demanded through various movements that they should be given status and prestige as human beings.

(5) Women participated in various movements to oppose corruption, caste system and religious extremism.

(6) Women started initiatives to organize movements realising the injustice done to them.

(7) Women's health, education, social security, status as human beings, independence and empowerment are the challenges faced presently by Women's movement.

(5) Environment Movement :

(1) Environmental degradation is a serious problem to tackle at the national or international level.

(2) Challenges faced by the movement :

(i) To stop pollution of rivers and protection of different sources of water.

(ii) Protection of bio-diversity and to reduce use of chemicals and its ill effects.

(iii) Protection of forests and the green belt.

6414132

(6) Consumer Movement :

(1) Consumer movement began in India after the Consumer Protection Act was passed in 1986.

(2) The movement treats each member of the society as a consumer.

(3) Adulteration, increased costs of items, frauds in weights and measures are some of the problems a consumer has to face.

(4) Consumer movement was started with the objective of giving consumer protection from such frauds.

(7) Movements post-1980 :

(1) The post-1980 movements were different from earlier movements.

(2) They were issue-based movements and people tried to organise issue-based mass movements.

(3) So, they are called neo-social movements.

• **India's Waterman : (Textbook page 95)**

(1) A revolutionary approach to solve water crisis in Rajasthan was adopted by Dr. Rajendrasinh Rana.

(2) He build thousands of Johads and brought about water revolution in Rajasthan. He is known as the "Waterman of India".

(3) He revived many rivers in the desert region of Rajasthan.

(4) He formed an organization – "Tarun Bharat Sangh" which built eleven thousand Johads in hundred of villages.

(5) He started a campaign for conservation of water, revival of rivers, forest conservation and wildlife conservation.

(6) For this work, he won the Stockholm Water Prize an award known as the "Nobel Prize for Water".

Concept :

• **Public Interest Litigation :**

People had no knowledge about the rights granted by the Constitution and how to exercise those rights. People were ignorant about the relation between law, government and citizens. Justice P. N. Bhagwati and Justice V. R. Krishna Iyer were among the first judges who pioneered PIL. It is a litigation for the protection of public interest. For the protection of fundamental rights which are enshrined in the Constitution, citizens can file a litigation in High Court or Supreme Court. Such a litigation is known as Public Interest Litigation. It is the most effective and economical way of seeking justice. It can be filed for any social problems such as violence, pollution, government avoiding the work and discrimination.

6414132

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Choose the correct option from the given options and complete the sentences : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) ..... is the main demand of farmer's movement. ***(March '19 – '20)***

(a) Right to cultivate on the forest land

(b) To get the right price for agricultural products

(c) Protection of consumers

(d) Building of dams

*(2) To increase agricultural production and become self-sufficient with regard to food grains ..... was initiated. ***(Nov. '20)***

(a) Water revolution

(b) Green revolution

(c) Industrial revolution

(d) White revolution

(3) In ....., movements have more importance.

(a) socialist rule *(b) dictatorship*

(c) democracy *(d) communist rule*

(4) In democracy, Right to ..... is considered an important right.

(a) rehabilitate

(b) pursue questions

(c) behave with control and responsibility

(d) protest

(5) ..... is the objective of Green Revolution.
(a) *To stop degradation of environment*
(b) *Protection of the forests*
(c) *Increase in agricultural output*
(d) *To stop the felling of trees.*

Ans. (1) To get the right price for agricultural products (2) Green revolution (3) democracy (4) protest (5) Increase in agricultural output.

[2]

(1) The trade union movement in India has background of .....
(a) *freedom struggle* (b) *globalisation*
(c) *prestigious past* (d) *industrialisation*

(2) In 1899, ... workers called for a strike.
(a) *railway* (b) *mill*
(c) *handloom* (d) *rice mill*

(3) Dr. Rajendrasinh Rana had brought about ..... in Rajasthan.
(a) *White Revolution*
(b) *Water Revolution*
(c) *Green Revolution*
(d) *Consumer Revolution*

(4) Dr. Rajendrasinh Rana is known as the ..... of India.
(a) *Farmer man*
(b) *environment affectionate*
(c) *Man of the Millennium*
(d) *Waterman*

(5) Tribals in Bihar revolted against the British under the leadership of .....
(a) *Rajendrasinh Rana* (b) *Birsa Munda*
(c) *Umaji Naik* (d) *Kajarsingh*

Ans. (1) industrialisation (2) railway (3) Water Revolution (4) Waterman (5) Birsa Munda.

[3]

(1) Swadeshi movement is an important ..... movement.
(a) *political* (b) *social*
(c) *economic* (d) *cultural*

(2) ..... is one of the problems faced by consumers.
(a) *Cancellation* (b) *Malnutrition*
(c) *Adulteration* (d) *Transportation*

(3) The main demand of the farmer's movement was to accept suggestions of the ..... Commission.
(a) *Sunderlal Bahuguna*
(b) *Verghese Kurien*
(c) *Swaminathan*
(d) *Kothari*

(4) In 1986, ... Act came into force.
(a) *Consumer Protection*
(b) *Women Empowerment*
(c) *Child Marriage*
(d) *Environment Protection*

(5) The post-1980 movements are called .....
(a) *New*
(b) *Neo-social*
(c) *Broad*
(d) Globalisation

(6) ..... was established in 1920.
(a) *Farmers' Organization*
(b) *Bhartiya Kisan Union*
(c) *All India Trade Union Congress*
(d) *All India Kisan Sabha*

Ans. (1) economic (2) Adulteration (3) Swaminathan (4) Consumer Protection (5) Neo-social (6) All India Trade Union Congress.

Q. 2 Explain with reasons whether the following statements are True or False : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Movements are important in democracy.**

Ans. The above statement is **True.**

(1) People organise themselves and start a movement to solve social issues.

(2) Leaders and activists provide all the information regarding those issues to the government.

(3) The government takes notice of the problems because of the movement.

(4) Some movements aim at opposing some policies of the government and certain decisions. This is the most recognised method of protest in democracy.

Hence, movements have great importance in democracy.

6414132

***(2) Movements do not need a strong leadership.**

Ans. The above statement is **False**.

(1) The success of any movement depends on leadership. The movement remains active because of the strong leader.

(2) The decisions regarding the objective of the movement, programme of action, strategy of agitation are decided and taken by the leader.

(3) Firm leadership has a wide reach. They can get public support making the movement very effective. So, the need of a strong leadership is utmost essential.

***(3) Consumer movements came into existence.**

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

(1) The consumers faced different problems because of changing economy and social system.

(2) Adulteration, increased the cost of products and faulty weights and measures are some of the problems faced by the consumers.

(3) To protect the consumers from such frauds the Consumer Protection Act was passed in 1986.

(4) The Consumer Protection movement was started to create awareness among the consumers about their rights and their safety.

(4) Political parties can concentrate on one particular issue.

Ans. The above statement is **False**.

(1) Political parties contest elections to solve problems of common people.

(2) Parties have to take into consideration all matters from public cleanliness to roads to space research. They have to have a national perspective and take decisions.

(3) Political parties should have programmes for the development of all the sections of society like youth, senior citizens, businessmen, women, farmers and labourers.

(4) This means that political parties cannot concentrate on just one particular issue.

(5) People's active participation is expected in the movement.

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

(1) A movement is started to solve issues of public interest.

(2) People offer support to the movements which are related to their cause or a particular issue.

(3) Deciding upon the issues of the people a programme is decided and a group is formed.

(6) Dr. Rajendrasinh Rana is called the Waterman of India. ***(March '19)***

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

(**Short Note :** Water Revolution)

(1) Dr. Rajendrashinh Rana built thousands of 'Johads' in Rajasthan.

(2) He revived many rivers in the desert region of Rajasthan.

(3) He formed an organisation – "Tarun Bharat Sangh" which built eleven thousand Johads to harvest water.

(4) He started a campaign for Water conservation, revival of rivers, forest conservation and wildlife conservation.

(5) He worked continuously for this cause for 31 years building 11 thousand johads bringing about water revolution in Rajasthan. Therefore, he is called the Waterman of India.

(7) The Green Revolution divided the farmers into rich farmers and poor farmers.

Ans. The given statement is **True.**

(1) After the Green Revolution, farmers movement became more active and effective.

(2) Though the aim of Green Revolution was to achieve increased agricultural production and self-sufficiency in foodgrains, it did not benefit the poor farmers.

(3) Therefore, the farmers got divided into rich farmers and poor farmers.

Q. 3 Write Short Notes :

Note : *'Write Short Notes' will be asked under the question 'Explain the Concept'. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

(1) Tribal Movement :** ***(July '19)

Ans. (1) Tribal community was always dependent on forest wealth for their living.

(2) The British had prohibited the tribals from making use of forest wealth to earn their livelihood.

(3) Kolam, Gond, Santhal, Koli, Bhilla, Munda Tribals of different parts of India revolted against the British.

(4) Even after independence their problem to earn a livelihood is not solved. Their right on the forest land, to gather forest products and to cultivate on forest land is not yet recognised.

Therefore, for these demands, Tribal Movement is active in many parts.

***(2) Labour Movement :**

Ans. (1) Industries in public and private sector like textile mills, railway companies started in India in the latter part of the nineteenth century.

(2) Due to industrialisation, a large number of labour force came into existence.

(3) This led to lot of labour issues. In 1920, All India Trade Union Congress was established to solve their problems.

(4) Many unions were formed after independence. The Trade Union Movement was very effective from 1960 till 1980s. After 1980s trade union movement lost its momentum and slowly disintegrated. Globalization gave a final blow to the movement.

(3) Movement :

Ans. (1) When people organise themselves to resolve a certain issue it is called a movement.

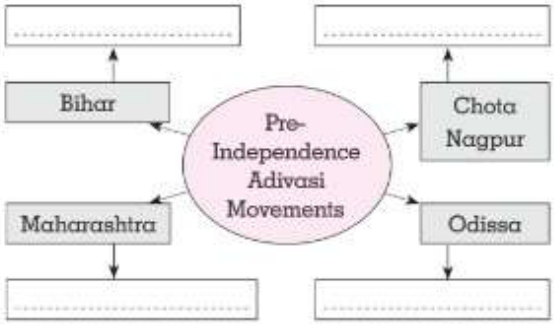
(2) Movements increase the participation of people in social life.

(3) Movements are for public welfare and to solve issues. The aim of any movement is not only to pressurize the government but also to oppose its decision or policies.

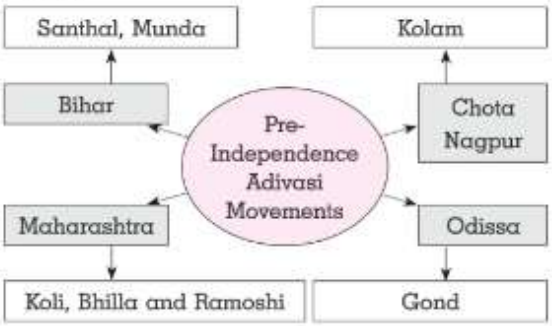
(4) A movement is started for different reasons like religious, social, cultural, protection of the environment, ill practices and traditions.

Q. 4 (A) Complete the graphical representation : *(2 marks each)*

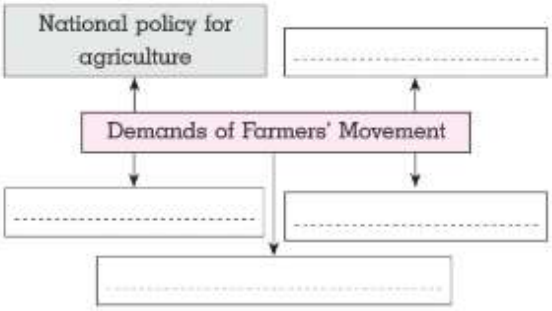
(1)



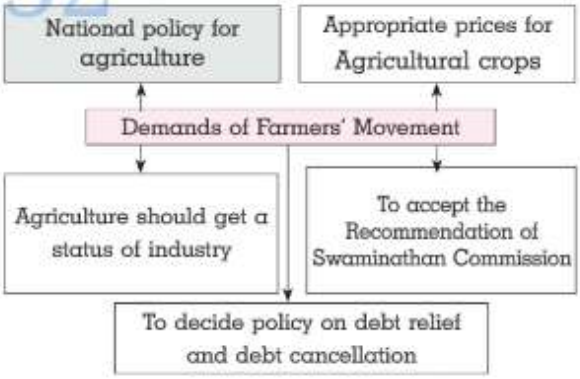
Ans.



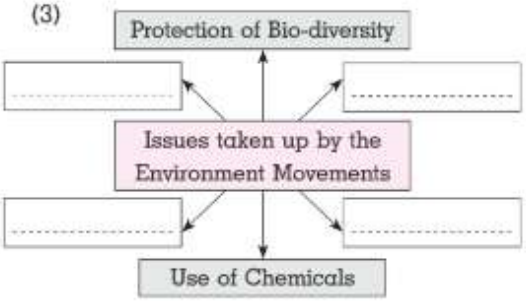
(2)



Ans.

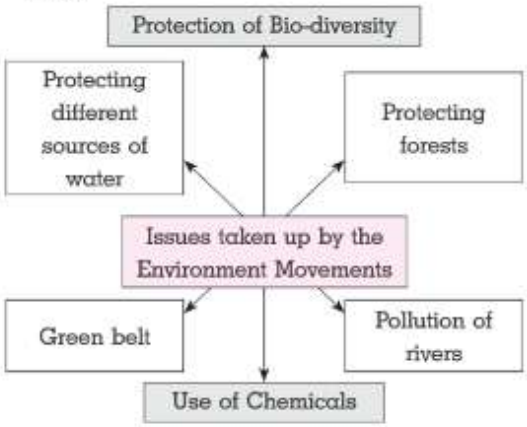


(3)

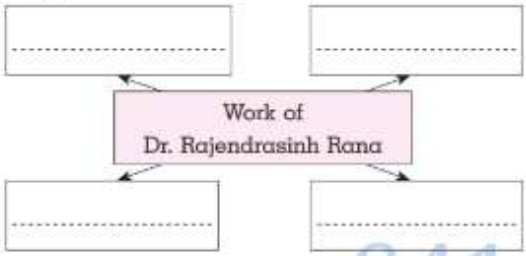


6414132

Ans.

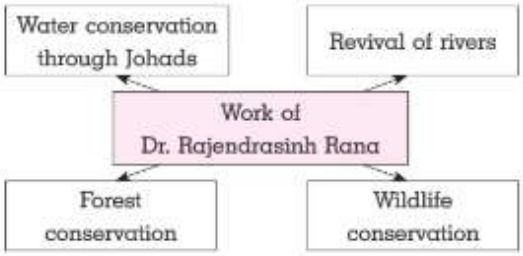


(4)

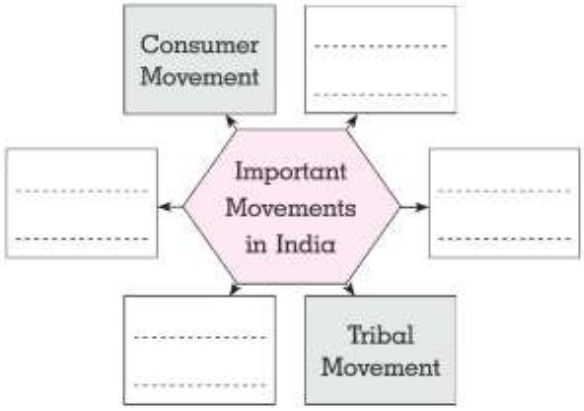


6414132

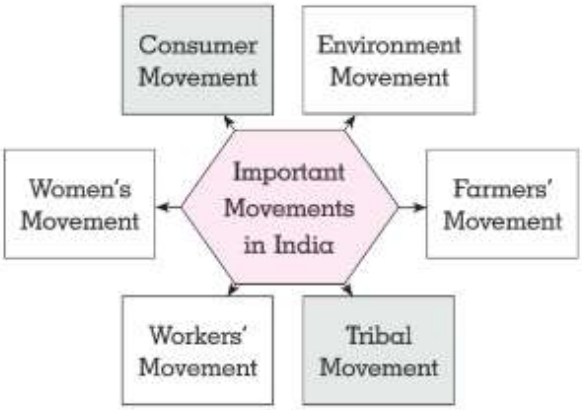
Ans.



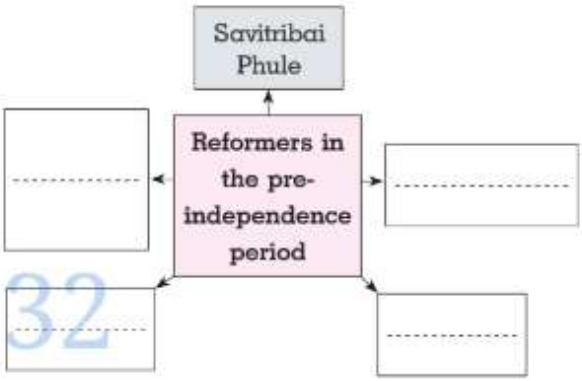
(5)



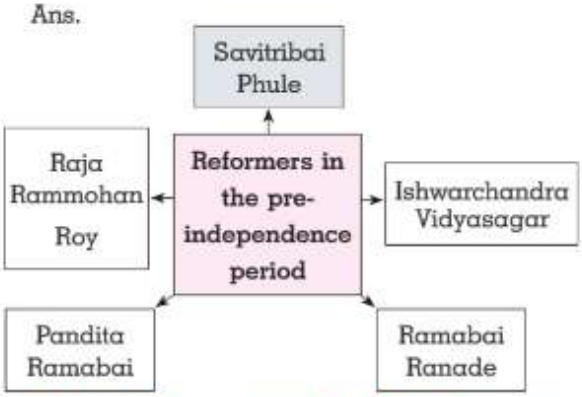
Ans.



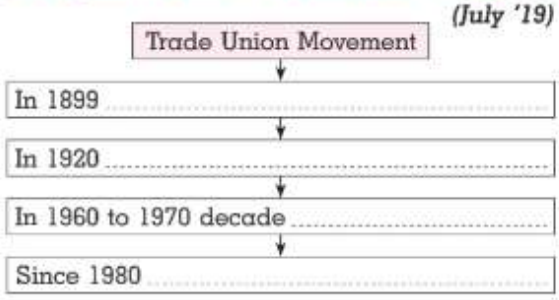
(6)



Ans.



(B) Explain the events in Trade Union Movement : ***(July '19)***



Ans.

Trade Union Movement
↓
In 1899 Railway workers went on strike for their demands
↓
In 1920 establishment of All India Trade Union Congress
↓
In 1960 to 1970 decade several agitations had taken place
↓
Since 1980 disintegration of trade union movement

Q. 5 Answer the following questions in brief: ***(2 marks each)***

***(1) Explain the role/functions/activities of the environmental movement.**

Ans. (i) Role : The environment movement has played a key role in - (1) Creating public awareness about the importance of balance in environment through television, newspapers and other mediums. (2) Opposing developmental projects with environmental concerns.

(ii) Functions : The function of the environment movement is to make efforts silently or rigorously to protect natural areas through afforestation, recycling or pollution control. Forest department and the pollution boards are actively involved and extend support by making stringent laws to book the culprits.

(iii) Activities : Different activities are conducted to promote the environment movement :

(1) Environmental degradation has become a serious issue not only in India but also in the world.

(2) The issues of degradation was discussed at Rio-de-Janeiro, Paris and Kyoto Conferences.

(3) Even in India many movements are active for conservation of the environment like the Chipko movement, Appiko movement and Vanmahotsav.

***(2) Explain the nature of farmers' movement in India.**

Ans. (1) The Indian farmers organised themselves in pre-independence era to fight against the anti-agricultural policies of the colonial British rulers.

(2) The farmers were inspired by the thoughts of Mahatma Phule, Justice Ranade and Mahatma Gandhi. They organised satyagraha against revenue collection in Bardoli and Champaranya.

(3) Farmers' movement slowed down because of tenancy laws under land reforms. Green revolution failed to improve conditions of the poor farmers.

(4) Farmers' movement gained momentum with demands like, appropriate price for agricultural products, debt relief and debt cancellation after recommendations from Swaminathan Commission.

(3) For which reforms were the women's movement in the pre-independence period fighting?** ***(March '19 – '20; July '19)

Ans. In the pre-independence period women's movement were working for the following reforms :

(1) Eliminating injustice against women.

(2) To put an end to the exploitation of women and help them lead a respectful and dignified life.

(3) They should be able to participate actively in social life.

(4) To end the practices like Sati, child marriage. polygamy and bring about reforms such as widow remarriage and women's education.

(4) Explain the features of a movement.

Ans. (1) A movement is a collective action which has active participation or support of the people.

(2) People take up a particular issue and organise themselves.

(3) A movement requires strong leadership. A strong leader makes the movement effective.

(4) If people feel connected to the issue, then they extend their support to the movement.

64141132

(5) What are the demands of Trade Union Movement? ***(Nov. '20)***

Ans. The Trade Union Movement makes demands regarding following issues :

(1) Contract labour and unstable employment.

(2) Financial insecurity and unfavourable conditions at workplace.

(3) Unlimited working hours and health hazards.

(4) No protection of labour laws.

(6) How did the objectives of women's movement change after independence?

Ans. (1) In the pre-independence era, the aim of the women's movement was to put an end to the unjust practices against women and end their exploitation.

(2) After independence, the aim of their movement changed because they realised that though the Constitution had given equal rights both to men and women in practice they were never considered equal.

(3) The objective of the women's movement was to achieve freedom in real sense, i.e. they should be treated as human beings and should get equal rights and to live a dignified life.

(7) Which issues were taken up by the women's movement after independence?

Ans. Many issues were taken up by the women's movement for the welfare of the women after independence. Some are :

(1) Health and education of women

(2) Financial independence

(3) Social security

(4) To be treated as human beings and have a status and prestige.

(8) Which issues are handled through movements?

Ans. Movements arise out of public issues, which could be social, political, economic and religious.

(1) To protect the rights of the citizens like voting, freedom and for similar issues, political movements are organised.

(2) Financial security, minimum wages, employment, insistence on indigenous product are the reasons for economic movement.

(3) Social and religious movements are organized to eliminate ill practices like untouchability, entry of women in temples, discrimination and social issues.

(4) Movements are organised to raise voice against injustice done to a particular region, language and for issues like cleanliness, environment and movements for development like Green revolution and White revolution.

(9) Which movements started in India are actively working for rehabilitation of the displaced and to secure their livelihood?

(Can you tell? Textbook page 91)

Ans. People who got displaced started this movement for different reasons. Some movements lasted for short time while some lasted long.

(1) "Narmada Bachao Andolan" was a popular movement.

(2) People living in Maharashtra and Gujarat continued it for 28 years.

(3) People in the Sindhudurg district who got displaced due to the Talamba dam started movement for rehabilitation. It lasted for 32 years.

(4) Farmers who got displaced because of Pune-Nagpur highway or for the planned Purandar airport launched movements on a large scale.

Such movements are going on all over India.

(Note : *No details are given in the book.*)

(10) Name the policies started by the government for the welfare of farmers and landless labourers? (Do this – Textbook page 94)

Ans. The government has started the following policies for the welfare of the farmers and landless labourers :

(1) National agriculture policy

(2) Crop insurance scheme (FASAL Bima Yojana)

(3) Jalyukt Shivar

(4) Indira Gandhi Niradhar (old), landless, destitute women farm labour scheme.

(5) Neem Coated Urea.

(11) Name the movements started by Mahatma Gandhi, Mahatma Phule, Sant Gadge Maharaj and Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar.

(Can you tell? Textbook page 93)

Ans. (1) Mahatma Phule laid the foundation of the movement for education of women and social equality.

(2) To stop the practice of widow tonsure he called for a strike of barbers in Mumbai.

(3) Mahatma Gandhi adopted the technique of satyagraha and started the movement for farmers in Champaranya and Kheda.

(4) He also started the Non-cooperation Movement and Civil Disobedience Movement.

(5) Sant Gadge Maharaj started the cleanliness campaign.

(6) Dr. Babashaeb Ambedkar launched satyagraha to allow untouchables to use water from a public tank in Mahad.

(7) He also led the movement in Nashik for Dalits so that they could get entry into the Kalaram temple.

6414132

Q. 6 Give Your Opinion : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Give Your Opinion', the answer to this question should be written in accordance with chapter. As this is an open ended question, the answers given here are 'model' answers. This type of question can be asked in 'Answer in Brief'. No separate question will be asked.*

(1) All movements have ideologies.

(Discuss : Textbook page 92)

Ans. (1) Even though movements are launched for social welfare there is always an ideology behind every movement.

(2) The scope of movements against child marriage or dowry prohibition is not limited to oppose the social evil practice but have wider aim of social reformation.

(3) The movements started against female foeticide 'Beti Bachao Beti Padhav', violence against women and to empower women had objectives to achieve equal social status for women and their protection.

(4) Movements like cleanliness campaign, Chipko Andolan, Save Trees aim not only at environment protection but also aim at saving humanity.

(5) These movements have faith in democratic values like equality and brotherhood and humanity. This shows all movements have ideologies.

(2) Do you think, if all the movements co-ordinate with each other, the result will be more effective?

Ans. (1) Our society has witnessed many movements from pre-independence times.

(2) If all these movements co-ordinate with each other they will be definitely effective.

(3) With each other's cooperation they can work together to find the root cause of the problem and also find a solution.

(4) The manpower will not get divided. The work will get divided and that would save time and energy to a great extent.

(5) The movement will be more effective.

(3) On which issues does the 'Sons of the Soil' movement in India insist?

(Discuss : Textbook page 93)

Ans. People migrate for various reasons within the country. They create lot of problems in their newly adopted homeland which give rise to the 'Sons of the Soil' movement. The main reasons for the movement are :

(1) Sons of the Soil, i.e. local people lose out on employment opportunities.

(2) They are deprived of their jobs.

(3) Their land is confiscated.

(4) Housing becomes expensive.

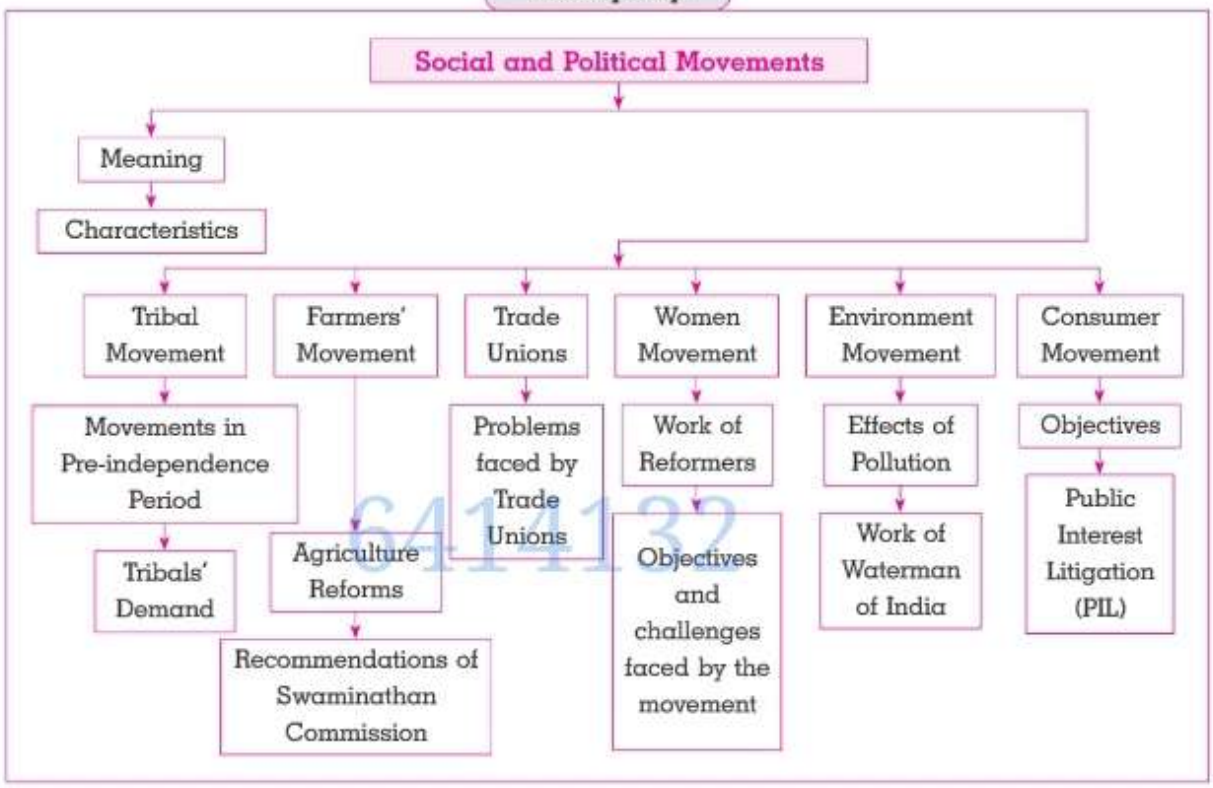
(5) The migrants pose a threat to the language and culture of local people.

(6) Sons of the Soil lose economic monopoly as well as political influence.

Project

(1) Collect the news in the newspapers about various activities of social movements.
(2) Write a report on the movement in your area which are working to resolve general problems.
(3) Prepare a format of a complaint you will launch under Consumer Protection Act if you are cheated in purchase of vegetables or grains.

Memory Map



64141132

Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

5 CHALLENGES FACED BY INDIAN DEMOCRACY

IMPORTANT POINTS

5.1 Democracy :

(1) Democracy :

(1) Democracy is a continuous and living process.

(2) Citizens should remain vigilant, alert and make conscious efforts to sustain democracy.

(3) It is necessary to identify the threats to democracy and take timely measures to resolve them.

(2) Challenges faced by Democracy at international level :

(1) Very few nations practise right democracy.

(2) Democracy which grants rights to people, ensures freedom and gives importance to people's welfare, should be preferred and propagated.

(3) Democratic values and adoption of true democracy is a challenge at the global level.

(4) Many democratic countries are facing the challenge of military takeover.

Concept :

- **Military regime :**

When any individual or group from the army replaces the legitimate government and establishes rule by force it is known as military regime. A military coup overthrows the existing government and takes power in hand.

In the 19th and 20th century, military regimes were in power in many countries of the world. Military regime could sustain in countries where democracy had failed to hold its grounds. It had come to power in countries having a chaotic situation because of corruption, communal riots, lack of experience in governance. Civil rights are curtailed in military rule. Most of the military dictators in the past were cruel, unjust and corrupt. Egypt, Indonesia, Bangladesh, Pakistan are some of the countries which have had military regimes.

(3) How does democracy become deep rooted?

(1) Democracy should be practised in all aspects of life. It should include all components of society.

(2) Decentralisation of power by giving autonomy to social institutions.

(3) Empower the citizens.

(4) Human values like freedom, equality, fraternity, justice, peace, development and humanitarianism should be conserved and passed on to the people.

Concept :

- **Decentralisation :**

'Power corrupts and absolute power tends to corrupt absolutely.' The doctrine of separation of power was first propounded by Montesquieu before the French revolution. He suggested a clear cut division between legislature, executive and judiciary. All the democratic countries in the world have accepted this doctrine. Decentralization has taken place at the Centre, state and local level. Due to decentralization of power, the participation of people has increased which has made them aware of their responsibilities. People get to know about politics. Decentralisation of power helps in keeping the freedom of the people intact.

64141132

5.2 Challenges before Indian Democracy :

Sr. No.	Challenges	Form/Effect
1.	Communalism and Terrorism	(1) Increases religious conflict and makes society hostile. (2) Resulting terrorism makes the society unstable. (3) People take less interest in the democratic process due to terrorism.
2.	Left Extremists (Naxalite)	(1) This movement was started against injustice done to the landless farmers and tribals. (2) But later it lost its focus and became violent. (3) The Naxalite groups adopted violent ways like attacking the army, police and opposing the government in violent manner.
3.	Corruption	(1) Corruption is very high in public sector and at the administrative level in India. (2) Bogus voting, giving bribes to voters, are examples of corruption. (3) It reduces the efficiency of the government. (4) Any work undertaken by the government gets delayed. (5) The quality of public services declined. (6) Increase in the number of scams. (7) People lose confidence in democracy.
4.	Criminalisation of Politics	Due to increase in criminalisation of politics : (1) Money and muscle power gets undue importance. (2) Violence increases during elections. (3) Political parties give candidature to people with criminal background and to those having various criminal charges levelled against them.
5.	Social challenges	Indian democracy faces social challenges like : (1) Increasing unemployment. (2) Unequal distribution of resources. (3) Increasing gap between rich and poor. (4) Casteism.

6414132

5.3 Steps to be taken to make Indian Democracy successful :

(1) Although democracy is a government of the majority, minorities should be included in the process of decision-making.

(2) People belonging to all religious, linguistic, ethnic and caste groups should get equal opportunity in the decision-making process.

(3) Judiciary should be independent to give severe punishments to the criminals and prevent criminalisation of politics.

(4) For the success of democracy, it should be practised not only at the government level but also at social and individual level.

(5) Participation of the people should be at all levels in government and administration.

(6) A good rapport between people and government will help in changing the existing public policies and make new ones. It helps in strengthening democracy.

(7) The values of liberty, equality, secularism and social justice should be practised in personal life.

5.4 Various campaigns to supplement democracy :

(1) Education for all.

(2) Clean Bharat campaign.

(3) Gram Samruddhi Yojana.

(4) Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Scheme.

(5) 50% seats are kept reserved for women in local self-governing institutions.

Let us Know : (Textbook page 97)

- **Democracy in China :**

After the Communist revolution in China, in 1948 a republic came into existence. The end of Communist revolution led to formation of People's Republic of China. After the formation of the republic, the Communist party of China became the dominant party. Though recognised, other parties had nominal existence in China. Democracy is for namesake in China. In practice, there is only the dictatorship of the Communist party. The Communist party held internal elections. In such a situation, the people have no freedom left.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS

Q. 1 Choose the correct option from the given options and complete the sentences : *(1 mark each)*

[1]

*(1) In democracy, ... participate in elections and get political power.
(a) political parties
(b) courts
(c) social organization
(d) None of the above

*(2) The major challenge faced by all democratic nations in the world is ..... . *(March '19; July '19)*
(a) religious conflicts
(b) naxalite activities
(c) to ensure deepening the roots of democracy
(d) importance to muscle power

(3) ..... is a continuous and living process.
(a) Military rule (b) Democracy
(c) Dictatorship (d) Monarchy

(4) The main objective of democracy is ..... .
(a) to hold elections (b) public welfare
(c) public campaigns (d) social work

(5) Voting, elections, government structure, etc. is only ..... form of democracy.
(a) economic (b) political
(c) social (d) all-inclusive

Ans. (1) political party (2) to ensure deepening the roots of democracy (3) Democracy (4) public welfare (5) political.

[2]

(1) In order to make democracy meaningful, the Government of India adopted .....
(a) internal party elections
(b) public welfare schemes
(c) decentralisation of power
(d) protection of democratic values

(2) Naxalite movement began to remove injustice done to .....
(a) workers and dalits
(b) middle and lower class
(c) poor and common class
(d) landless farmers and tribals

(3) The ..... in India is making conscious efforts to make political process transparent.
(a) Parliament (b) Government
(c) Judiciary (d) Political parties

(4) Due to increase in ....., there is increase in religious conflict.
(a) communalism
(b) terrorism
(c) corruption
(d) casteism

(5) In order to make democracy successful in India, participation of ..... should increase.
(a) government
(b) people
(c) political parties
(d) social organization

Ans. (1) decentralisation of power (2) landless farmers and tribals (3) Judiciary (4) communalism (5) people.

6414132

Q. 2 Explain with reasons whether the following statements are True or False : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Alertness is required to sustain democracy.** *(July '19; Nov. '20)*

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

(1) In order to make democracy successful it should be practised by people in all aspects of their life. It should not remain limited at the government level.

(2) Conscious effort should be taken to keep the rights of the people intact.

(3) The different challenges faced by democracy like corruption, violence and criminalisation should be tackled timely and strictly.

It is necessary that people and the government should remain alert for the sustenance of democracy.

***(2) Importance of the problems of farmers and tribals has increased in the leftist extremist movement.** *(March '20)*

Ans. The above statement is **False**.

(1) Landlords confiscated lands of farmers and tribals.

(2) Naxalite movement was started to remove injustice against the landless farmers and tribals.

(3) But later the problems of farmers and tribals lost its focus and became violent. They adopted violent ways like to attack army, police and oppose the government.

The importance of problems of farmers and tribals decreased in the leftist movement.

***(3) People may lose confidence in the democratic process due to corruption during elections.** *(March '19)*

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

(1) In order to strengthen democracy, it is important to conduct elections in a free and fair atmosphere.

(2) There are instances of the election process getting affected by corruption.

(3) Bogus voting, bribing the voters, abducting voters and ballot boxes, distributing articles to lure voters and other such things take place.

All these things make people lose faith in the democratic process.

(4) Communalism does not cause much harm to the nation.

Ans. The above statement is **False**.

(1) Increase in communalism leads to religious conflict in the country.

(2) Increasing conflicts in turn create frictions in society and destroy social unity. It creates division in society resulting in terrorist activities.

(3) People's participation also reduces in the democratic process. This ultimately creates instability in society and democracy comes in danger.

Hence communalism harms the nation to a great extent.

(5) The opinion of the minorities should not be taken into consideration.

Ans. The above statement is **False**.

(1) Even though the government of the majority community comes to power, it should adhere to the democratic principle that government should work for the welfare of all communities.

(2) In democracy, opinion of all the communities should be valued instead of giving importance only to the majority community.

(3) All religious, linguistics, ethnic and caste groups should be part of the decision-making process of the government.

Hence, to avoid injustice to minorities their opinion should also be taken into consideration.

(6) Democracy is the best form of governance.

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

(1) The freedom and rights of the people remain intact in democracy.

(2) In democracy, values like liberty, equality, social justice, secularism and fraternity are nurtured in the real sense.

(3) Welfare of the people is the main aim of democracy. People do not enjoy so much freedom in any other form of government.

Hence, democracy is the best form of governance.

64144132

(7) Majority opinion has a lot of importance in Democracy.

Ans. The above statement is **True**.

(1) In a democracy, the political party getting majority of votes comes to power.

(2) Parliament takes all the decisions by majority.

(3) Democracy aims at the welfare of the majority of the people.

Therefore, majority opinion has a lot of importance in Democracy.

Q. 3 Write Short Notes : *(2 marks each)*

Note : *'Write Short Notes' will be asked under the question 'Explain the Concept'. It will not be asked as a separate question.*

***(1) Left-extremists – Naxalism :**

Ans. (1) Naxalism began as a movement to remove injustice done to the landless farmers and tribals by the landlords.

(2) As it had the influence of Marxism, it was called Left Extremists movement.

(3) But later, it lost its focus and became violent.

(4) The Naxalite groups adopted violent ways to oppose the government instead of fighting for farmers and tribals.

They carried out armed attacks on political leaders, police and army.

***(2) Corruption :**

Ans. (1) It is a form of dishonest or unethical conduct for personal gain by people at influential position.

(2) It is found at all levels economic, political, social and at government levels. The misuse of power is also corruption.

(3) Bogus voting, giving bribe to voters, are examples of corruption in the election process. Hoarding of goods and then selling them at price more than the market value is also a way of corruption.

(4) Corruption in the public and private sector is the biggest problem in India. People develop distrust and dissatisfaction about the entire system. They lose trust in democracy because of corruption.

(3) Criminalisation of politics :

(1) Participation of criminals in political process is criminalisation of politics. It is a serious problem and a threat to our democratic system.

(2) Political parties or candidates spread terror among people using money and muscle power.

(3) Political parties who give candidature to people with criminal background are responsible for violence during elections.

(4) Such candidates after coming to power continue their criminal activities. They create financial scams and trouble the opponents.

Criminalisation of politics weakens democracy.

(4) Communalism and Terrorism : ***(July '19)***

Ans. (1) Communalism and Terrorism causes great harm to nation. Communalism emerges out of narrow religious pride.

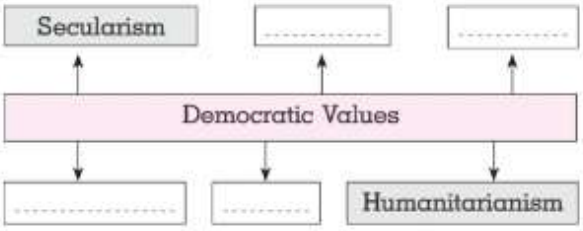
(2) Increasing communalism triggers religious conflict in the country. Religious conflict hampers social stability.

(3) Society gets divided on communal lines. Communalism gives rise to terrorism. People's participation in democratic process is reduced to a great extent due to terrorism.

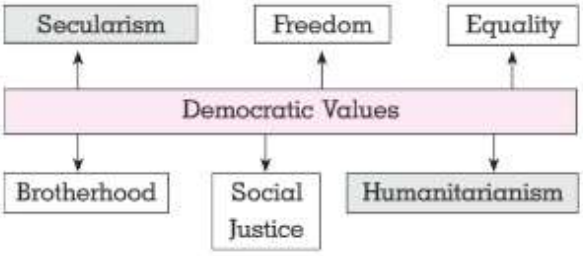
(4) It causes great damage to our nation.

Q. 4 Do as directed : *(2 marks each)*

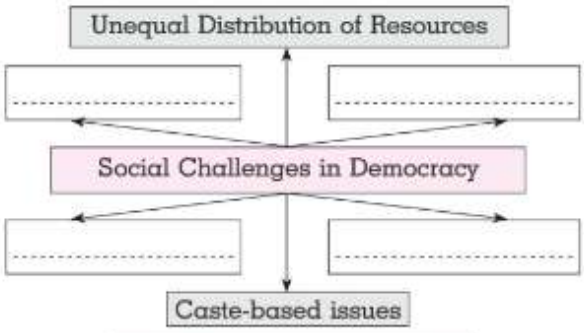
(1) ***(March '20)***



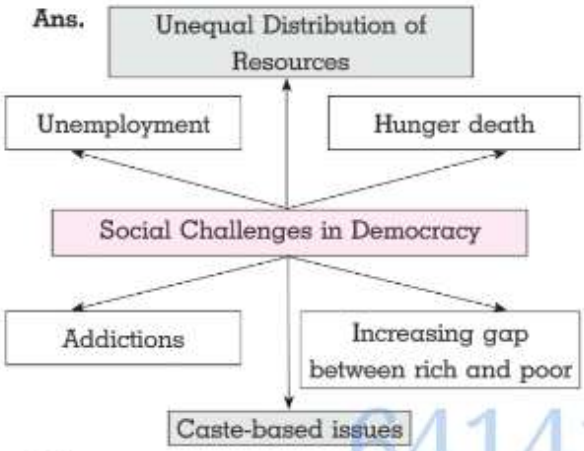
Ans.



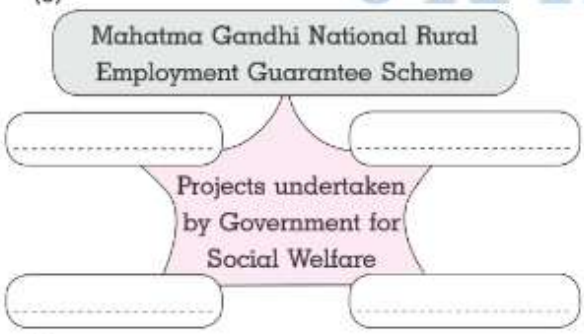
(2)



Ans.

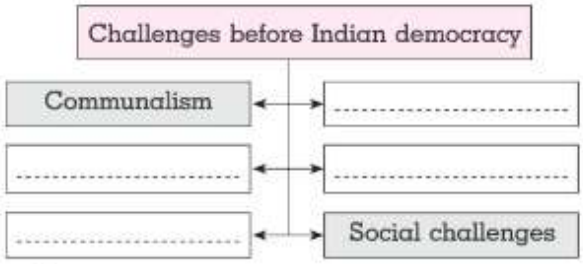


(3)

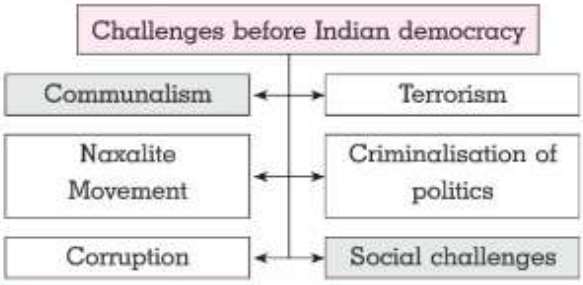


Ans.

(4) *(March '19; Nov. '20)*



Ans.



Q. 5 Answer the following questions in brief : *(2 marks each)*

***(1) Which factors are required for the success of democracy in India?** *(July '19)*

Ans. The following factors are required for the success of democracy in India :

(1) Though democracy is the government of majority, the opinions of minorities, religious, ethnic and linguistic should be included in the decision-making process.

(2) Stringent laws must be implemented to stop criminalisation of politics.

(3) Efforts should be made not only at the level of the government but also at social and personal level.

(4) Decisions about important public policies should be taken after interaction with the people. Participation of people should increase in all government undertakings.

***(2) What are the effects of criminalisation of politics?**

Ans. The following effects are seen due to criminalisation of politics :

(1) Money and muscle power gets undue importance.

(2) Violence increases during elections and it becomes difficult to hold elections in free and fair environment.

64141 32

(3) Terror seizes the mind of people and their participation becomes less in administration.

(4) People lose their tolerance and the development of democracy does not take place.

(3) What efforts are undertaken to bring transparency in political process?** ***(March '19)

Ans. The following efforts are made to bring transparency in political process :

(1) An independent Election Commission is appointed to hold free and fair elections.

(2) Stringent laws are made to stop criminalisation of politics.

(3) Laws are formed to stop corruption in politics and elections.

(4) Courts have banned people who are corrupt and those having criminal background or criminal allegations from taking part in political process.

(4) What challenges are faced at global level by democracy?

Ans. The following challenges are faced by democracy at global level :

(1) Many democratic countries in the world face the threat of military regime.

(2) It becomes important to propagate democracy which safeguards people's rights and freedom.

(3) All-inclusive democracy is real democracy which should be adopted and practised instead of adopting just political form of democracy.

(5) What improvements are required for democracy to be deep rooted?

Ans. The following improvements are required for democracy to be deep rooted :

(1) Values like freedom, equality, fraternity, justice, peace and humanitarianism should be practised and nurtured by all sections in the society.

(2) Autonomy should be given to various social organisations and assimilate all the sections of the society.

(3) Empowerment to the citizens, free and fair elections and independent judiciary is necessary.

(4) Adoption of a form of democracy which gives preference to public welfare.

(6) What measures are adopted by India to strengthen democracy?

Ans. In order to strengthen democracy following measures are adopted by India :

(1) Decentralisation of power.

(2) Reservation for minorities and women so that they get a share in power.

(3) The values of liberty, equality, secularism and social justice adopted by our Constitution.

(4) At administrative level various projects like Education for all, Clean Bharat campaign, Gram Samruddhi Yojana, Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Scheme are undertaken.

Q. 6 Give Your Opinion : ***(2 marks each)***

Note : *'Give Your Opinion', the answer to this question should be written in accordance with chapter. As this is an open ended question, the answers given here are 'model' answers. This type of question can be asked in 'Answer in Brief'. No separate question will be asked.*

(1) What is your opinion about participation of people in various undertakings of the government?

Ans. (1) There will be change in the public policies of the government.

(2) There will be interaction between all sections of society and exchange of ideas.

(3) There will be transparency in government administration and problems like corruption will be tackled.

(4) More public welfare schemes will get implemented and no one will feel that injustice is done to them or they are left out.

(2) Are internal elections held by political parties? (Can you tell? Textbook page 97)

Ans. (1) It is mandatory to hold internal elections in a political party.

(2) Elections are held for various posts like president, treasurer and secretary. Elections are held after every 3 years as per the rules laid down by the Election Commission of India.

(3) The party which does not abide by the rule loses recognition.

(4) Because of such elections, there can never be dominance of any single person on a party.

(5) Democracy sustains within the party. In Indian democracy the internal elections are held by all the parties regularly.

64141132

(3) In spite of economic reforms China accepted dominance of only one party. Is China a democratic nation? **(Textbook page 97)**

Ans. (1) After the Communist revolution in 1948, China became a republic. After the formation of the republic, the Communist party of China became a dominant party.

(2) All the offices in the party are elected through internal elections.

(3) But in practice, there is dictatorship of the Communist party. Democracy is for namesake in China.

(4) In such a situation, the people do not enjoy freedom as in true democracy.

However, China accepted economic reforms and became part of World Trade Organization.

(4) Do you think there should be family monopoly in politics?

(What do you think? Textbook page 98)

Ans. (1) There is no place for family monopoly in politics. The elected representatives serve the people till their term lasts. People vote out the inefficient representatives out of power in next election.

(2) If there is monopoly of one family, the perspective of democracy becomes narrow, common people cannot share power.

(3) If any inefficient heir comes to power, he or she could be a great loss for the party, people as well as the nation.

Hence there should be no family monopoly in politics.

Project

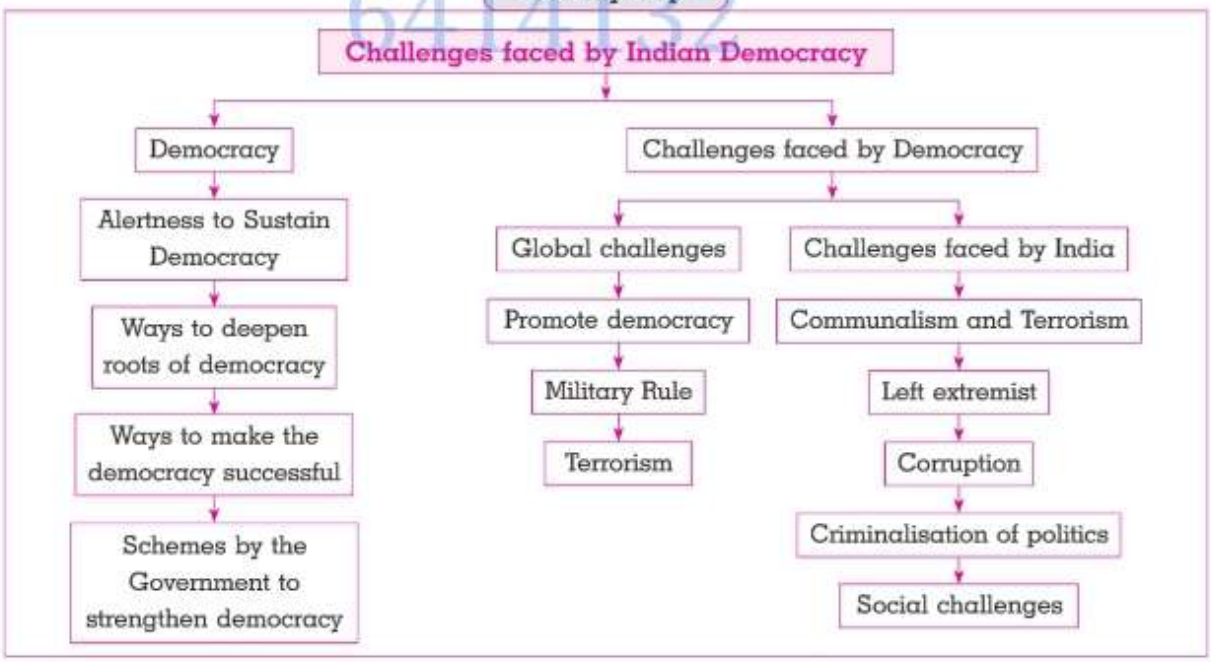
(1) What measures will you suggest to control corruption? Make a list of it.

(2) Organise group discussion in your class on the problem of terrorism in India.

(3) Present a street play on 'How to get rid of addiction'.

Memory Map

6414132



Did you study the lesson/chapter from the **Navneet Digest**? Now, solve the test to ensure solid learning. Scan this **QR Code** for the test and its model answers.

BOARD'S ACTIVITY SHEET : MARCH 2020

Time : 2.00 Hours] **[Total Marks : 40**

Note : *(1) All the activities/questions are compulsory.*

(2) Figures to the right indicate full marks.

(3) Question Nos. 1 to 5 are based on History and Question Nos. 6 to 9 are based on Political Science.

(4) It is mandatory to write a complete statement as answer in Question No. 1 (A) and 6.

(5) In Question Nos. 2 (A) and 8 (B) the appropriate answers are expected to be written by pen in the concept map.

(6) The answers of Question No. 1 (A) and (B) and Question No. 6 are repeated then only first attempted answer will be considered.

History

Q. 1. (A) Choose the correct option from the given options and complete the sentences : **3**

(1) It may be said that ..... was the founder of modern Historiography.

(a) Voltaire *(b) René Descartes*

(c) Leopold Ranké *(d) Karl Marx*

(2) ..... is considered as the mother of science and all other subjects.

(a) Philosophy *(b) Ethics*

(c) History *(d) Genealogy*

(3) Bhilar is known as the village of ..... .

(a) Plants *(b) Mangoes*

(c) Books *(d) Forts*

6414132

Ans. (1) Voltaire (2) Philosophy (3) Books.

Q. 1. (B) Identify and write the wrong pair in the following sets : **3**

(1)

V.K. Rajwade	–	Marathyanchya Itihasachi Sadhane
Swatantryawir V.D. Savarkar	–	The Indian War of Independence 1857
Pandita Ramabai	–	Stri-Purush Tulana
Mahatma Phule	–	Gulamgiri

Ans. Pandita Ramabai – Stri-Purush Tulana

(2)

Darpan	–	Balshastri Jambhekar
Kesari	–	Bal Gangadhar Tilak
Deenbandhu	–	Gopal Hari Deshmukh
Prabhakar	–	Bhau Mahajan

Ans. Deenbandhu – Gopal Hari Deshmukh

(3)

Rock-cut caves	–	Matheran, Chikhaldara
Railway Station	–	Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Terminus, Mumbai
Wildlife Sanctuary	–	Dajipur
Natural Heritage	–	Western Ghats and its Kaas Plateau

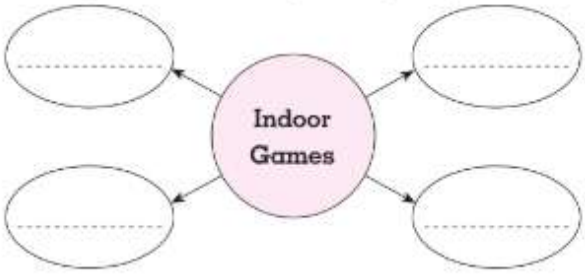
Ans. Rock-cut caves – Matheran, Chikhaldara

Q. 2. (A) Complete the following concept chart/map : *(Any Two)* **4**

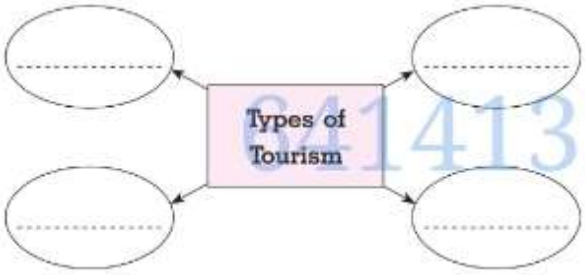
(1) Complete the following table : **[Ch. 3, Q. 3, (4)]**

Western Ghats	World Natural Heritage Sites in India	.....
.....		.....
.....		Kaziranga National Park

(2) Complete the following concept map : **[Ch. 7, Q. 3, (B)]**



(3) Complete the following concept map : **[Ch. 8, Q. 3, (2)]**



64144132

Q. 2. (B) Write short notes on: *(Any Two)* **4**

(1) Feminist History **[Ch. 2, Q. 5, (6)]**

(2) Need of entertainment **[Ch. 6, Q. 4, (1)]**

(3) Importance of sports **[Ch. 7, Q. 6, (1)]**

Q. 3. Explain the following statements with reasons : *(Any Two)* **4**

(1) Voltaire is said to be the founder of Modern Historiography. **[Ch. 1, Q. 7, (3)]**

(2) The list of World Heritage Sites is announced by UNESCO. **[Ch. 3, Q. 7, (2)]**

(3) An expert with deep understanding of art history is required in the art market. **[Ch. 4, Q. 6, (1)]**

(4) Archives and libraries publish research journals, informative pamphlets, leaflets, posters, etc. **[Ch. 9, Q. 5, (1)]**

Q. 4. Read the following extract and answer the questions below : [Ch. 6, Q. 7, (2)] **4**

Dashavatara Theatre : Dashavatara is part of the folk theatre in Maharashtra. Dashavatara shows are presented in the regions of Konkan and Goa after harvesting season is over. The stories presented in these shows are based on the 10 incarnations of Vishnu, namely *Matsya,*

Koorma, Varaha, Narsimha, Wamana, Parashurama, Ram, Krishna, Buddha and Kalki. At the beginning of the show sutradhara, the narrator invokes Lord Ganesha, the destroyer of obstacles.

The method of acting, make-up, costumes in Dashavatara shows is set by the tradition. The show is mostly musical but sometimes there may be a few spontaneous dialogues. The characters representing gods use wooden masks. The show ends by breaking dahihandi, an earthen pot of curds, followed by aarati, singing praises of the God.

In the 18th century Shyamji Naik Kale started a phad, of Dashavatara artists which used to perform all over Maharashtra.

Vishnudas Bhave, the pioneer of Marathi theatre staged mythological plays by introducing some modifications in the Dashavatara style. Thus, the origins of the Marathi theatre can be traced to Dashavatara tradition.

Questions :

(1) In which state Dashavatara is part of folk theatre? (1)

(2) To whom the narrator invokes at the beginning of the show? (1)

(3) The form of Dashavatara Folk theatre. Explain. (2)

Q. 5. Answer the following questions in detail : *(Any Two)* 6

(1) What is Marxist History? **[Ch. 2, Q. 9, (1)]**

(2) What kind of training is required to study written sources? **[Ch. 9, Q. 7, (3)]**

(3) What kind of professional opportunities are available in the field of arts? Explain. **[Ch. 4, Q. 9, (3)]**

64144132

(4) What were the different means of communication known around the world before the advent of Newspaper? **[Ch. 5, Q. 8, (1)]**

Political Science

Q. 6. Choose the correct option from the given options and complete the statements : 2

(1) The essence of democracy is ..... .

(a) Universal adult franchise *(b) Decentralisation of power*

(c) Policy of reservation of seats *(d) Judicial decisions*

(2) ..... is the main demand of farmers movement.

(a) Right to cultivate on the forest land

(b) To get the right price for agricultural product

(c) Protection of consumers

(d) Building of dams

Ans. (1) Decentralisation of power (2) To get the right price for agricultural product

Q. 7. State whether the following statements are true or false. Give reasons for your answer : *(Any Two)* 4

(1) Indian democracy is considered the largest democracy in the world. **[Ch. 1, Q. 2, (1)]**

(2) Political parties act as a link between government and people. **[Ch. 3, Q. 2, (1)]**

(3) Importance of the problems of farmers and tribals has increased in the left extremist movement. **[Ch. 5, Q. 2, (2)]**

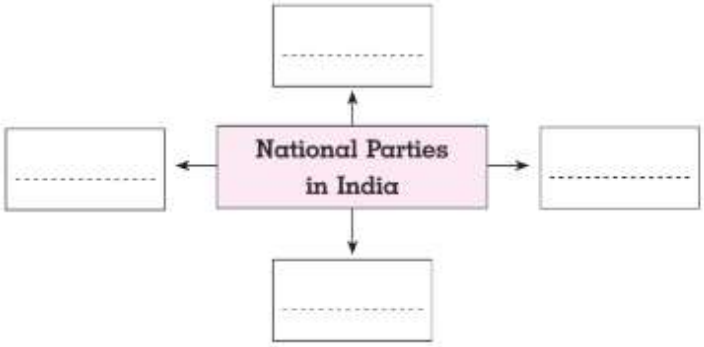
Q. 8. (A) Explain the following concepts : *(Any One)* 2

(1) Right to Information **[Ch. 1, Q. 3, (2)]**

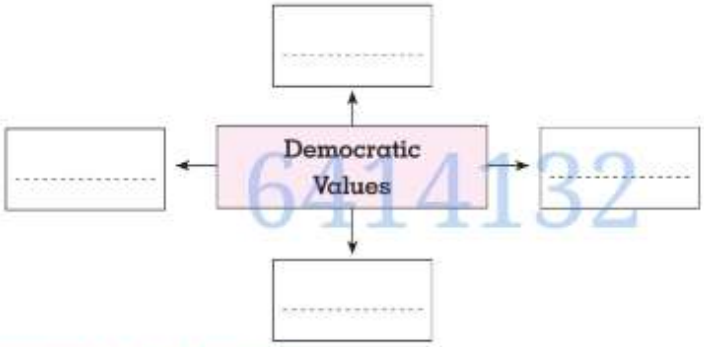
(2) Regionalism **[Ch. 3, Q. 3, (1)]**

Q. 8. (B) Do as instructed : *(Any One)* 2

(1) Complete the following concept diagram : [Ch. 3, Q. 5, [A] (1)]



(2) Complete the following concept diagram : [Ch. 5, Q. 4, (1)]



6414132

Q. 9. Answer in brief : *(Any One)* 2

(1) What is code of conduct? Explain. **[Ch. 2, Q. 5, (3)]**

(2) For which reforms were the women's movement in the pre-independence period fighting? **[Ch. 4, Q. 5, (3)]**

Shailesh E0555

VIKAS

SELF DEVELOPMENT AND ART APPRECIATION

Manual-cum-Journal

STANDARD X

Colourful pages in Art Appreciation Section

Salient features :

- Explanation of different aspects of Self-development and Art in easy language
- Several activities necessary for understanding the basic concepts in each chapter
- Suitable guidance on projects, activities, personal response, etc.
- Many topics on group discussion for oral expression
- Chapter-wise assessment and Annual evaluation chart

Available from all booksellers

NAVNEET EDUCATION LIMITED

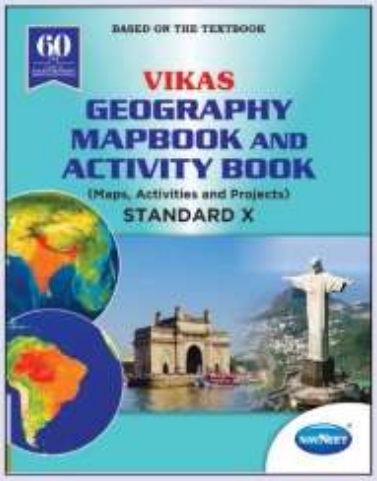
EW10z

Based on the Textbook

VIKAS GEOGRAPHY MAPBOOK AND ACTIVITY BOOK

(Maps, Activities and Projects)

STANDARD X



6414132

Salient Features :

- ★ All chapters from textbook are covered
- ★ Extensive practice exercises for Diagram reading, Map reading and Map filling
- ★ Thorough guidelines for Map Reading and Map Filling exercises
- ★ Activities, Projects, etc. included in each chapter
- ★ Thought-provoking questions such as Make Friends with Maps! Can You Tell? Use Your Brain Power! Try this; Colours of Both, etc. are included.

Available from all booksellers

NAVNEET

NAVNEET EDUCATION LIMITED

EW10m

Like us on /navneet.india | www.navneet.com

E0555